Workshop Manual

Audi A4 2015 ➤ , Audi A5 2016 ➤ , Audi A6 2019 ➤ , Audi A7 Sportback 2018 ➤ , Audi A8 2018 ➤ , Audi Q5 2017 ➤ , Audi Q7 2016 ➤ , Audi Q8 2018 ➤

Servicing 6-cylinder TDI engine, common rail (EA 897 Gen. II)									
Engine ID	DCP C	DEW A	DDV C	DDV B	DDV E	DDV F	DEW B	DHX A	DHX C
	DCP E								

Edition 01.2019

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
10 - Removing and installing engine
13 - Crankshaft group
15 - Cylinder head, valve gear
17 - Lubrication
19 - Cooling
21 - Turbocharging/supercharging
23 - Mixture preparation - injection
26 - Exhaust system
28 - Glow plug system

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2019 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data . . . 1
1 Identification . . . 1
1.1 Engine number/engine data . . . 1
2 Safety precautions . . . 2
2.1 Safety precautions when working on the fuel system . . . 2
2.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system . . . 2
2.3 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test . . . 3
2.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system . . . 3
2.5 Safety precautions when working on the exhaust system . . . 3
2.6 Safety precautions when working on the SCR system . . . 4
2.7 Safety precautions when working on the glow plug system . . . 5
2.8 Safety precautions when working on the subframe . . . 5
3 Repair instructions . . . 7
3.1 Rules for cleanliness . . . 7
3.2 General notes . . . 7
3.3 General repair instructions . . . 8
3.4 Foreign particles in engine . . . 9
3.5 Contact corrosion . . . 9
3.6 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring . . . 10
3.7 Installing radiators and condensers . . . 10
3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component . . . 10
10 - Removing and installing engine . . . 12
1 Removing and installing engine . . . 12
2 Assembly mountings . . . 13
3 Engine cover panel . . . 14
3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel . . . 14
13 - Crankshaft group . . . 15
1 Cylinder block (pulley end) . . . 15
1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end) . . . 15
1.2 Exploded view - sealing flange (pulley end) . . . 21
1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt . . . 22
1.4 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt . . . 26
1.5 Removing and installing vibration damper . . . 27
1.6 Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries . . . 29
1.7 Removing and installing engine support . . . 31
1.8 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (pulley end) . . . 31
1.9 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end) . . . 33
2 Cylinder block (gearbox end) . . . 37
2.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end) . . . 37
2.2 Removing and installing drive plate . . . 37
2.3 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end) . . . 39
3 Crankshaft . . . 42
3.1 Exploded view - crankshaft . . . 42
3.2 Crankshaft dimensions . . . 43
3.3 Allocation of main bearing shells . . . 44
3.4 Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft . . . 44
3.5 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft . . . 45
3.6 Checking sender wheel . . . 46
4 Balance shaft . . . 48
4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft . . . 48

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft . . . 48
4.3 Renewing roller bearings . . . 55
5 Pistons and conrods . . . 57
5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods . . . 57
5.2 Removing and installing pistons . . . 59
5.3 Measuring piston projection at TDC . . . 61
5.4 Checking pistons and cylinder bores . . . 63
5.5 Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings . . . 64
15 - Cylinder head, valve gear . . . 65
1 Timing chain cover . . . 65
1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover . . . 65
1.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover . . . 68
2 Chain drive . . . 77
2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains . . . 77
2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for high-pressure pump . . . 79
2.3 Exploded view - drive chain for oil pump . . . 80
2.4 Exploded view - intermediate drive . . . 81
2.5 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts . . . 81
2.6 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain . . . 91
2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for high-pressure pump . . . 100
2.8 Installing intermediate drive . . . 101
3 Cylinder head . . . 108
3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head . . . 108
3.2 Exploded view - cylinder head cover . . . 110
3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head . . . 114
3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover . . . 121
3.5 Removing and installing seals for injectors . . . 125
3.6 Checking compression . . . 126
4 Valve gear . . . 128
4.1 Exploded view - valve gear . . . 128
4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft . . . 134
4.3 Measuring radial clearance of camshaft . . . 135
4.4 Removing and installing camshaft . . . 136
4.5 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals . . . 149
5 Inlet and exhaust valves . . . 157
5.1 Machining valve seats . . . 157
5.2 Checking valve guides . . . 157
5.3 Checking valves . . . 158
5.4 Valve dimensions . . . 158
17 - Lubrication . . . 159
1 Sump/oil pump . . . 159
1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump . . . 159
1.2 Engine oil . . . 163
1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section) . . . 163
1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section) . . . 165
1.5 Removing and installing oil pump . . . 167
1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender G266 . . . 169
2 Engine oil cooler . . . 170
2.1 Exploded view - engine oil cooler . . . 170
2.2 Removing and installing engine oil cooler . . . 171
2.3 Removing and installing temperature regulator for engine oil cooler . . . 173
3 Crankcase breather . . . 175
3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system . . . 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing oil separator . . . 176
4 Oil filter/oil pressure switches . . . 177
4.1 Exploded view - oil filter . . . 177
4.2 Removing and installing oil filter housing . . . 178
4.3 Removing and installing oil pressure sender G10 . . . 179
4.4 Checking oil pressure . . . 180
4.5 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428 . . . 180
4.6 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 G664 . . . 181

19 - Cooling . . . 184
1 Cooling system/coolant . . . 184
1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses . . . 184
1.2 Checking cooling system for leaks . . . 184
1.3 Draining and filling cooling system . . . 187
2 Coolant pump/thermostat assembly . . . 189
2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump . . . 189
2.2 Exploded view - electric coolant pump . . . 190
2.3 Exploded view - thermostat . . . 190
2.4 Exploded view - coolant temperature senders . . . 193
2.5 Removing and installing electric coolant pump . . . 193
2.6 Removing and installing coolant pump . . . 193
2.7 Removing and installing thermostat . . . 196
2.8 Removing and installing thermostat housing . . . 196
2.9 Removing and installing coolant temperature sender G62 . . . 196
2.10 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694 . . . 197
2.11 Removing and installing coolant valves . . . 198
3 Coolant pipes . . . 200
4 Radiator/radiator fans . . . 201

21 - Turbocharging/supercharging . . . 202
1 Turbocharger . . . 202
1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger . . . 202
1.2 Removing and installing turbocharger . . . 206
2 Charge air system . . . 211
2.1 Exploded view - charge air system . . . 211
2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system . . . 211
2.3 Removing and installing charge air cooler . . . 212
2.4 Removing and installing charge pressure sender G31 . . . 212
2.5 Removing and installing charge air temperature sender . . . 213
2.6 Checking charge air system for leaks . . . 213

23 - Mixture preparation - injection . . . 217
1 Injection system . . . 217
1.1 Overview - fuel system . . . 217
1.2 Overview of fitting locations - injection system . . . 217
1.3 Filling and bleeding fuel system . . . 217
1.4 Checking fuel system for leaks . . . 218
2 Vacuum system . . . 219
2.1 Connection diagram - vacuum system . . . 219
2.2 Checking vacuum system . . . 219
3 Air cleaner . . . 221
4 Intake manifold . . . 222
4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold . . . 222
4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) . . . 228

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section) . . . 232
4.4 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 . . . 234
4.5 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338 . . . 236
5 Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail) . . . 238
5.1 Exploded view - injectors . . . 238
5.2 Checking injectors . . . 242
5.3 Performing adaption of correction values for injectors . . . 243
5.4 Checking for injectors sticking open . . . 244
5.5 Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running . . . 246
5.6 Checking return flow rate of injectors at starter cranking speed . . . 250
5.7 Checking pressure retention valve in fuel return line . . . 253
5.8 Removing and installing injectors . . . 255
5.9 Installing high-pressure pipes . . . 265
5.10 Removing and installing high-pressure reservoir (rail) . . . 267
6 Senders and sensors . . . 272
6.1 Removing and installing air mass meter G70 . . . 272
6.2 Removing and installing fuel temperature sender G81 . . . 272
6.3 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247 . . . 272
6.4 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender for low pressure G410 . . . 274
6.5 Checking fuel pressure regulating valve N276 . . . 275
6.6 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve N276 . . . 275
6.7 Removing and installing pressure differential sender G505 . . . 279
7 High-pressure pump . . . 280
7.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump . . . 280
7.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump . . . 282
8 Lambda probe . . . 287
8.1 Exploded view - Lambda probe . . . 287
8.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe . . . 288
8.3 Removing and installing NOx senders . . . 289
8.4 Removing and installing particulate sensor G784 . . . 289
9 Engine control unit . . . 290
26 - Exhaust system . . . 291
1 Exhaust pipes/silencers . . . 291
1.1 Exploded view - silencers . . . 291
1.2 Removing and installing front exhaust pipe . . . 291
1.3 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers . . . 291
1.4 Removing and installing silencers . . . 291
1.5 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system . . . 291
1.6 Checking exhaust system for leaks . . . 291
2 Emission control system . . . 292
2.1 Exploded view - emission control system . . . 292
2.2 Removing and installing emission control module . . . 296
2.3 Removing and installing trap catalytic converter . . . 297
2.4 Removing and installing exhaust flap control unit J883 . . . 298
3 SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system . . . 300
3.1 Exploded view - reducing agent tank . . . 300
3.2 Exploded view - reducing agent supply line . . . 300
3.3 Releasing pressure in SCR system . . . 301
3.4 Draining reducing agent tank . . . 301
3.5 Removing and installing reducing agent tank . . . 302
3.6 Removing and installing injector for reducing agent N474 . . . 302
3.7 Removing and installing control unit for reducing agent metering system J880 . . . 303
4 Exhaust gas temperature control . . . 304

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control . . . 304
4.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 1 G235 . . . 305
4.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 2 G448 . . . 307
4.4 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 3 G495 . . . 308
4.5 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 4 G648 . . . 310
5 Exhaust gas recirculation . . . 312
5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system . . . 312
5.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler . . . 314
5.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor G98 . . . 316
5.4 Removing and installing pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation G691 . . . 317
6 Exhaust manifold . . . 319
6.1 Exploded view - exhaust manifold . . . 319
6.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifold . . . 319

28 - Glow plug system . . . 320
1 Glow plug system . . . 320
1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system . . . 320
1.2 Removing and installing glow plug . . . 322
1.3 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 . . . 325
1.4 Removing and installing Hall sender G40 . . . 326
1.5 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28 . . . 326

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Identification

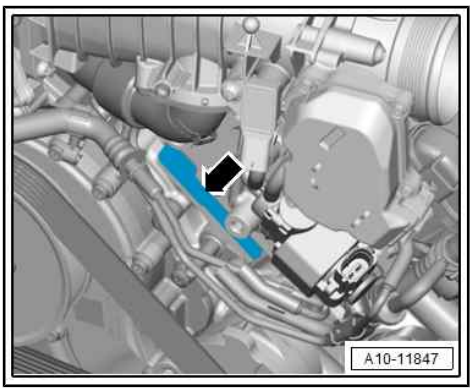
(ARL006246; Edition 01.2019)

⇒ "1.1 Engine number/engine data", page 1

1.1 Engine number/engine data

Engine number

- The engine number (engine code and serial number) can be found on the front of the cylinder block -arrow-.
- There is also a sticker on the intake manifold showing the engine code and serial number.
- In addition, the engine code is listed on the vehicle data stickers.



Engine data

For allocation of engine code, refer to ⇒ Technical data for engines; Rep. gr. 00 ; Overview of engines .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Safety precautions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.1 Safety precautions when working on the fuel system”, page 2

⇒ “2.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 2

⇒ “2.3 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test”, page 3

⇒ “2.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system”, page 3

⇒ “2.5 Safety precautions when working on the exhaust system”, page 3

⇒ “2.6 Safety precautions when working on the SCR system”, page 4

⇒ “2.7 Safety precautions when working on the glow plug system”, page 5

⇒ “2.8 Safety precautions when working on the subframe”, page 5

2.1 Safety precautions when working on the fuel system

Risk of injury - fuel system operates under high pressure

The fuel system is pressurised. There is a risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

Before opening the fuel system:

– Put on safety goggles.

– Put on protective gloves.

– Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).

Risk of fire due to escaping fuel

If the battery is connected, the door contact switch activates the fuel pump when the driver's door is opened. Escaping fuel may ignite, causing a fire.

– Before opening the fuel system, disconnect power supply to fuel pump.

2.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

The engine can start unexpectedly if the vehicle's start/stop system is activated. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate the start/stop system, switch off the ignition.

2.3 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Risk of injury if test equipment is not secured

If an accident occurs and the front passenger's airbag is triggered, test equipment which is not secured adequately may be catapulted through the vehicle with potentially serious consequences.

– Secure test equipment on the rear seat with a strap.

Or:

– Have a second mechanic operate test equipment on the rear seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system

Risk of scalding as hot coolant can escape

The cooling system is under pressure when the power unit is hot. Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

– Put on protective gloves.

– Put on safety goggles.

– Cover filler cap on expansion tank with a cloth and open carefully to release pressure.

2.5 Safety precautions when working on the exhaust system

Risk of damage to flexible joint

The flexible joint can be damaged or develop leaks if it is handled incorrectly.

– Do not bend flexible joint more than 10°.

– Install flexible joint so that it is not under tension.

Risk of injury caused by components of the exhaust system

Danger of injury to hands and other parts of the body due to hot or sharp parts of the exhaust system.

– Allow exhaust system to cool down.

– Put on protective gloves.

Risk of poisoning due to chemical substances

Exhaust gas temperature senders contain chemical substances. There is a risk of poisoning and of damage to the respiratory tract.

– Never open exhaust gas temperature sender, e.g. by cutting or sawing it open.

Risk of injury due to hot condensation and particles in exhaust system

There may be hot condensation and/or particles in the exhaust system. Risk of eye and skin injuries, damage to the respiratory tract and poisoning.

- Wear protective gloves and safety goggles while performing cutting work on the exhaust system.
- When performing cutting work, use an extraction system or ensure sufficient ventilation.

2.6 Safety precautions when working on the SCR system

Risk of injury caused by reducing agent

Reducing agent can cause eye and skin irritation, damage to the respiratory tract and poisoning.

- Put on safety goggles.
- Put on protective gloves.
- Wear protective clothing.
- Ensure that there is sufficient fresh air. In enclosed spaces, switch on the exhaust extraction system.

Risk of damage caused by reducing agent

Reducing agent which has come into contact with trim or body components can crystallise after some time and damage the affected surfaces.

- Ensure that no reducing agent makes contact with parts of trim or body.
- Clean any surfaces which have come into contact with reducing agent immediately with water and a cloth.

When removing and installing components at the SCR system, note the following:

- The reducing agent tank must be empty when you are working on the SCR system. Refer to the corresponding work description to find out when the reducing agent must be drained from the tank. Drain the reducing agent tank if necessary; procedure ⇒ page 301 .

When removing and installing the reducing agent tank, note the following:

- The reducing agent tank must be empty. Drain the reducing agent tank if necessary; procedure ⇒ page 301 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Automatic drawing back of reducing agent

- After the ignition is switched off, the reducing agent is automatically drawn back into the reducing agent tank from the metering line leading to the injector for reducing agent - N474- .
- Before performing work in this area, you must therefore wait until the reducing agent has been drawn back; this can take up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.
- It is also important to wait until the reducing agent has been drawn back (i.e. 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off) before disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7 Safety precautions when working on the glow plug system

It is important to note the following points regarding ceramic glow plugs:

Caution

- *Due to the special properties of the material used, ceramic glow plugs are easily damaged and require extra care when handling and removing/installing.*
- *Transport and store only in original packaging or packed separately in bubble wrap.*
- *Do not remove new ceramic glow plugs from packaging until they are ready to be fitted.*
- *Ceramic glow plugs are sensitive to knocks and bending. For this reason, ceramic glow plugs which have been dropped (even from a height of only about 2 cm) must not be installed, even if no damage is apparent (hair-line cracks may not be visible).*
- *Always install a new ceramic glow plug if you are not sure the old one is in perfect condition.*
- *Damaged glow plugs (e.g. heater pin of ceramic glow plug is damaged) will invariably cause engine damage.*
- *If the heater pin of the glow plug is damaged, the fragments must be removed from the combustion chamber before starting the engine for the first time, otherwise this will invariably cause mechanical damage (piston seizure). If necessary, the cylinder head must be removed.*
- *The software of the engine control unit is specifically adapted to either the ceramic or the metal glow plugs, so it is important to install the correct type.*
- *Mixed installation of ceramic glow plugs and metal glow plugs on the same engine is not permissible.*

2.8 Safety precautions when working on the subframe

Risk of damage to components

Lowering the vehicle onto its wheels can damage components if the assembly mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly fitted.

– Never lower vehicle onto its wheels with suspension components unfastened or detached.

– Never support weight of vehicle on subframe or subframe cross brace with suspension components unfastened or detached.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Repair instructions

⇒ “3.1 Rules for cleanliness”, page 7

⇒ “3.2 General notes”, page 7

⇒ “3.3 General repair instructions”, page 8

⇒ “3.4 Foreign particles in engine”, page 9

⇒ “3.5 Contact corrosion”, page 9

⇒ “3.6 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring”, page 10

⇒ “3.7 Installing radiators and condensers”, page 10

⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

3.1 Rules for cleanliness

Even small quantities of dirt can lead to defects. For this reason, please observe the following rules when working on the fuel supply system, turbocharger and injection system:

- Clean connections and surrounding area thoroughly with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry cleaned area before loosening.
- Immediately seal open lines and connections with plugs (thoroughly cleaned), for example from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .
- After removal, place parts on a clean surface and cover them. Only use lint-free cloths.
- Carefully cover or seal open components if repairs cannot be carried out immediately.
- Only install clean components; replacement parts should only be unpacked immediately prior to installation. Do not use parts that have not been stored in the proper packaging (e.g. in tool boxes etc.).
- Do not work with compressed air when the system is open. If possible, do not move vehicle.
- Protect unplugged electrical connectors against dirt and moisture and make sure connections are dry when attaching.
- Also ensure that no diesel fuel comes into contact with the coolant hoses. Should this occur, the hoses must be cleaned immediately. Damaged hoses must be renewed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 General notes

Fuel supply/injection

- The engine control unit has a self-diagnosis capability. Before carrying out repairs and fault finding, the event memory must be interrogated. The vacuum hoses and connections must also be checked (unmetered air).
- A voltage of at least 11.5 V is required for proper operation of the electrical components.
- Do not use sealants containing silicone. Particles of silicone drawn into the engine will not be burnt in the engine and will damage the Lambda probe.
- The vehicles are fitted with a crash fuel shut-off system. This system is designed to reduce the risk of a vehicle fire after a crash by deactivating the fuel pump.

- At the same time, this system also improves the engine's starting performance. When the driver's door is opened, the fuel pump is activated for 2 seconds in order to build up pressure in the fuel system ⇒ page 2 .

Glow plug system

- The glow plug system is activated via the automatic glow period control unit - J179- . The control unit is self-diagnosis compatible.
- Fitting location of automatic glow period control unit -J179- ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- A fault is stored in the engine control unit - J623- if a fault occurs in the glow plug system.
- Checking glow plug system ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- For faster starting, the vehicle is equipped with electronically controlled glow plugs and a separate glow period control unit.
- Each glow plug is activated and diagnosed separately.

Note

- *Wait for 60 seconds each time after performing final control diagnosis of the glow period control unit. The ignition must remain switched on.*
- *If you do not wait for 60 seconds (if ignition is switched off and immediately switched on again), the glow plugs can be damaged (due to repeated pre-heating).*
- *The activation of the glow plugs is controlled according to coolant temperature.*

3.3 General repair instructions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

The high-pressure pump has very close tolerances and must not be allowed to run without fuel. To prevent this and to enable the engine to start quickly after parts have been renewed, it is important to observe the following:

- ***If components of the fuel system between the fuel tank and the high-pressure pump are removed or renewed, the fuel system must be filled and bled before the engine is started for the first time ⇒ page 217 .***

- Clean tools and workbench etc. before working on the injection system.
- Before installing, check the injectors and their surroundings visually; they must be undamaged and clean. Make sure the injector bores in the cylinder head are clean. Wipe out if necessary using a clean cloth, taking care not to cause damage. Do not use sharp objects of any kind.
- If the high-pressure fuel lines are to be re-used, you must mark them before removal. High-pressure pipes must always be re-installed on the same cylinder.
- Take care not to damage the injectors when removing the old copper seals.

- Check all new O-rings for damage before installing. Lubricate O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.
- Position high-pressure pipes so they are free of stress. Tighten all unions lightly to start with before tightening to final torque.
- Never attempt to bend high-pressure fuel lines to shape.
- When working on any parts of the high-pressure fuel system, tools may only be used for loosening and tightening pipe unions. All other components must always be removed and installed by hand without using tools or other equipment.
- Press the fuel return hoses onto the injectors by hand from above so that they engage audibly on each injector (do not press in the release pins when doing this). Then press down the release pin after connecting the return line. Check that the fuel return hoses are seated securely and sealed properly by pulling them by hand from above.
- Do not dismantle individual common rail components. If there is a fault, the complete components must be renewed.
- When the engine is running, do not perform any repairs to the common rail system.
- Do not bleed the common rail system by unfastening high-pressure components after the engine has been started.
- Use correct type of fasteners for electrical wiring (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Fuel hoses in engine compartment must only be secured with spring-type clips. O-type clips or screw-type clips must not be used.

3.4 Foreign particles in engine

- When performing assembly work on the engine, all open passages in the intake and exhaust systems must be sealed with suitable plugs (e.g. from engine bung set - VAS 6122-) to prevent foreign particles from entering the engine.
- In the event of mechanical damage to one of the cylinder banks, the intake and exhaust systems and combustion chambers of the opposite cylinder bank must always be examined to prevent further damage occurring later.
- If the turbocharger has suffered mechanical damage ⇒ page 206

3.5 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

Additionally, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Always install new parts if you are not sure whether used parts can be re-fitted ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts; these have been tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by warranty.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring

- Mark fuel lines, hydraulic lines, vacuum lines, lines for activated charcoal filter and electrical wiring etc. before removal so they can be re-installed in the original positions and correctly connected. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.
- To avoid damaging pipes, hoses and wiring, ensure sufficient clearance from all moving or hot components in engine compartment (limited space in engine compartment).

3.7 Installing radiators and condensers

Even when the radiator, condenser and charge air cooler are correctly installed, slight impressions may be visible on the fins of these components. This does not mean that the components are damaged. If the fins are only very slightly distorted, this does not justify renewal of the radiator, charge air cooler or condenser.

3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component

After a component has been renewed, the following programs must be performed using the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Select the correct Guided Function in the Guided Fault Finding routine. The procedure for starting the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester is always the same.

– Connect ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Select `Diagnosis` mode and then `Start diagnosis`.

– Choose `Select own test` tab and select following options one after the other:

Procedure - version 1:

- `Drive train`
- `Select engine code and engine`
- `0001 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems`
- `0001 - Engine electronics`
- `0001 - Engine electronics, functions`

After renewing engine control unit:

- `0001 - Replace engine control unit`

The learnt values must be adapted if components of the engine or reducing agent system have been renewed or if a reducing agent line has been opened:

- `0001 - Work steps after component replacement`

Learnt values must be adapted after renewing control unit for reducing agent metering system - J880- :

- `0001 - Replace control unit for reducing agent metering system`

Procedure - version 2:

- `Systems with diagnostic capability`
- `0001 - Engine electronics J623`

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 0001 - Engine electronics, functions

After renewing engine control unit:

- 0001 - Replace engine control unit

The learnt values must be adapted if components of the engine or reducing agent system have been renewed or if a reducing agent line has been opened:

- 0001 - Work steps after component replacement

Learnt values must be adapted after renewing control unit for reducing agent metering system - J880- :

- Systems with diagnostic capability
- 00AC - Control unit for reducing agent metering system -J880
- 00AC - Control unit for reducing agent metering system, functions
- 00AC - Replace control unit for reducing agent metering system

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 – Removing and installing engine

1 Removing and installing engine

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Assembly mountings

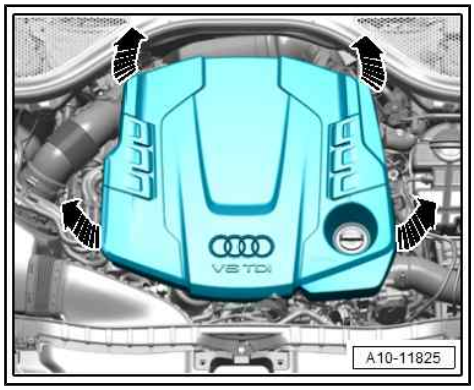
All procedures and components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Assembly mountings .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Engine cover panel

⇒ “3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel”, page 14

3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel



Removing

– Carefully pull engine cover panel off retaining pins one after another -arrows-. Do not jerk engine cover panel away, and do not try to pull on one side only. (Different versions.)

Installing

– To avoid damage, do not strike the engine cover panel with your fist or with any kind of tool.

– When fitting engine cover panel, take care not to damage oil filler neck.

– First press engine cover panel onto rear retaining pins and then onto front retaining pins with both hands.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 – Crankshaft group

1 Cylinder block (pulley end)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end)”, page 15

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 21

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt”, page 22

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt”, page 26

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing vibration damper”, page 27

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries”, page 29

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing engine support”, page 31

⇒ “1.8 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (pulley end)”, page 31

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 33

1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end)

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with alternator”, page 15

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 18

1.1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with alternator

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Poly V-belt

- ❑ Check for wear
- ❑ Do not kink
- ❑ Routing of poly V-belt ⇒ page 18
- ❑ Before removing, mark direction of rotation with chalk or felt-tip pen
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt”, page 22
- ❑ When installing, make sure it is properly seated on pulleys

2 - Vibration damper

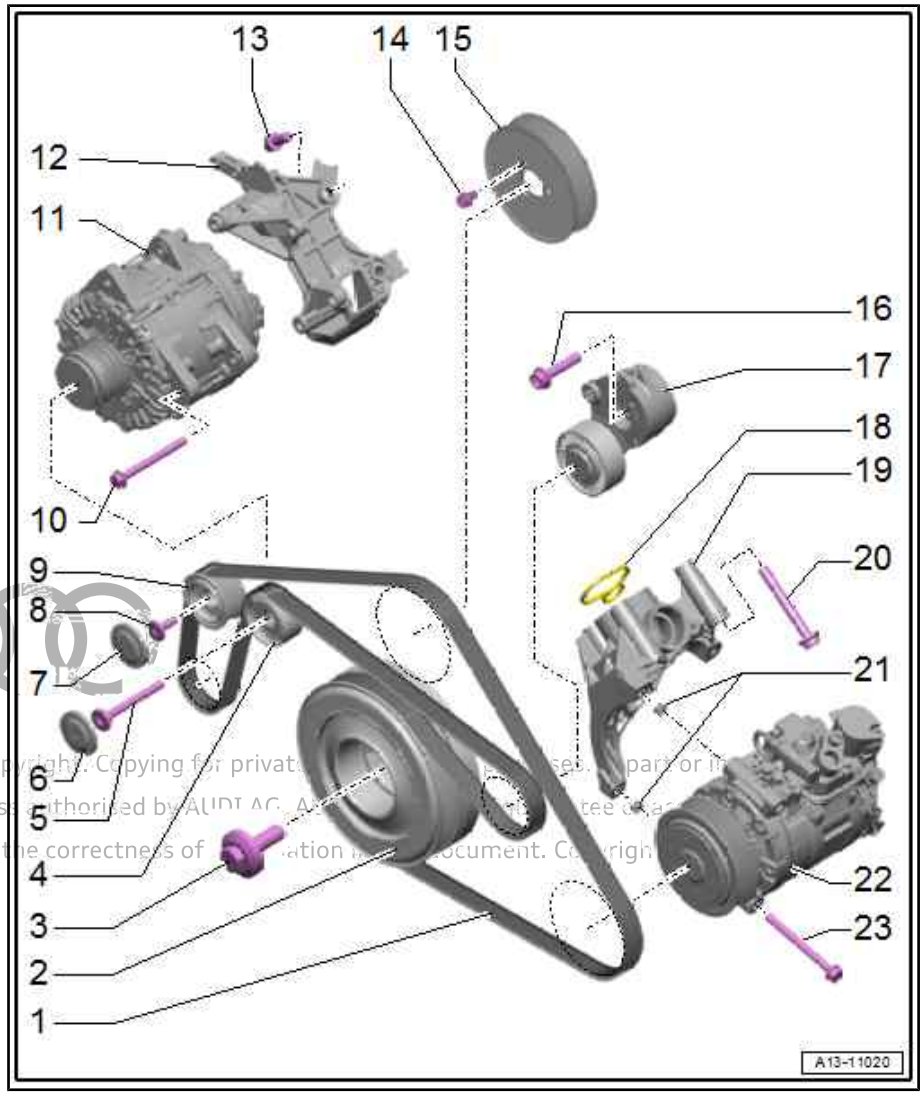
- ❑ With poly V-belt pulley
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing vibration damper”, page 27

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 150 Nm +90°

4 - Idler roller

- ❑ For poly V-belt
- ❑ On some models, radiator must be released at top and pressed forwards slightly before it is removed ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans; Exploded view - radiator/radiator fans



5 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

6 - Cover

- ❑ For idler roller

7 - Cover

- ❑ For idler roller

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

9 - Idler roller

- ❑ For poly V-belt

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

11 - Alternator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Removing and installing alternator

12 - Bracket

- ❑ For alternator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing bracket for alternator - vehicles with alternator”, page 29

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 17

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 2 (page 189)

15 - Pulley

- ❑ For coolant pump

16 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 50 Nm +90°

17 - Tensioner

- ❑ For poly V-belt
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “1.4.1 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt - vehicles with alternator”, page 26

18 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

19 - Bracket

- ❑ For air conditioner compressor
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing bracket for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 30

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tighten in 2 stages and in diagonal sequence:

♦ 5 Nm

♦ 40 Nm

21 - Dowel sleeves

22 - Air conditioner compressor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket

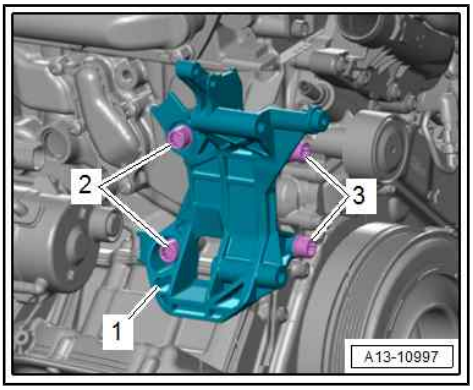
23 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit

Bracket for alternator -1- - tightening torque and sequence

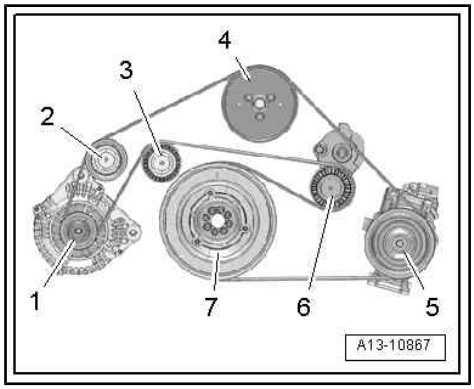
– Tighten bolts in stages as follows:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-2-	3 Nm
2.	-3-	40 Nm
3.	-2-	40 Nm



Routing of poly V-belt

1 - Alternator
2 - Idler roller
3 - Idler roller
4 - Coolant pump
5 - Air conditioner compressor
6 - Tensioner for poly V-belt
7 - Vibration damper



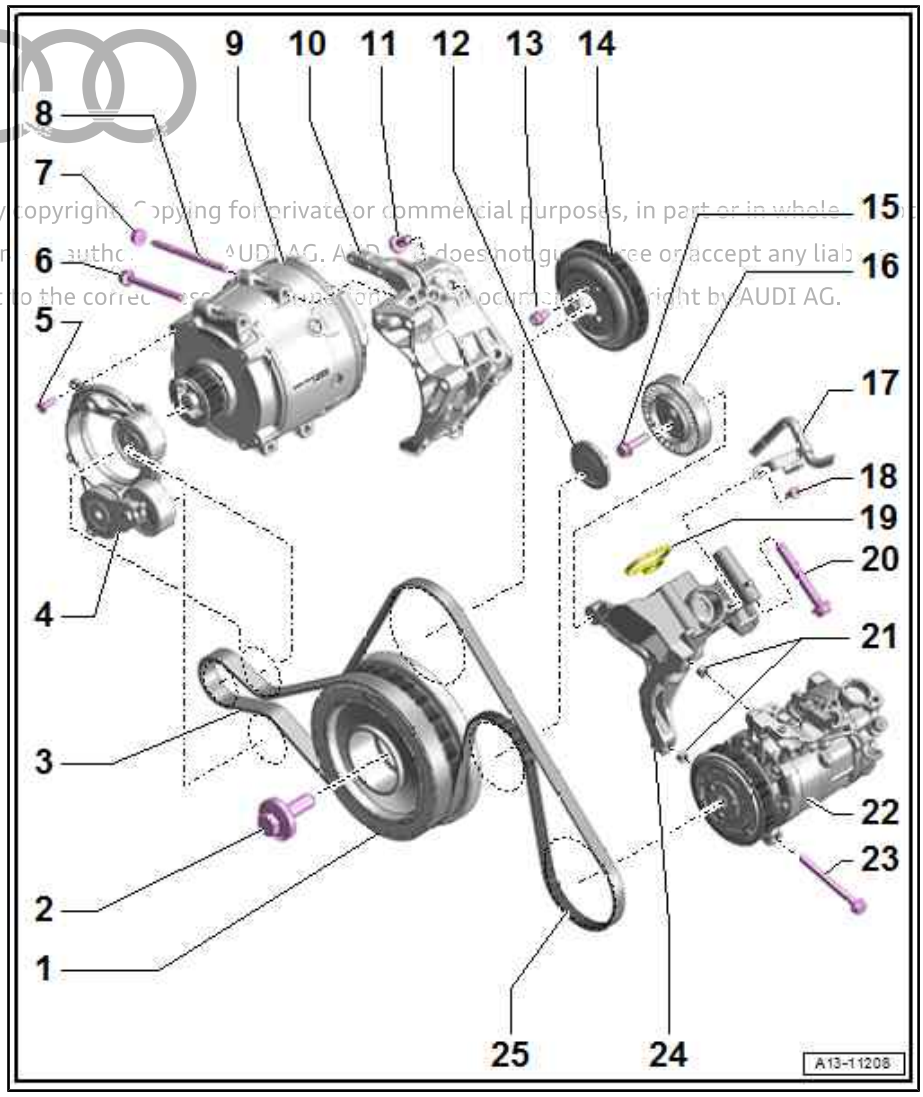
1.1.2 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with starter-alternator

1 - Vibration damper
- ❑ With poly V-belt pulley
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing vibration damper”, page 27

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 150 Nm +90°

3 - Poly V-belt
- ❑ For starter-alternator
- ❑ Check for wear
- ❑ Do not kink
- ❑ Routing of poly V-belt ⇒ Fig. ““Belt routing for starter-alternator -C29-”“ , page 20
- ❑ Before removing, mark direction of rotation with chalk or felt-tip pen
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23
- ❑ When installing, make sure it is properly seated on pulleys

4 - Tensioner
- ❑ For poly V-belt for starter-alternator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.4.2 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt for starter-alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 26



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm +45°

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

7 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

8 - Stud

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

9 - Starter-alternator - C29-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

10 - Bracket

- ❑ For starter-alternator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 20

12 - Cover

- ❑ For idler roller

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 2 (page 189)

14 - Pulley

- ❑ For coolant pump

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 25 Nm

16 - Tensioner

- ❑ For poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

17 - Vacuum line

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

18 - Bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ 9 Nm

19 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

20 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tighten in 2 stages and in diagonal sequence:

♦ 5 Nm

♦ 40 Nm

21 - Dowel sleeves

22 - Air conditioner compressor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

23 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit

24 - Bracket

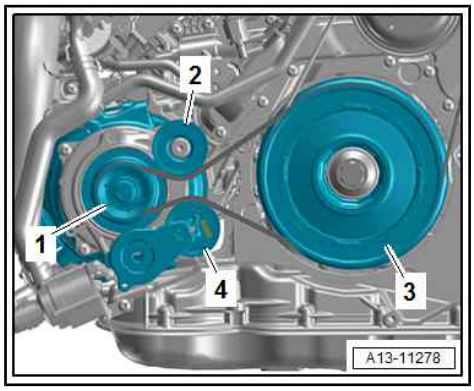
- ❑ For air conditioner compressor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries

25 - Poly V-belt

- ❑ Check for wear
- ❑ Do not kink
- ❑ Routing of poly V-belt ⇒ Fig. ""Belt routing for air conditioner compressor"" , page 20
- ❑ Before removing, mark direction of rotation with chalk or felt-tip pen
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ "1.3.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator", page 25
- ❑ When installing, make sure it is properly seated on pulleys

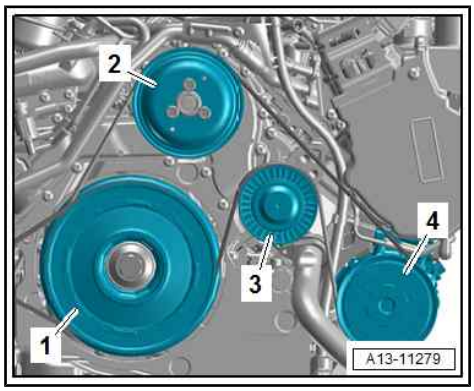
Belt routing for starter-alternator - C29-

1 - Alternator
2 - Idler roller
3 - Vibration damper
4 - Tensioner



Belt routing for air conditioner compressor

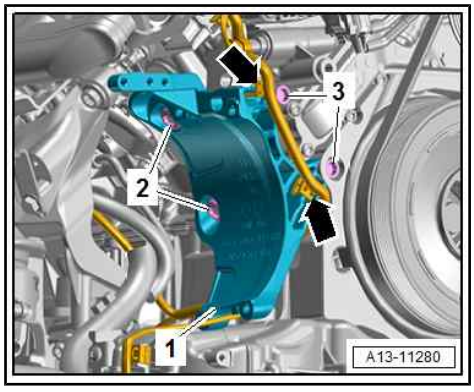
1 - Vibration damper
2 - Coolant pump
3 - Tensioner for poly V-belt
4 - Air conditioner compressor



Bracket -1- for starter-alternator - C29- - tightening torque and tightening sequence

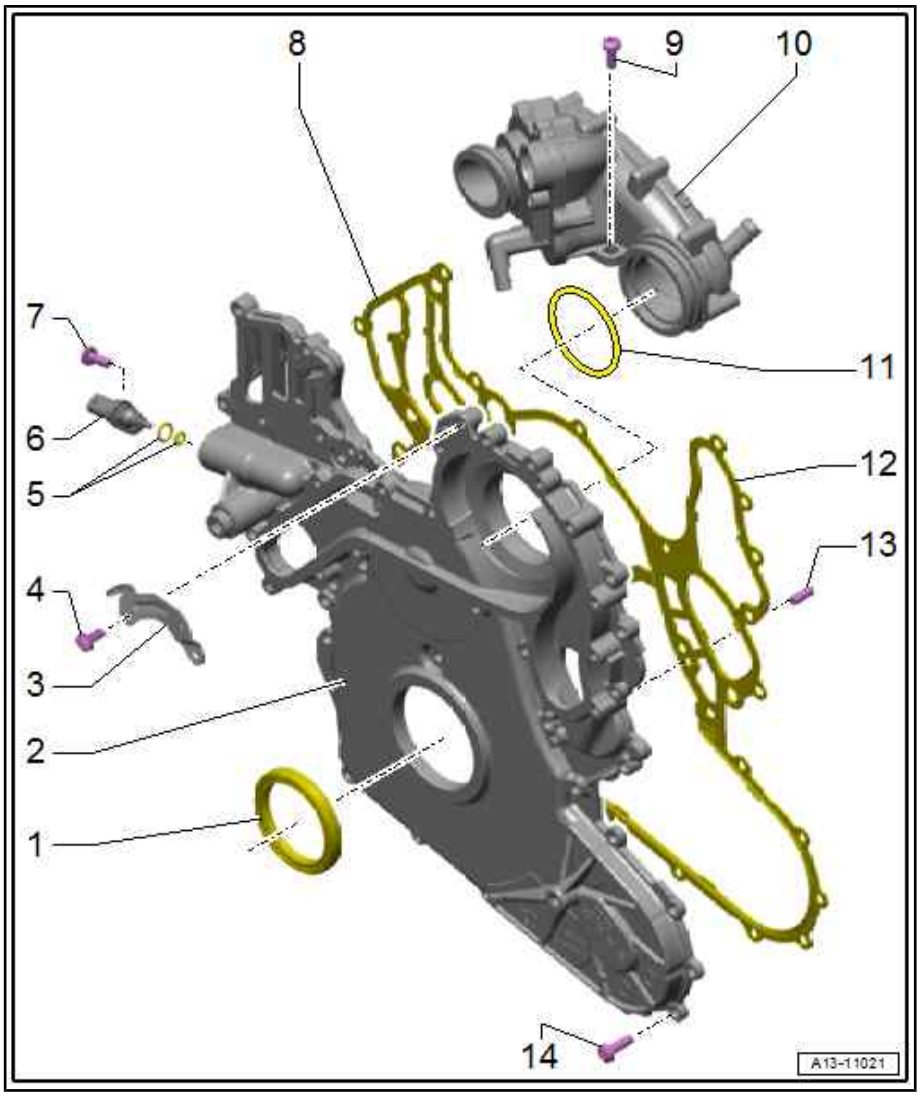
– Tighten bolts in stages as follows:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-2-	3 Nm
2.	-3-	40 Nm
3.	-2-	40 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - sealing flange (pulley end)



1 - Oil seal
- ❑ For crankshaft (pulley end)
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 31

2 - Sealing flange (pulley end)
- ❑ With noise insulation
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 33

3 - Bracket
- ❑ For intake manifold flap motor - V157-
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - O-rings
- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Oil temperature sender 2 - G664-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 181

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

8 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 190

10 - Thermostat housing

11 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

12 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

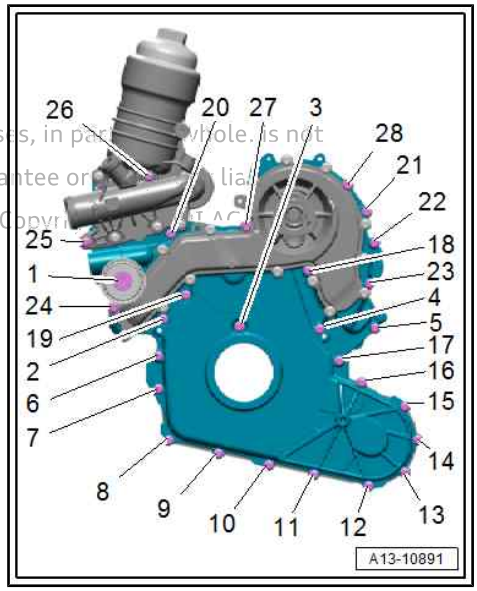
13 - Dowel pin
- ❑ 2x

14 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 22

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Sealing flange (pulley end) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:



Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-	Fit sealing flange with gasket on cylinder block
2.	-1-	For idler roller ⇒ Item 5 (page 16) ; tighten if fitted
3.	-2 … 23-	Pre-tighten to 3 Nm.
4.	-24 … 28-	Pre-tighten to 3 Nm[1)]
5.	-1-	Tighten bolts for idler roller further to same tightening torque ⇒ Item 5 (page 16) [2)]
6.	-2 … 23-	Tighten to 9 Nm
7.	-24 … 28-	Tighten to 9 Nm[1)]

♦ [1)] These bolts are only relevant if sealing flange is being installed together with oil filter and coolant pump.

♦ [2)] Final tightening to same tightening torque allows for setting of gasket.

1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt

⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22

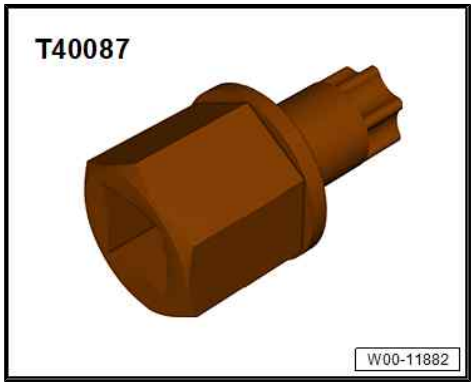
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23

⇒ “1.3.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 25

1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Socket Torx T60 - T40087-



♦ Locking tool - T40098-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing poly V-belt .

– If not removed already, remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .

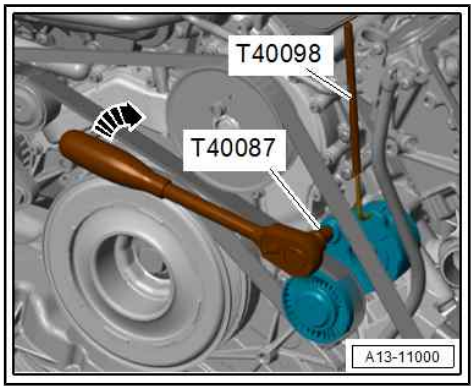
Caution

Running a used poly V-belt in the opposite direction could cause irreparable damage.

♦ ***Before removing the poly V-belt, mark the direction of rotation with chalk or a felt-tip pen for re-installation.***

– Slacken poly V-belt by turning tensioner in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- using socket Torx T 60 - T40087- .

– Detach poly V-belt and lock tensioner with locking tool - T40098- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit poly V-belt ⇒ page 18 .

– Check that poly V-belt is properly seated.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing poly V-belt

– Start engine and check that poly V-belt runs properly.

Tightening torques

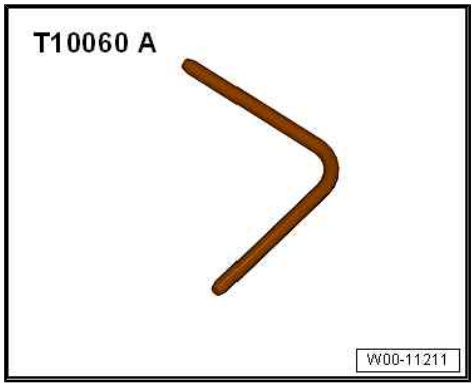
♦ ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator

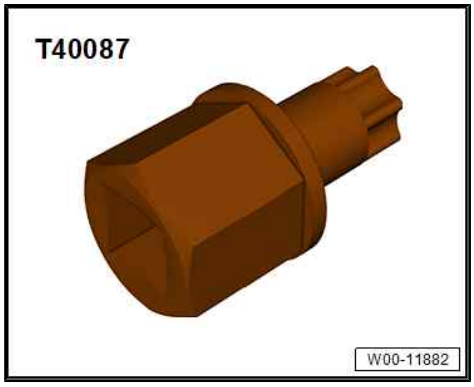
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Locking pin - T10060A-



- Socket Torx T60 - T40087-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing poly V-belt .

Caution

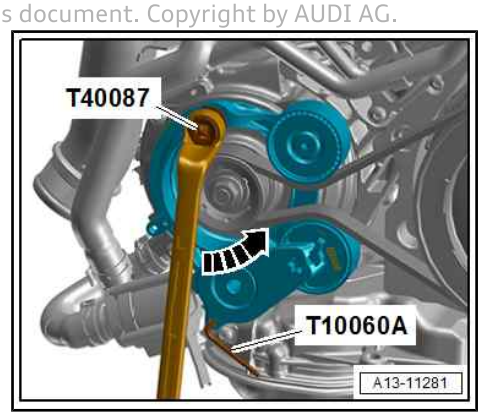
Running a used poly V-belt in the opposite direction could cause irreparable damage.

- ***Before removing the poly V-belt, mark the direction of rotation with chalk or a felt-tip pen for re-installation.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slacken poly V-belt by turning tensioner in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- using socket Torx T 60 - T40087- .

– Lock tensioner with locking pin - T10060A- and take off poly V-belt.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit poly V-belt
⇒ Fig. ""Belt routing for starter-alternator -C29- "" , page 20 .

– Check that poly V-belt is properly seated.

– Start engine and check that poly V-belt runs properly.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

1.3.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special wrench Torx T55 (commercially available)

Removing

– Remove poly V-belt for alternator
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23 .

Caution

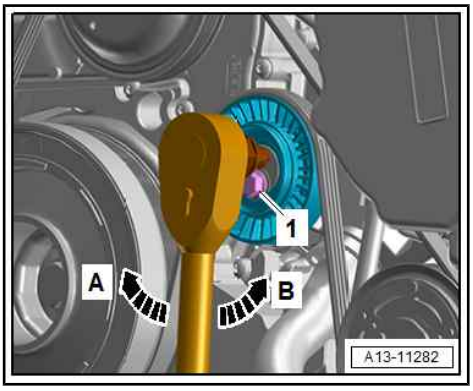
Running a used poly V-belt in the opposite direction could cause irreparable damage.

- ***Before removing the poly V-belt, mark the direction of rotation with chalk or a felt-tip pen for re-installation.***

– Remove cover.

– Loosen bolt -1- half a turn.

– To slacken poly V-belt, turn tensioner anti-clockwise -arrow B- using special wrench Torx T55. Then remove poly V-belt.



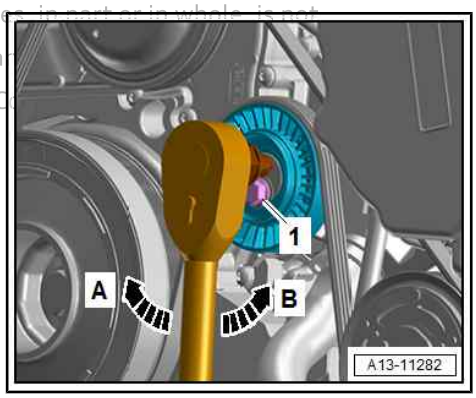
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit poly V-belt
⇒ Fig. ““Belt routing for air conditioner compressor”“ , page 20 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To tension poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor, turn tensioner clockwise using special wrench Torx T55 -arrow A- as far as stop (tensioner should remain under tension).



– Tighten bolt -1-.

– Check that poly V-belt is properly seated.

– Install poly V-belt for alternator
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23 .

– Start engine and check that poly V-belt runs properly.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 18

1.4 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt

⇒ “1.4.1 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt - vehicles with alternator”, page 26

⇒ “1.4.2 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt for starter-alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 26

⇒ “1.4.3 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 27

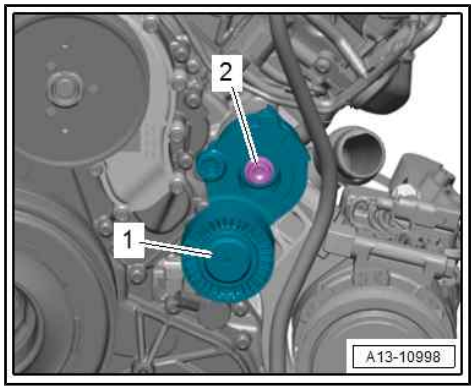
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.1 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt - vehicles with alternator

Removing

– Detach poly V-belt from tensioner
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .

– Remove bolt -2- and detach poly V-belt tensioner -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with alternator”, page 15

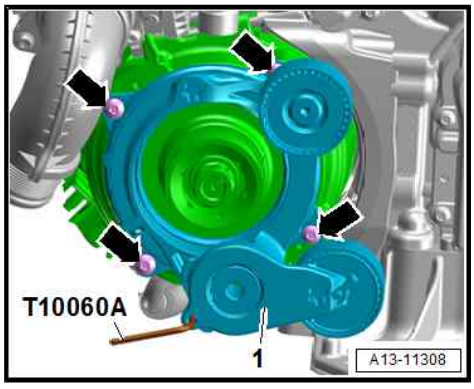
1.4.2 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt for starter-alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator

Removing

– Detach poly V-belt from tensioner
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Remove tensioner -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 23 .

Tightening torques

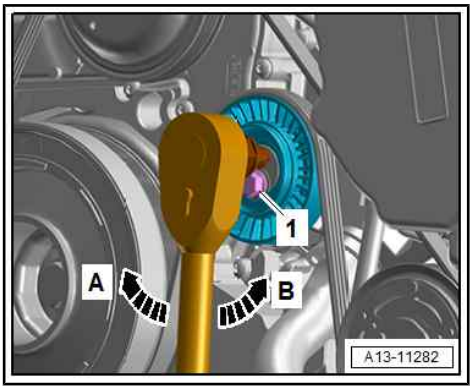
◆ ⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 18

1.4.3 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator

Removing

– Slacken poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 25 .

– Remove bolt -1- and detach tensioner.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 25 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 18

1.5 Removing and installing vibration damper

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Counterhold tool - T40298- (not illustrated)

♦ Adapter - T40384-

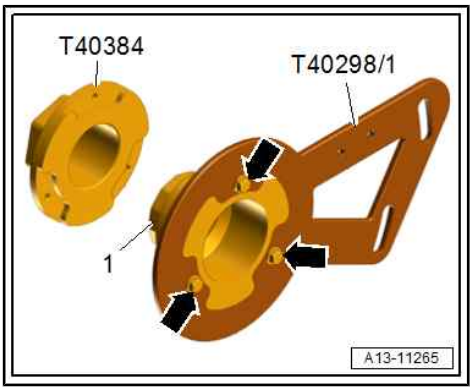


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Preparing tool

– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach adapter -1- from counterhold tool -T40298/1- .

– Secure adapter -T40384- to counterhold tool.

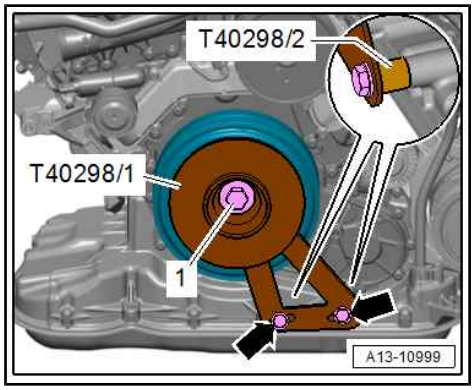


Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing vibration damper .

– Remove poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt”, page 22 .

– Apply counterhold tool - T40298/1- to vibration damper and secure with bolts -arrows- (tighten to 23 Nm and fit spacer sleeves - T40298/2- in between).
– To insert the counterhold tool -T40298/1- , the radiator cowl may need to be pushed forwards slightly.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach counterhold tool - T40298/1- and remove together with vibration damper.



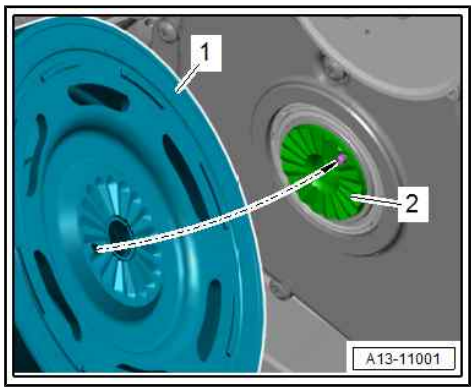
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

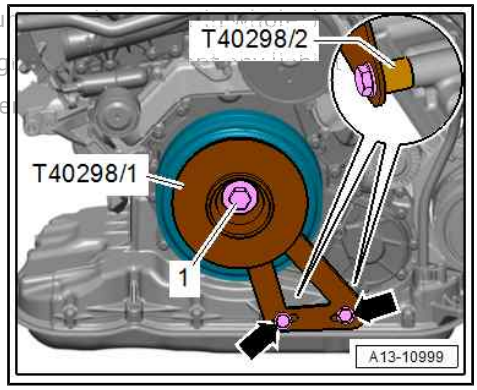
After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Position vibration damper -1- on crankshaft -2- and secure with a new bolt (pay attention to dowel sleeve -arrow-).



Copyright by AUDI AG. Any commercial pu... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g... with respect to the correctness of information in this docume...

– Apply counterhold tool - T40298/1- to vibration damper and secure with bolts -arrows- (tighten to 23 Nm and fit spacer sleeves - T40298/2- in between).
– Tighten bolt -1- for vibration damper.
– Remove counterhold tool - T40298/1- .
– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing poly V-belt”, page 22 .



Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing vibration damper

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end)”, page 15

1.6 Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries

⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing bracket for alternator - vehicles with alternator”, page 29

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing bracket for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 30

⇒ “1.6.3 Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 31

1.6.1 Removing and installing bracket for alternator - vehicles with alternator

Removing

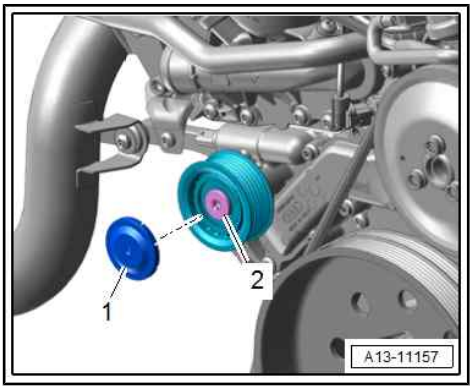
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries .

– Remove poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .

– Remove alternator ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Removing and installing alternator .

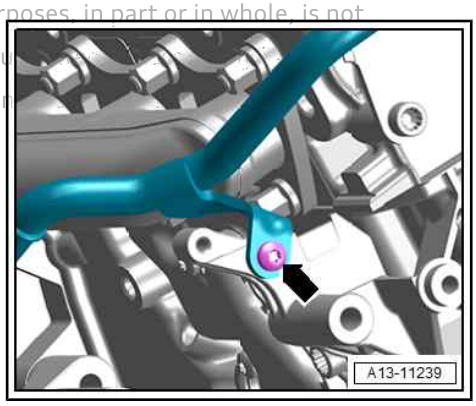
– Unclip cover -1-.

– Remove bolt -2- and push idler roller forwards.



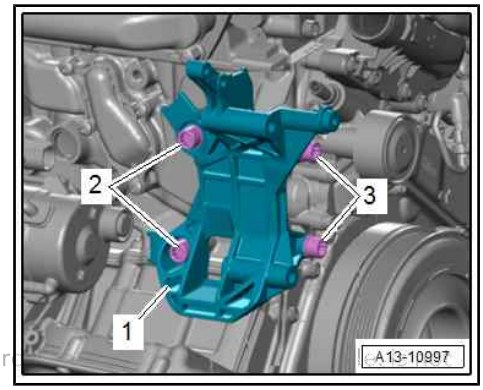
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Remove bolt -arrow- for coolant pipe (front).



– Move electrical wiring clear.

– Unscrew bolts -2, 3- and remove bracket -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ““Bracket for alternator -1- - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 17
- ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes
- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator

1.6.2 Removing and installing bracket for air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator

Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries .

– Drain coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

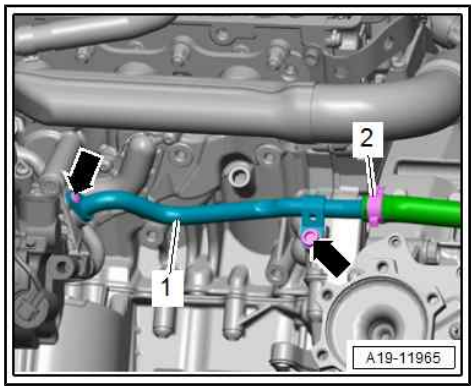
– Remove poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .

– Remove air conditioner compressor from bracket and tie up to left side ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket .

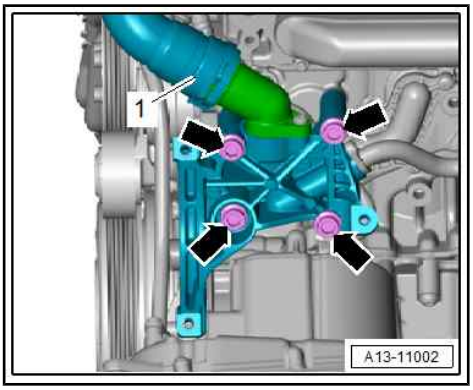
– Remove drive shaft cover (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach coolant pipe (left-side) -1- from bracket for air conditioner compressor, but leave it in installation position (engine support has been removed in illustration).



– Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.
– Lift retaining clip and disconnect coolant hose -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket for air conditioner compressor.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew seal and O-ring after removal.

– Install poly V-belt
⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing poly V-belt for alternator and air conditioner compressor - vehicles with alternator”, page 22 .
– Connect coolant hose with plug-in connector ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/ radiator fans; Exploded view - radiator/radiator fans .
– Install coolant pipe (left-side) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

Note

Do not reuse coolant.

– Fill up with coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (pulley end), vehicles with alternator”, page 15
- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit

1.6.3 Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries - vehicles with starter-alternator

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing bracket for ancillaries .

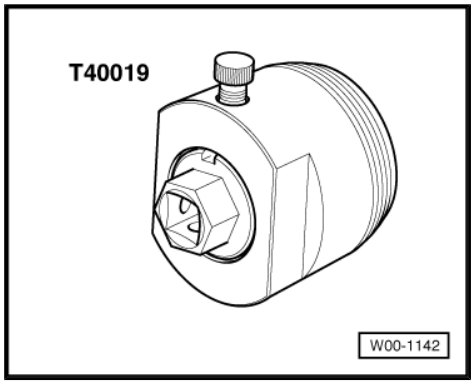
1.7 Removing and installing engine support

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing engine support .

1.8 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (pulley end)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Oil seal extractor - T40019-



♦ Assembly tool - T40320-



Procedure

– Remove vibration damper ⇒ page 27 .

– Adjust inner part of oil seal extractor -T40019- so it is flush with the outer part and lock in position with knurled screw.

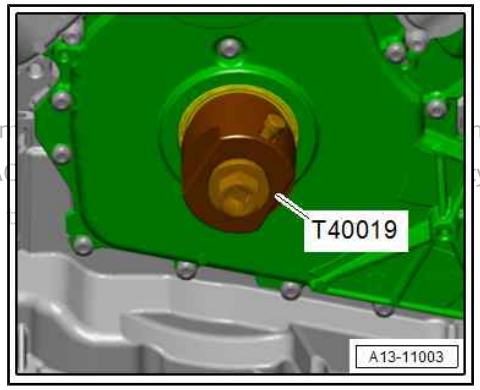
– Lubricate threaded head of oil seal extractor, place it in position and screw it into oil seal as far as possible (applying firm pressure).

– Loosen knurled screw and turn inner part against crankshaft until the oil seal is pulled out.

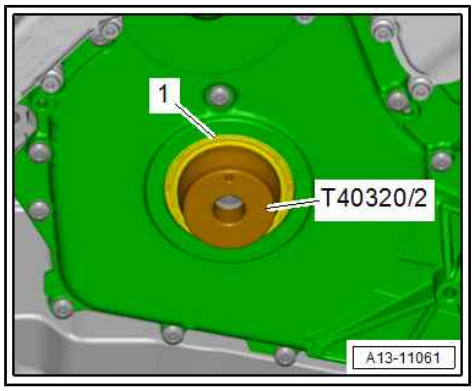
– Clamp flats of oil seal extractor in vice and use pliers to remove seal.

– Clean contact surface and sealing surface.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG... with respect to the correctness of information in...



– Fit guide sleeve -T40320/2- on crankshaft and slide oil seal -1- into sealing flange (pulley end).



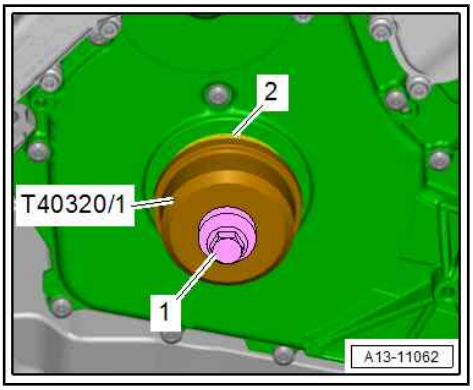
Note

Leave guide sleeve -T40320/2- in position on crankshaft for pressing in oil seal.

– Apply fitting sleeve -T40320/1- to crankshaft bolt -1- for vibration damper.
– Press oil seal -2- in as far as stop.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

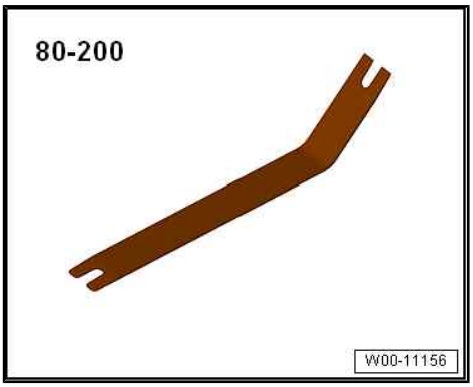
– Install vibration damper ⇒ page 27 .



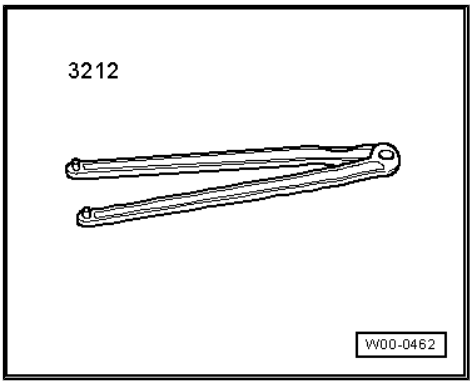
1.9 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

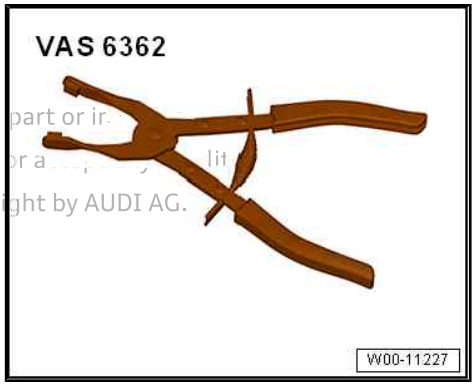
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Pin wrench - 3212-

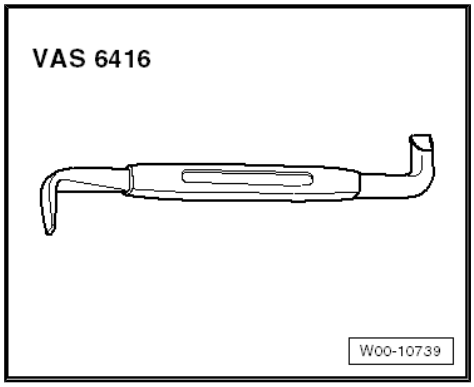


♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



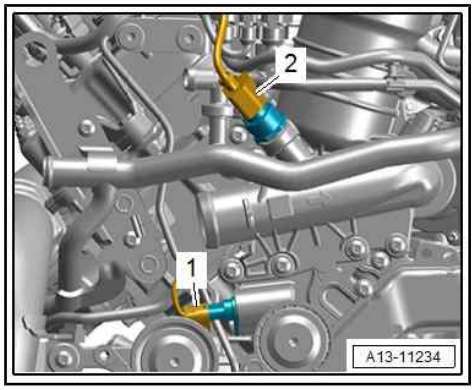
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

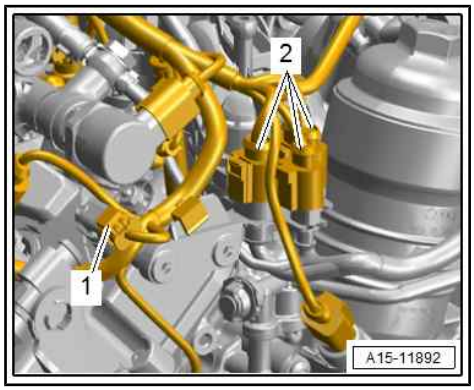
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end) .

– Drain engine oil and remove oil filter element ⇒ page 163 .

– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2- and move electrical wiring clear.

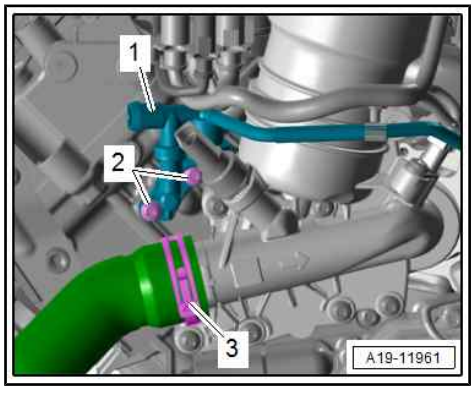


– Detach electrical connectors -2- from bracket and move electrical wiring harness clear at cylinder head cover using removal lever - 80-200- .

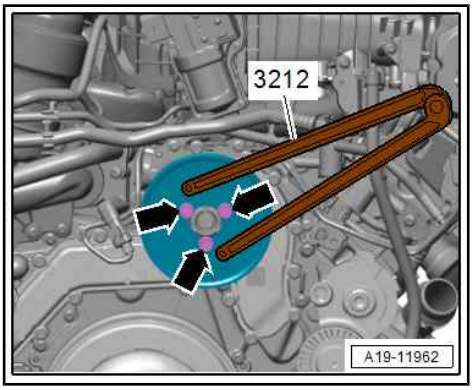


– Remove bolts -2- and push coolant connection -1- clear to one side.

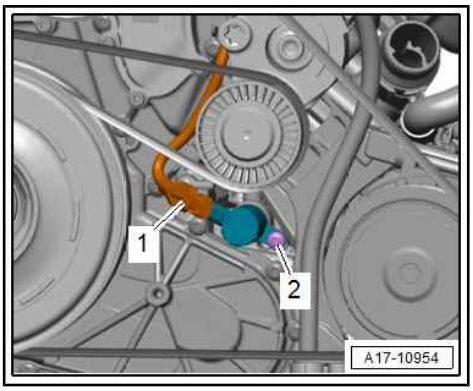
– If not removed already, release hose clip -3- and disconnect coolant hose.



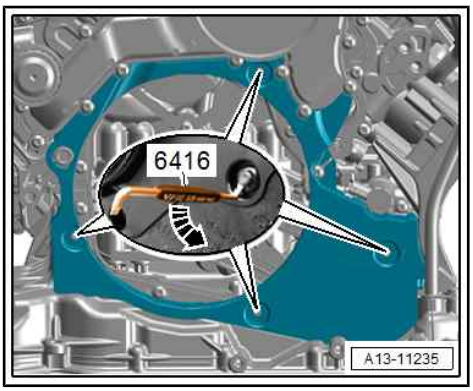
– Loosen bolts -arrows- for coolant pump pulley (counterhold with pin wrench - 3212-).
– Remove bolts and take off poly V-belt pulley.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- for valve for oil pressure control - N428- . (Illustration shows vehicle with alternator.)

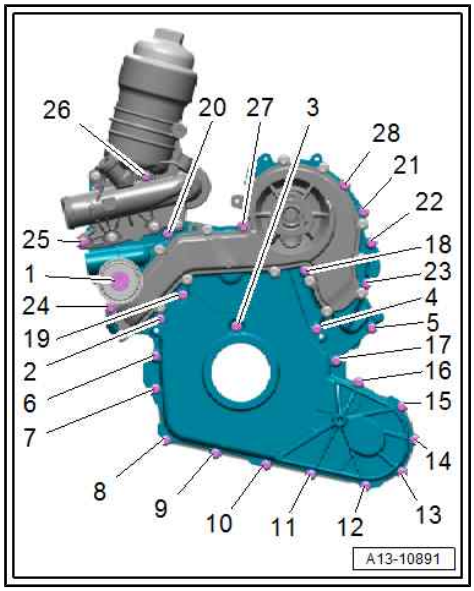


– If fitted, remove spreader rivets -arrow- using angle driver for cross-head screws - VAS 6416- and detach noise insulation.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip cover for idler roller.
– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -28 ... 2-.
– Vehicles with alternator: Remove bolt -1- for idler roller.
– Drive crankshaft oil seal out of sealing flange after removing sealing flange.



Installing

Note

- *Renew bolts after removing.*
- *Renew gasket, O-ring for temperature regulator and crankshaft oil seal after removing.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.
– Tighten sealing flange bolts (pulley end) ⇒ page 22 .

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install crankshaft oil seal (pulley end) ⇒ page 31 .
– Install oil filter element and fill up with engine oil ⇒ page 163 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 13 ; Cylinder block (pulley end); Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 21
- ⇒ Fig. ““Sealing flange (pulley end) - tightening torque and sequence””, page 22
- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold”, page 222
- ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head”, page 108
- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump”, page 189

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Cylinder block (gearbox end)

⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end)", page 37

⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 37

⇒ "2.3 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)", page 39

2.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end)

Note

Secure engine to engine and gearbox support when performing assembly work ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine; Securing engine to engine and gearbox support .

1 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threads in crankshaft before screwing in new bolts ⇒ page 37
- ❑ 60 Nm +90°

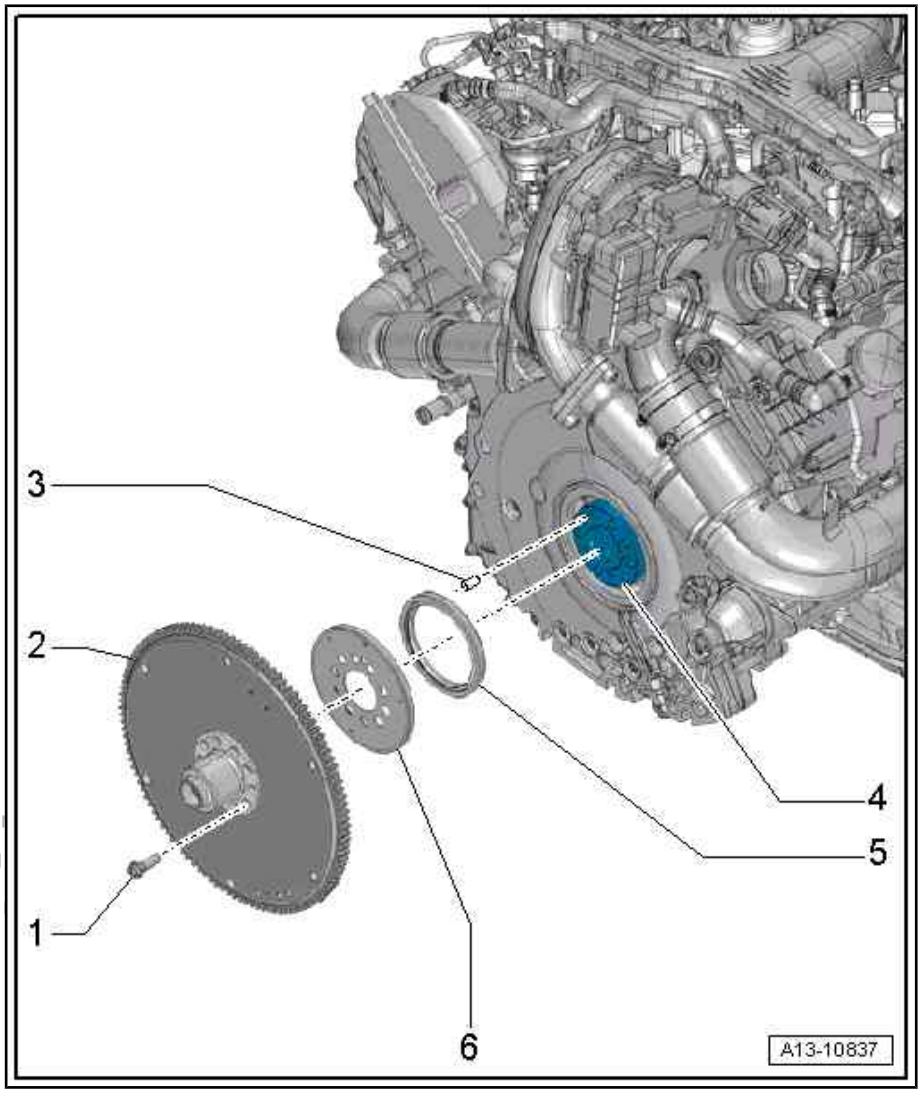
2 - Drive plate
- ❑ Check holes for clutch module/torque converter for cracks and scoring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37

3 - Dowel pin

4 - Crankshaft

5 - Oil seal
- ❑ For crankshaft (gearbox end)
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 39

6 - Sender wheel
- ❑ For engine speed sender - G28-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37
- ❑ Checking sender wheel ⇒ page 46

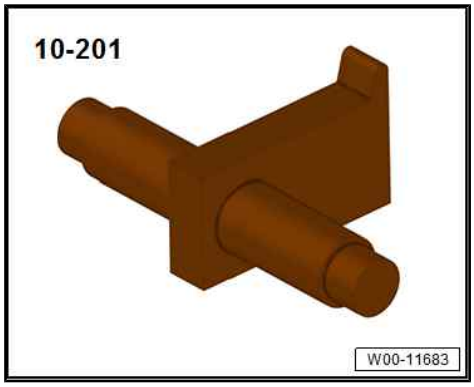


Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness of i

2.2 Removing and installing drive plate

Special tools and workshop equipment required

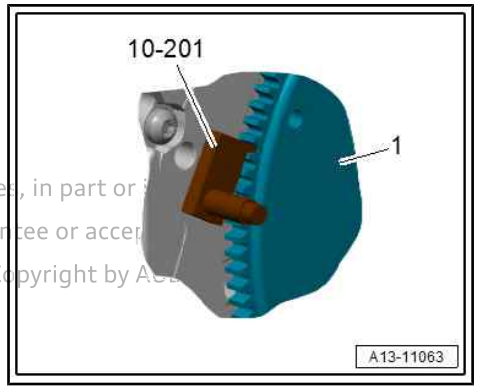
♦ Counterhold tool - 10-201-



Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox .

– Insert counterhold tool - 10-201- to slacken bolts for drive plate -1-.



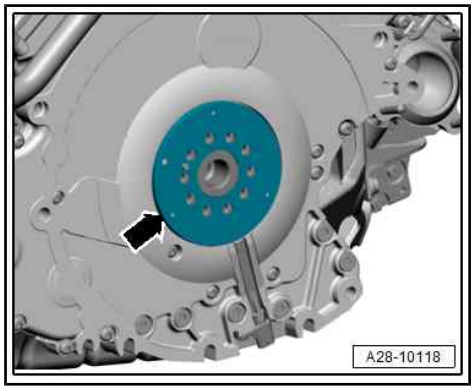
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Caution

Take care not to damage outer surface of bearing flange on drive plate.

♦ ***Use a multi-point socket bit with a length of at least 40 mm to slacken and tighten the drive plate bolts.***

– Remove bolts and take off drive plate and sender wheel -arrow-.



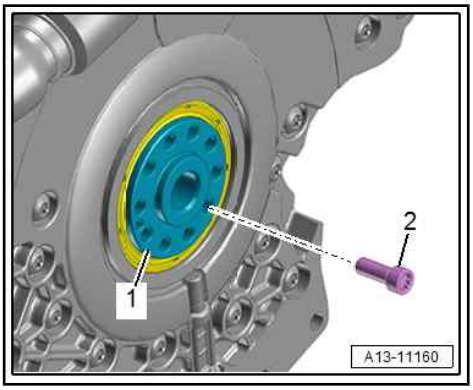
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Threads in crankshaft must be cleaned before any further assembly work is performed.



– Clean crankshaft flange until all residual adhesive has been removed completely.

• Ensure you do not damage oil seal when cleaning flange.

• Use a vacuum cleaner to hoover up residual adhesive; do NOT use compressed air.

– Remove residual adhesive from one of the old bolts -2- for drive plate using wire brush and remove oil residue using brake cleaner.

– Screw cleaned bolt into a thread on crankshaft -1- and out again; repeat this action until no further residual adhesive appears.

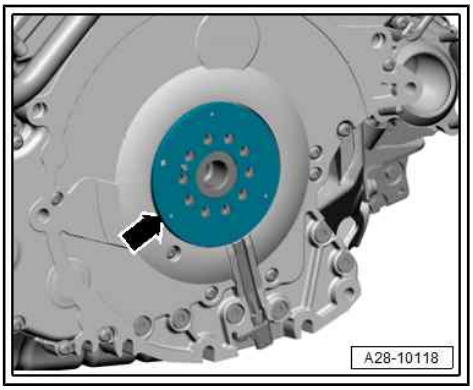
• Do not screw bolt in too far; otherwise, the camshaft timing chains located behind it may be damaged.

– When no further residual adhesive appears, repeat the procedure for the other crankshaft threads.

• Finally, use a vacuum cleaner to hoover up residual adhesive; do NOT use compressed air.

– Clean crankshaft flange with a cloth.

• Thread in crankshaft must be free of oil and grease.



– Check sender wheel ⇒ page 46 .

– Install sender wheel -arrow-.

– Pay attention to dowel pin when installing drive plate.

– Fit counterhold tool - 10-201- the other way round to tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

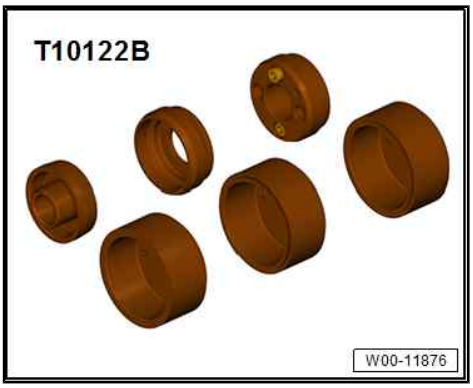
♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end)”, page 37

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

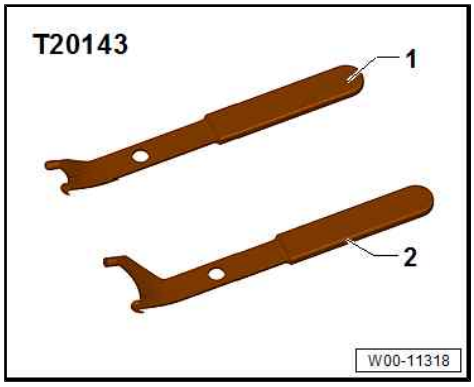
2.3 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Fitting tool - T10122B-



- Extractor tool - T20143/2-

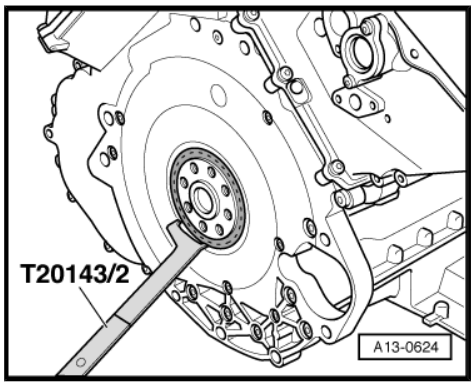


Procedure

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox .

– Remove drive plate ⇒ page 37 .

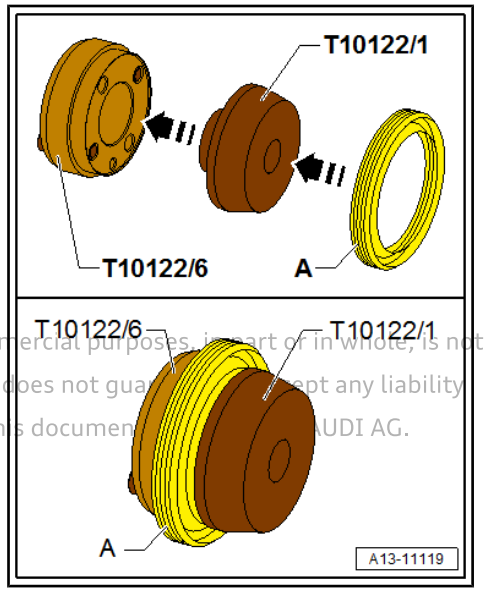
– Pry out oil seal using extractor tool -T20143/2- .



– Clean contact surface and sealing surface.

– Fit assembly aid -T10122/1- onto guide piece - T10122/6- and slide oil seal -A- onto guide piece.

– Detach assembly aid -T10122/1- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

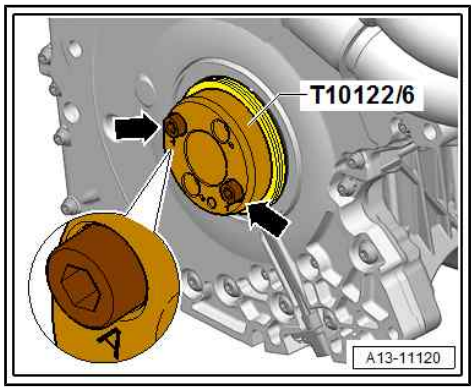
– Fit guide piece - T10122/6- onto crankshaft.

– Bolt guide piece to crankshaft through securing points -A- using bolts -arrows-.

Caution

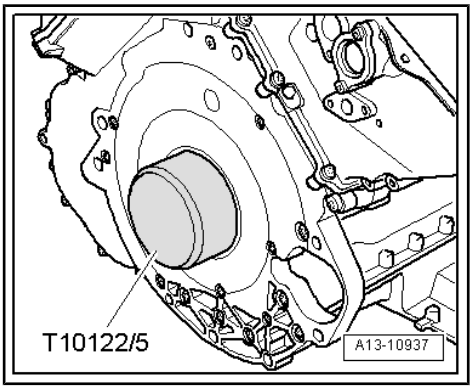
Risk of leaks if installed incorrectly.

- ***Slide oil seal onto crankshaft by hand to prevent sealing lip on oil seal from folding over.***



– Slide oil seal over guide piece - T10122/6- onto crankshaft by hand.

– Press in oil seal evenly all round using thrust piece - T10122/5- .
– Remove guide piece - T10122/6- .
– Check that oil seal and its sealing lip are correctly seated. If sealing lip is partially folded over, repeat procedure with a new oil seal.
– Install drive plate ⇒ page 37 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

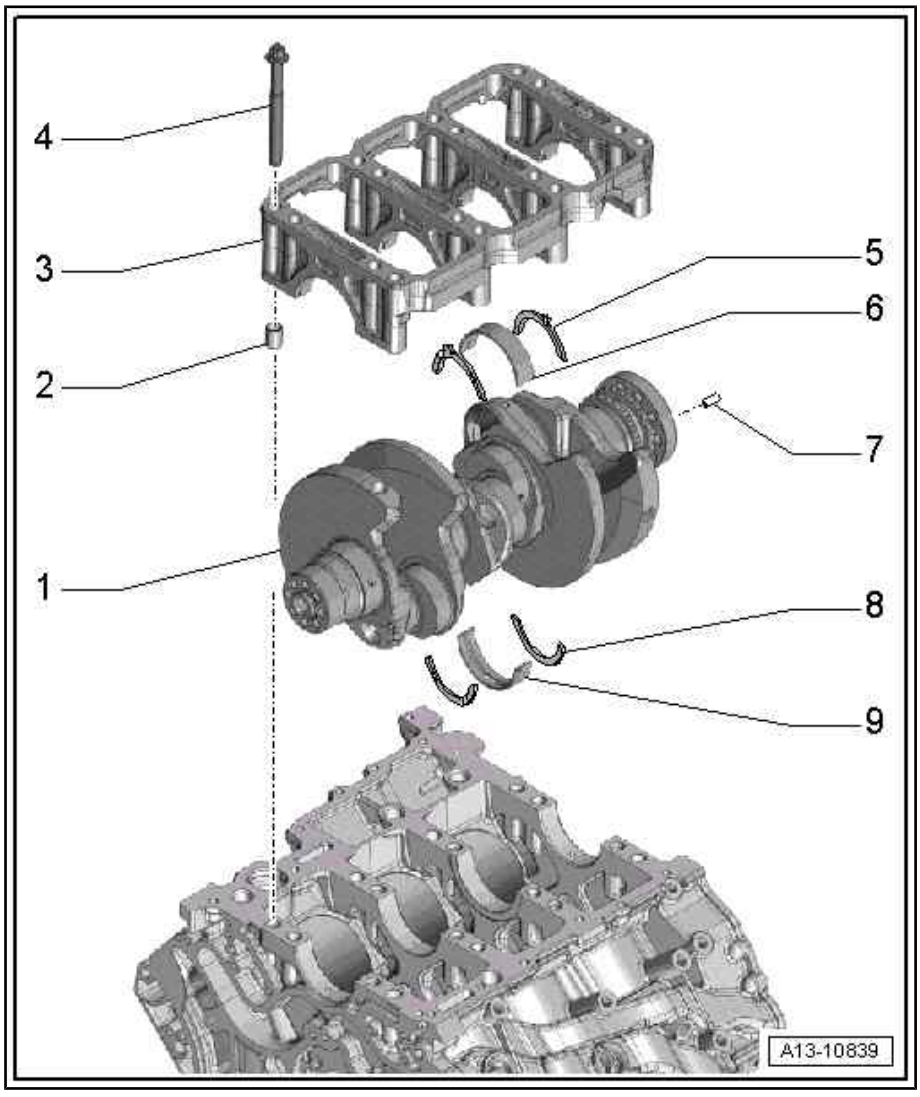
3 Crankshaft

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - crankshaft”, page 42
⇒ “3.2 Crankshaft dimensions”, page 43
⇒ “3.3 Allocation of main bearing shells”, page 44
⇒ “3.4 Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft”, page 44
⇒ “3.5 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft”, page 45
⇒ “3.6 Checking sender wheel”, page 46

3.1 Exploded view - crankshaft

Note

Secure engine to engine and gearbox support when performing assembly work ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine; Securing engine to engine and gearbox support .



1 - Crankshaft
- ❑ Measuring axial clearance ⇒ page 44
- ❑ Measuring radial clearance ⇒ page 45
- ❑ Crankshaft dimensions ⇒ page 43

2 - Dowel sleeve
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in cylinder block

3 - Retaining frame

4 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Use old bolts when measuring radial clearance
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 43

5 - Thrust washer
- ❑ Only fitted on 3rd crankshaft bearing
- ❑ Installation position: oil grooves face outwards
- ❑ Note location

6 - Bearing shell
- ❑ For retaining frame (without oil groove)
- ❑ Renew used bearing shells
- ❑ Install new bearing shells for retaining frame with correct coloured markings ⇒ page 44

7 - Dowel pin

- ❑ Check that pin is firmly seated in crankshaft

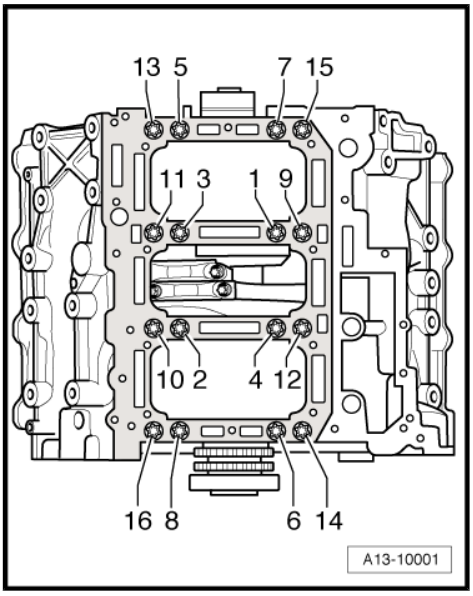
8 - Thrust washer

- ❑ Only fitted on 3rd crankshaft bearing
- ❑ Installation position: oil grooves face outwards

9 - Bearing shell

- ❑ For cylinder block (with oil groove)
- ❑ Renew used bearing shells
- ❑ Install new bearing shells for the cylinder block with the correct coloured markings ⇒ page 44

Retaining frame - tightening torque and sequence



Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Insert two dowel sleeves in cylinder block.

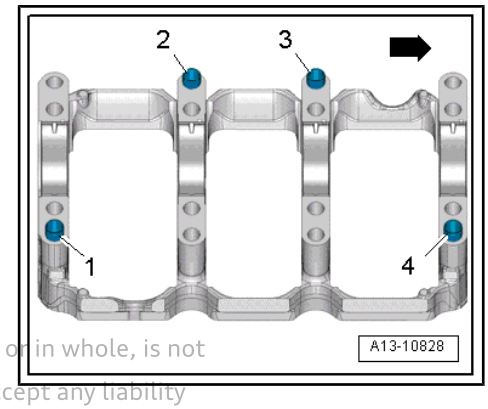
– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 16-	30 Nm
2.	-1 … 16-	50 Nm
3.	-1 … 16-	Turn 180° further

Position of dowel sleeves

– Check that dowel sleeves -1 ... 4- are inserted in retaining frame at positions shown in illustration.

• -Arrow-: Pulley end.

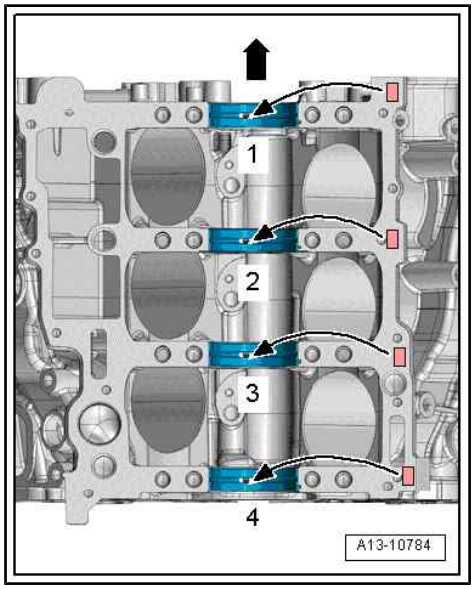


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Crankshaft dimensions

Honing dimension	Main bearing journal Ø mm	Conrod journal Ø mm
Basic dimension	65.000 – 0.022 – 0.042	60.000 – 0.022 – 0.042

3.3 Allocation of main bearing shells



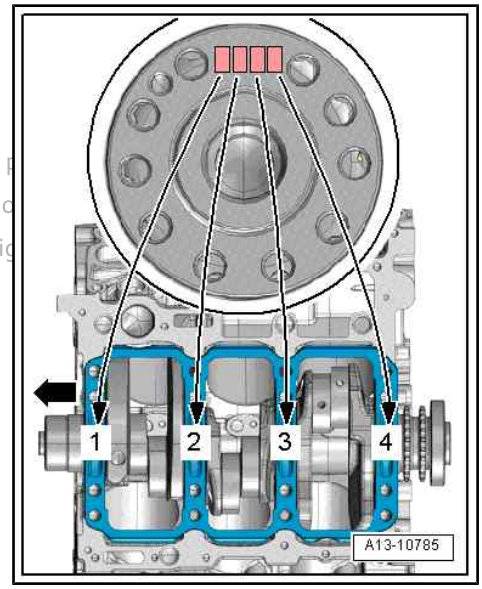
Allocation of crankshaft bearing shells for cylinder block

Bearing shells of the correct thickness are matched to the bearings in the cylinder block at the factory. Coloured dots on the bearing shells are used to identify the bearing shell thickness.

- -Arrow-: Pulley end.

The allocation of the bearing shells to the cylinder block is identified by a code letter next to the relevant bearing.

Letter on cylinder block	Colour coding of bearing
R =	Red
G =	Yellow
B =	Blue



Allocation of crankshaft bearing shells for retaining frame

Bearing shells of the correct thickness are matched to the bearings in the retaining frame at the factory. Coloured dots on the side of the bearing shells are used to identify the bearing shell thickness.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
Beginning of Class Approved by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee c
accuracy of the contents of information in this service. Copyrig

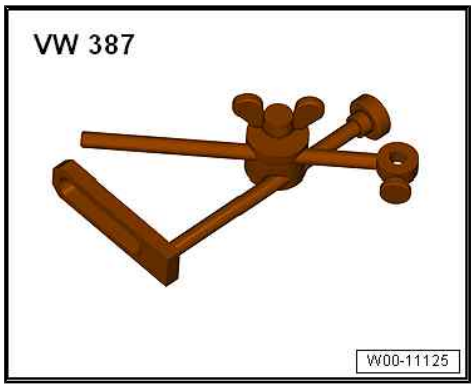
The allocation of the bearing shells to the bearing positions in the retaining frame is indicated by a sequence of letters on the flywheel flange on the crankshaft. The first letter in the sequence stands for bearing “1”, the second letter for bearing “2”, etc.

Letter on crankshaft	Colour coding of bearing
R =	Red
G =	Yellow
B =	Blue

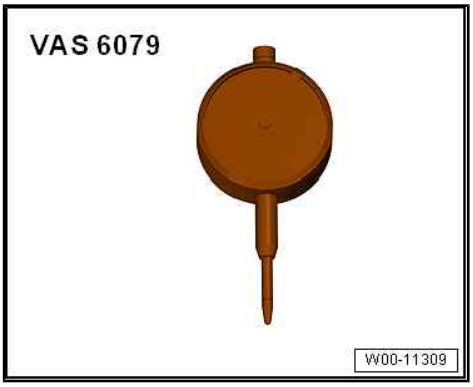
3.4 Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



♦ Dial gauge - VAS 6079-



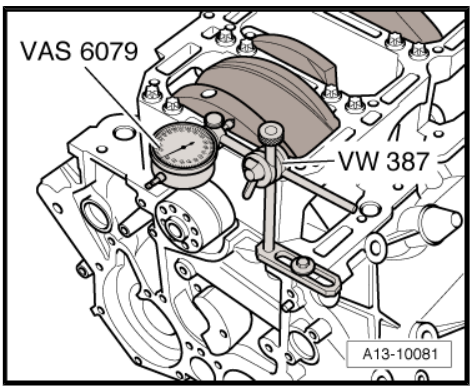
Procedure

– Secure dial gauge - VAS 6079- with universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387- to cylinder block as shown in illustration.

– Apply dial gauge to crank web.

– Press crankshaft against dial gauge by hand and set gauge to “0”.

– Push crankshaft away from dial gauge and read off value.



Axial clearance:

• New: 0.09 ... 0.25 mm.

3.5 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Plastigauge

Procedure

– Remove retaining frame and clean bearing journals.

– Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or in the bearing shell.

• The Plastigauge must be positioned in the centre of the bearing shell

– Fit retaining frame and secure with old bolts ⇒ page 43 without rotating crankshaft.

– Remove retaining frame again.

– Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

Radial clearance:

• New: 0.018 ... 0.045 mm.

– When carrying out final assembly, renew bolts.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Checking sender wheel

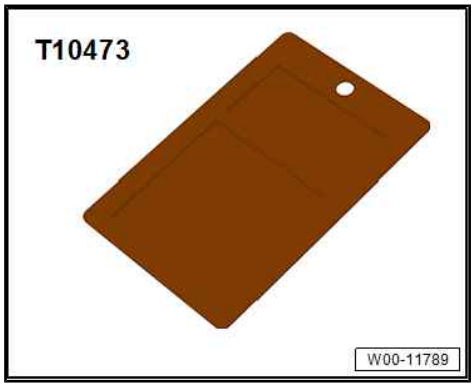
Caution

Risk of magnetic fields causing irreparable damage to sender wheel.

- *The sender wheel must be kept away from magnets (e.g. base of torch, loudspeaker).*
- *If the drive plate/flywheel or the sender wheel itself has been removed or renewed, check that the sender wheel is operating correctly before installation.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

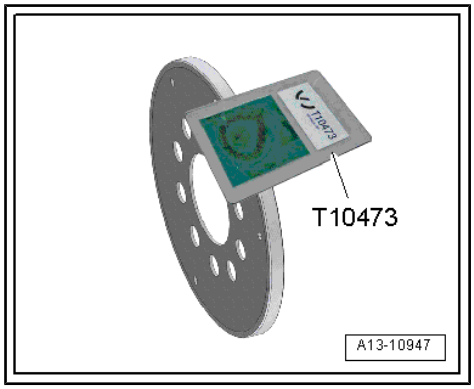
- Sensor gauge - T10473-



Procedure

- Drive plate removed ⇒ page 37

– Check entire circumference of sender wheel using sensor gauge - T10473- , as shown in illustration.

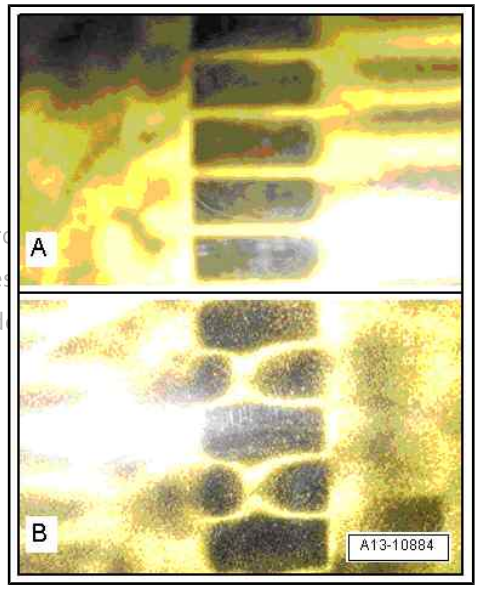


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Inspection image of sender wheel

A - Sender wheel OK

B - Sender wheel defective



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

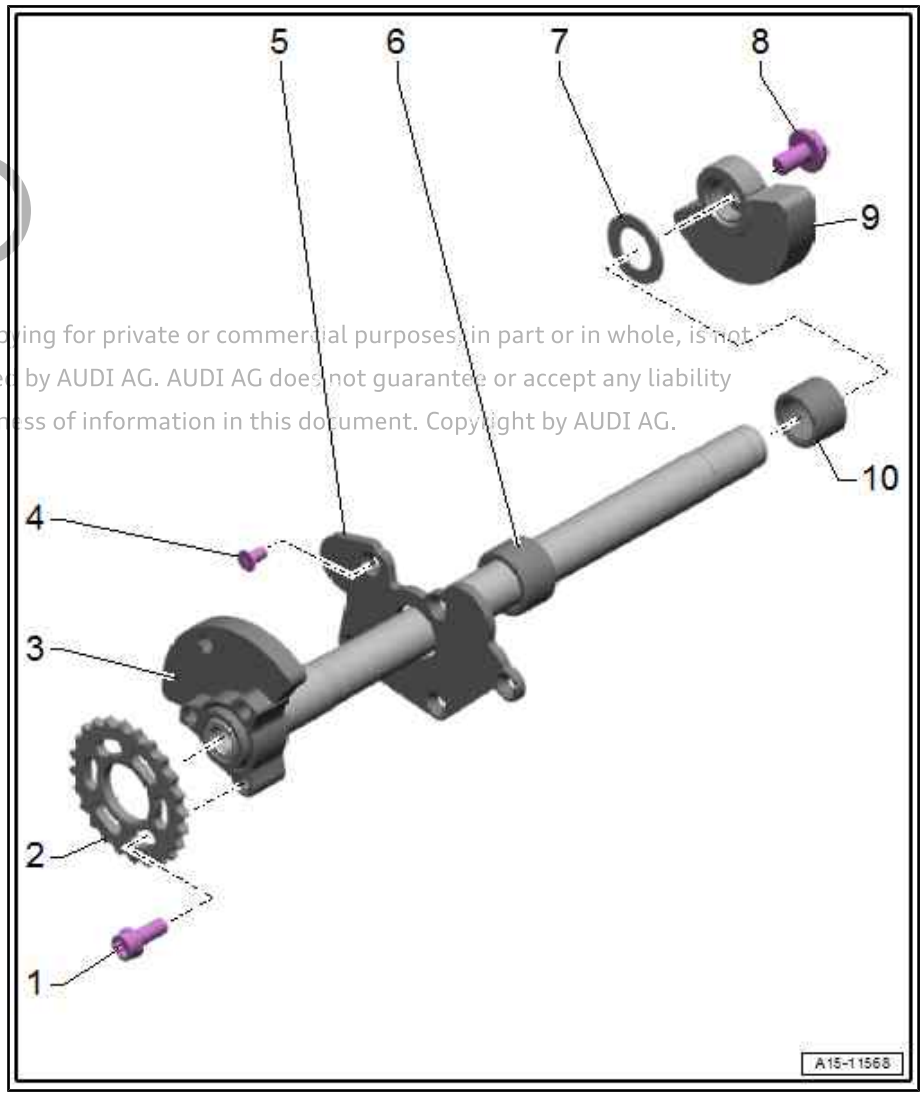
4 Balance shaft

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft”, page 48

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft”, page 48

⇒ “4.3 Renewing roller bearings”, page 55

4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm

2 - Drive chain sprocket

- ❑ For balance shaft

3 - Balance shaft with balance weight

- ❑ Gearbox end
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Balance shaft must be renewed if bolt -item 4- has been loosened

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Bearing plate

6 - Roller bearing

- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 55

7 - Thrust washer

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Use locking pin - 3359- as counterhold when loosening and tightening
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm +45°

9 - Balance weight

- ❑ Pulley end

10 - Roller bearing

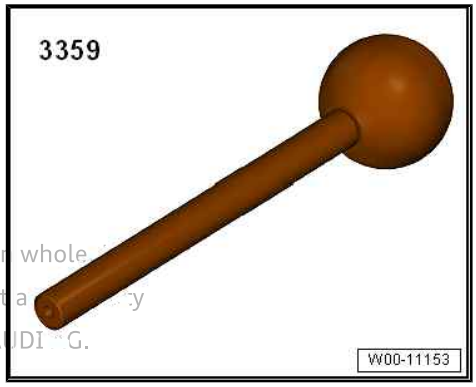
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 55

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft

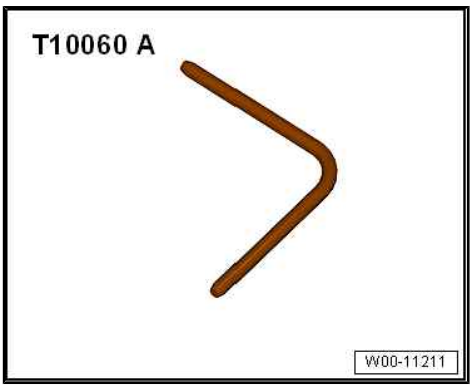
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Locking pin - 3359-

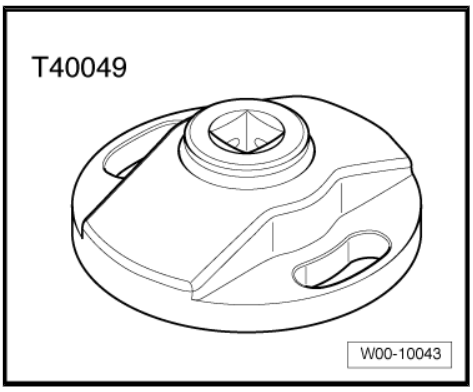


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

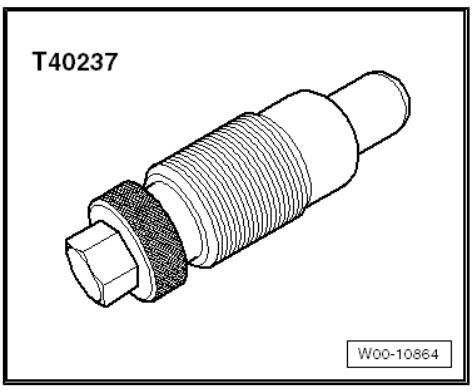
- Locking pin - T10060A- (2x)



- Key - T40049-



- Locking pin - T40237-



- Locking pin - T40316- (not illustrated)

Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox .

– Remove sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

– Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ page 73 .

Caution

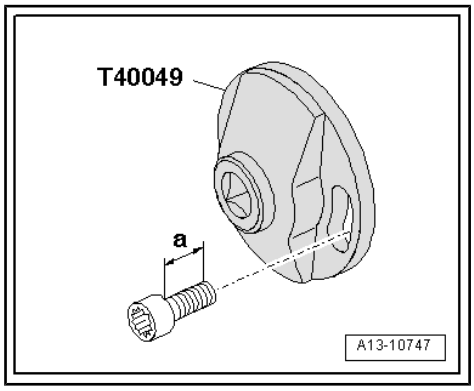
Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

- *The crankshaft and camshafts must only be turned with the chain drive mechanism fully installed.*

Caution

Risk of damage to drive chain if thread of bolt exceeds specified length.

- *Use bolts with a maximum thread length -a- of 22 mm to attach key -T40049- .*
- *If no suitable bolts are available, position suitable washer (s) under bolt head so that remaining thread length does not exceed 22 mm.*

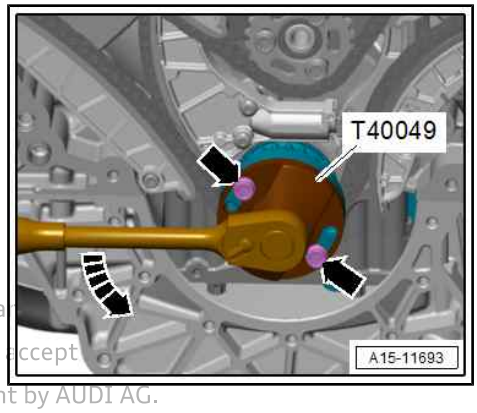


– Secure special wrench - T40049- onto crankshaft -arrows-.

Caution

Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- *Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.*

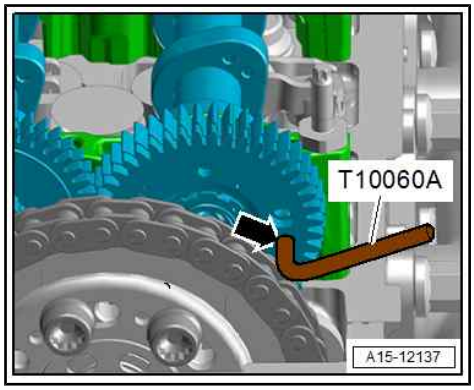


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Rotate crankshaft in normal direction of rotation to “TDC”.

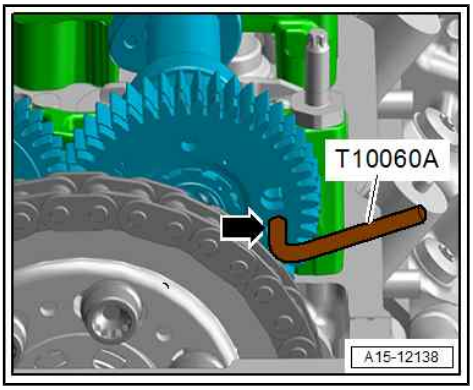
• It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- .

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

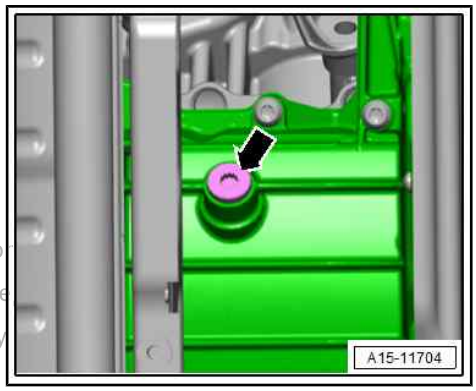


– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

A4/A5: Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .



– Unscrew plug -arrow- from sump (top section).

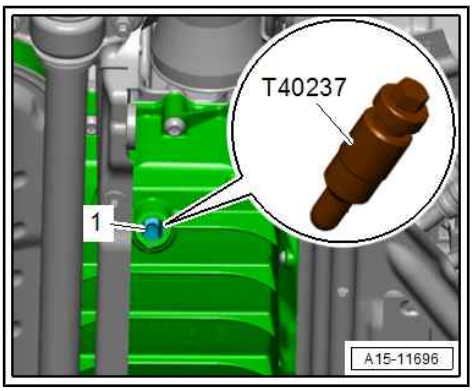


Note

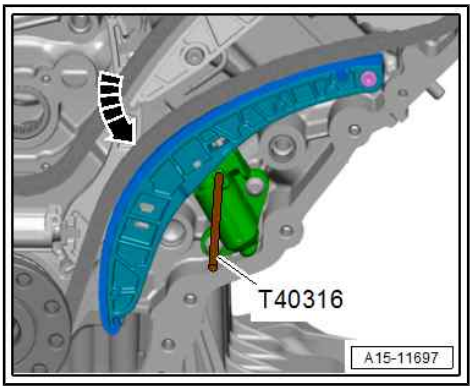
To do this on A4/A5 vehicles, the subframe cross brace must be lowered; while doing so, do not press the joint pin of the guide link out of the tapered seat ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

– Screw locking pin - T40237- into hole and tighten to 20 Nm.

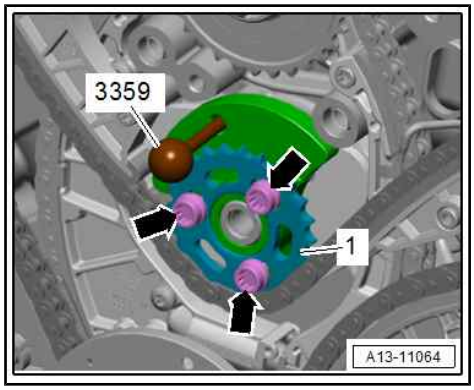


– Press tensioning rail of camshaft timing chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40316- .



– Lock balance shaft with locking pin - 3359- .

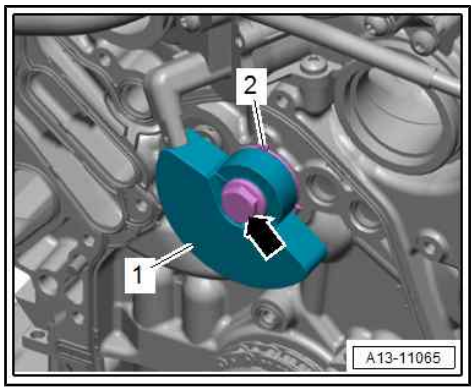
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach drive chain sprocket -1- from balance shaft.



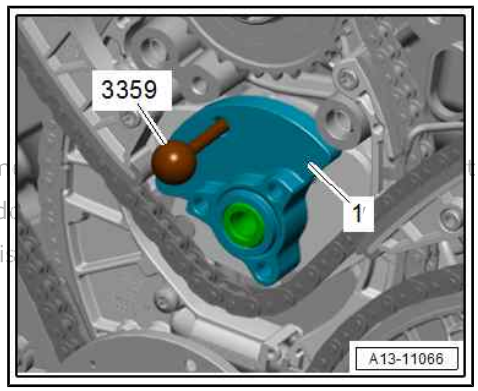
Note

The camshaft timing chain must not be removed from the camshaft sprockets or the crankshaft.

– Remove bolt -arrow- at pulley end and detach balance weight -1- and washer -2- from balance shaft.



– Remove locking pin - 3359- at gearbox end and remove balance shaft -1- towards rear.

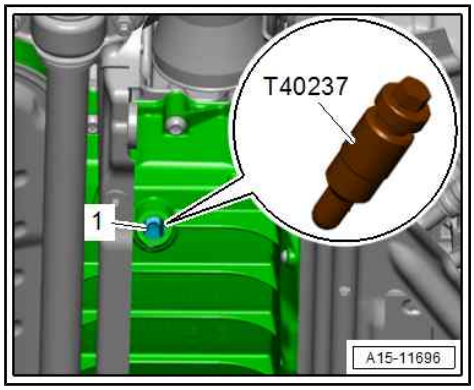


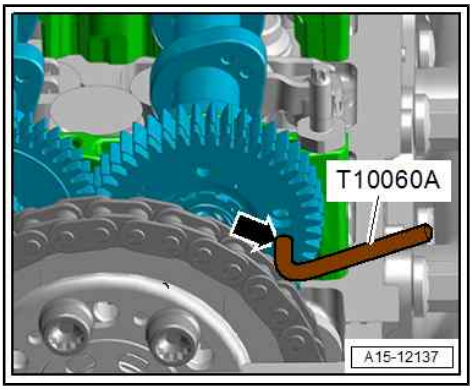
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in thi

Installing

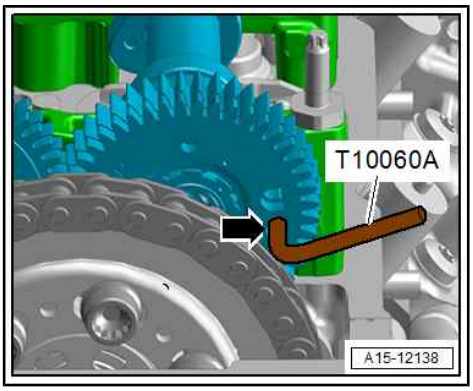
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Crankshaft locked in “TDC” position with locking pin - T40237- .

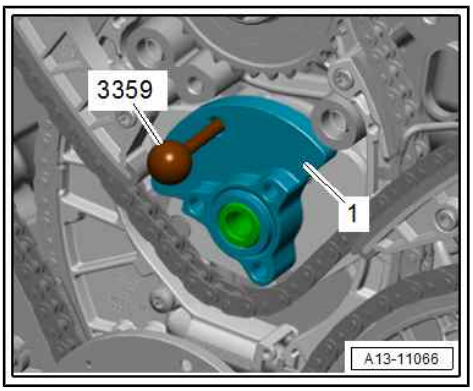




- Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .
- Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .

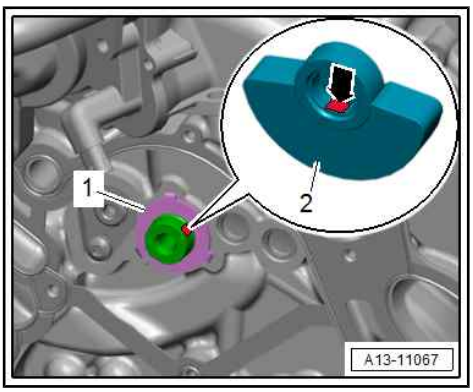


– Move balance shaft -1- into installation position on gearbox end and lock in “TDC” position using locking pin - 3359- .



– Place washer -1- to installation position on pulley end and fit balance weight -2- onto balance shaft.
- Machined surface -arrow- of balance weight must be positioned over machined surface of balance shaft.

– Tighten bolt for balance weight.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

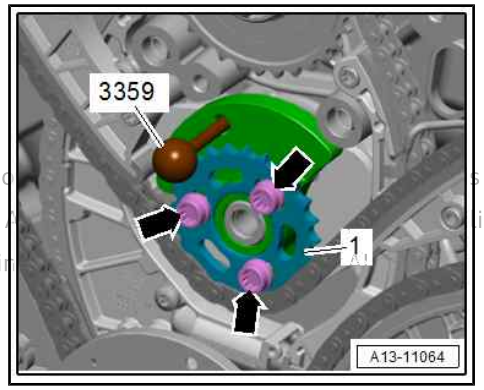
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... s not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... ity
with respect to the correctness of information i...

– Fit drive chain sprocket -1- with camshaft timing chain onto balance shaft on gearbox end.

• The elongated holes in the drive chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the tapped holes in the balance shaft.

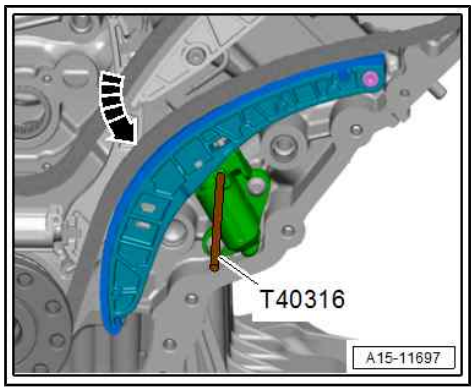
– Loosely screw in bolts -arrows-.

• It should just be possible to turn the drive chain sprocket on the intermediate drive without axial movement.



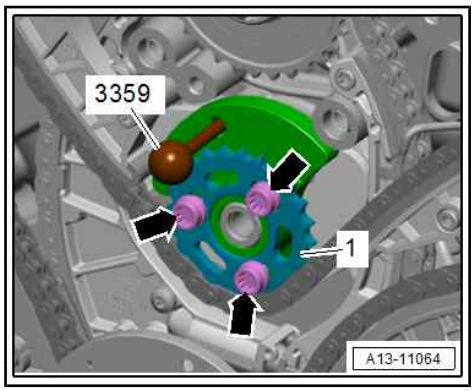
– Press tensioning rail of camshaft timing chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and remove locking pin -T40316- .

– Release chain tensioner.

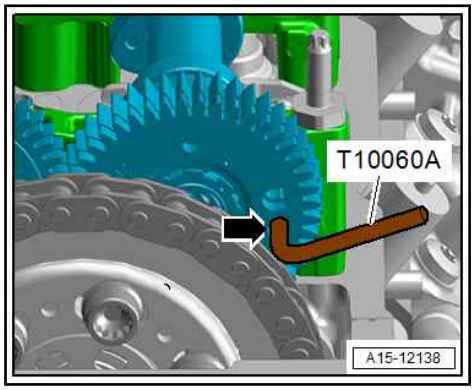


– Tighten bolts -arrows- at drive chain sprocket -1- for balance shaft.

– Remove locking pin - T40237- and locking pin - 3359- .



– Remove locking pin - T10060A- (both sides).



Note

If it is difficult to remove one or both locking pins -T10060A- , the valve timing must be checked ⇒ page 90 .

– Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ page 73 .

– Install sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

– A4/A5: Install subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Tightening torques

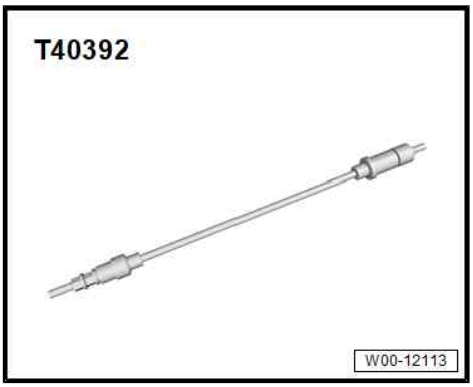
♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft”, page 48

♦ Plug for “TDC” marking ⇒ Item 19 (page 162)

4.3 Renewing roller bearings

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special tool -T40392-



Pulling out

- Engine secured to engine and gearbox support ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine; Securing engine to engine and gearbox support .

– Remove crankshaft ⇒ page 42 .

– Remove balance shaft ⇒ page 48 .

– Position special tool correctly on roller bearing:

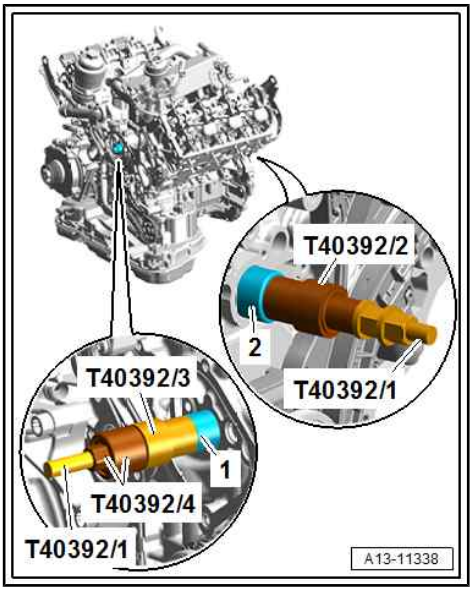
- The chamfer -arrow- faces towards the roller bearing.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull roller bearings (front -1- and rear -2-) out inwards using spindle -T40392/1- and adapters -T40392/2- / -T40392/3- ; to do so, turn nut -T40392/4- .

– Detach special tool and remove roller bearing.

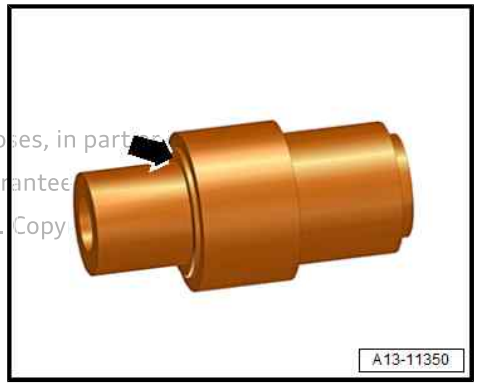


Installing

– Position adapter correctly on roller bearing:

• Chamfer -arrow- must face roller bearing; chamfer determines installation depth.

...copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy...

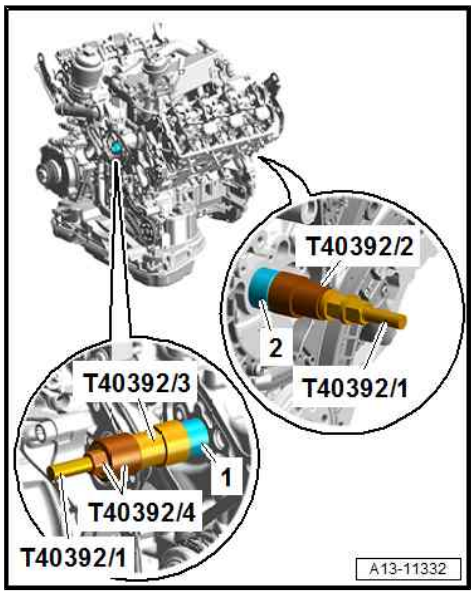


– Pull roller bearings (front -1- and rear -2-) in as far as stop using spindle -T40392/1- and adapters -T40392/2- / -T40392/3- ; to do so, turn nut -T40392/4- .

• The sides of the roller bearings with identification lettering face outwards.

– Install balance shaft ⇒ page 48 .

– Install crankshaft ⇒ page 42 .



5 Pistons and conrods

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods”, page 57

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing pistons”, page 59

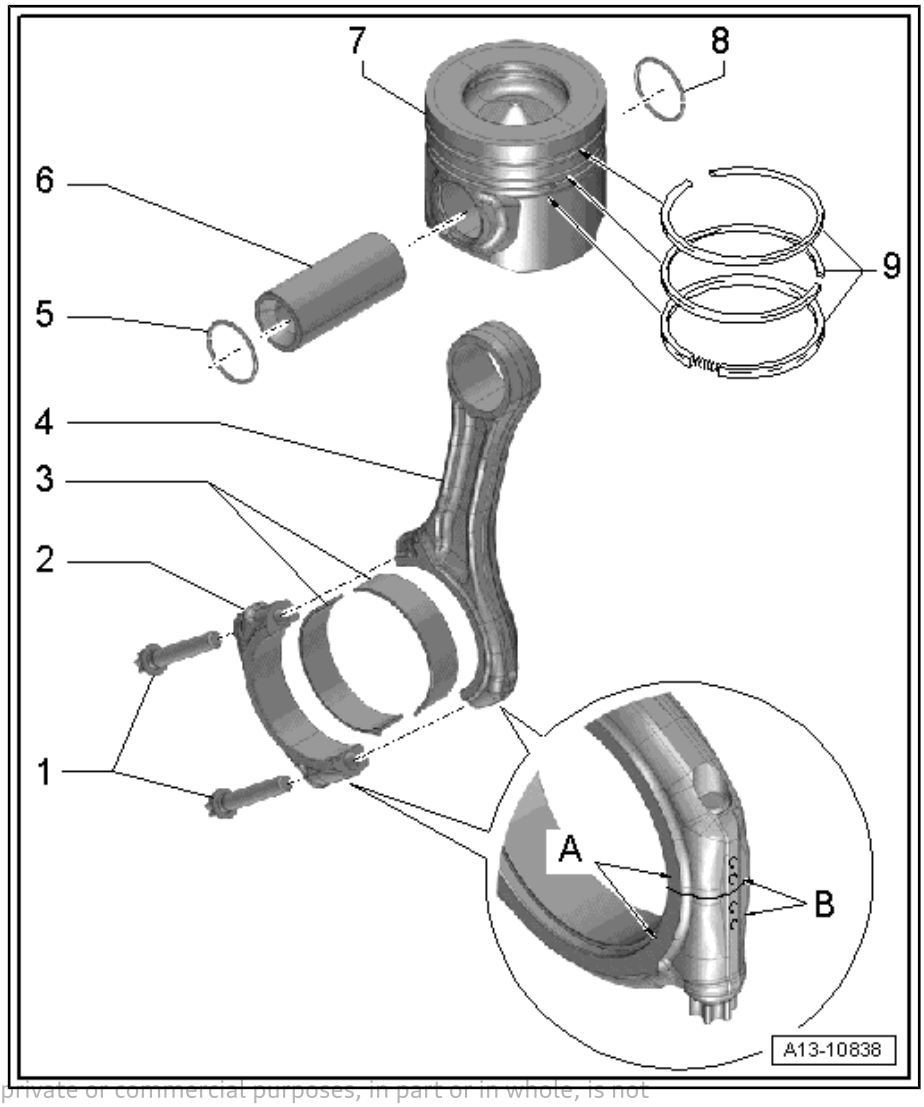
⇒ “5.3 Measuring piston projection at TDC”, page 61

⇒ “5.4 Checking pistons and cylinder bores”, page 63

⇒ “5.5 Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings”, page 64

5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods

- All bearing and running surfaces must be oiled before assembling.
- Oil spray jet for piston cooling ⇒ page 58 .



1 - Bolts

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Lubricate threads and contact surface
- ❑ 35 Nm +90°

2 - Conrod bearing cap

- ❑ Due to the cracking method used to separate the bearing cap from the conrod in manufacture, the caps only fit in one position and only on the appropriate conrod
- ❑ Mark installation position for re-installation
- ❑ Mark cylinder allocation in colour -B- ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Note when fitting: wide contact shoulder -A- must face same side on conrod and conrod bearing cap

3 - Bearing shells

- ❑ Note installation position
- ❑ Renew used bearing shells
- ❑ Note version: Upper bearing shell (closest to piston) is constructed from a more wear-resistant material; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Ensure that retaining lugs are securely seated.

4 - Conrod

- ❑ With industrially cracked conrod bearing cap
- ❑ Mark cylinder allocation in colour -B- ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Axial clearance for each conrod pair (when new): 0.20 … 0.44 mm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Measuring radial clearance ⇒ page 64
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Only renew as a complete set
- ❑ Note when fitting: wide contact shoulder -A- must face same side on conrod and conrod bearing cap

5 - Circlip

- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Piston pin

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing pistons”, page 59

7 - Piston

- ❑ Measuring piston projection at “TDC” ⇒ page 61
- ❑ Mark installation position and cylinder number ⇒ page 58
- ❑ Renew piston if cracking is visible on piston crown or piston skirt
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Checking pistons and cylinder bores ⇒ page 63

8 - Circlip

- ❑ Renew after removing

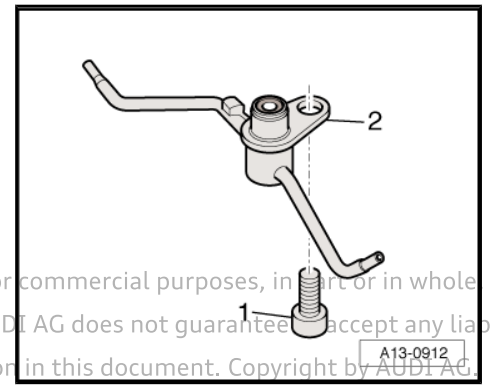
9 - Piston rings

- ❑ Measuring ring gap ⇒ page 64
- ❑ Measuring ring-to-groove clearance ⇒ page 64
- ❑ Install using piston ring pliers -VAS 211 003- ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Installation position: marking “TOP” or side with lettering faces towards piston crown
- ❑ Offset gaps by 120°

Oil spray jet for piston cooling

1 - Bolt, 9 Nm

2 - Oil spray jet with spray nozzle valve for piston cooling



Caution

Risk of damage to oil spray jets.

- *Do not bend oil spray jets.*
- *Check that oil spray jets have adequate clearance after re-installing pistons.*
- *Always renew bent oil spray jets.*

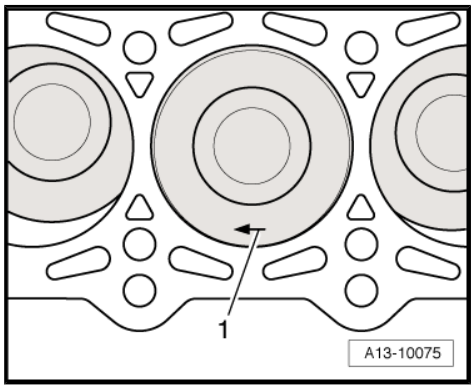
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation position of pistons

Caution

Risk of damage to piston crown.

- *If you intend to re-install used pistons, mark the cylinder number on the piston crown using paint. Do not attempt to mark the piston crown with a centre punch or by making a scratch, notch or similar.*



- Installation position: Arrow -item 1- on piston crown points to pulley end.

Installing piston rings

- Installation position: marking “TOP” or side with lettering faces towards piston crown.
- Open up piston ring -2- using piston ring pliers -VAS 211 003- just far enough to be able to slide it over piston -1-.



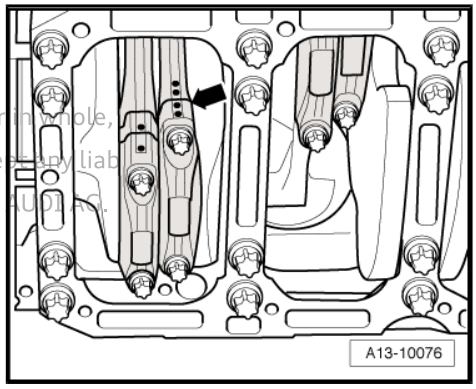
Marking conrods

– Before removing, mark mating positions of conrods and con-rod bearing caps with coloured pen -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

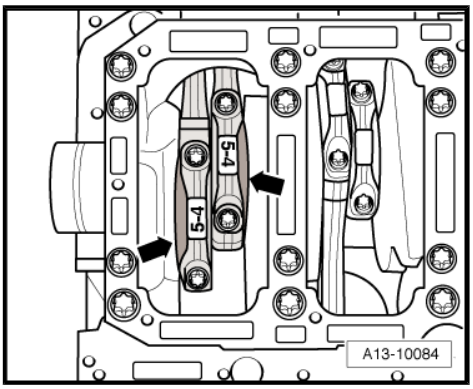
Note

- *Only renew conrods as a complete set.*
- *Do not interchange conrod bearings.*



Conrod installation position

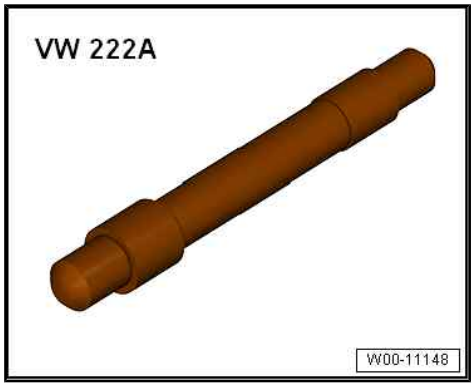
The larger contact shoulder on the conrod -arrows- faces towards the adjacent crankshaft bearing. Illustration shows front pair of conrods.



5.2 Removing and installing pistons

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pin - VW 222A-



♦ Piston ring clamp, commercially available

Removing

- Engine secured to engine and gearbox support ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine; Securing engine to engine and gearbox support .

– Remove cylinder head ⇒ page 116 .

– Remove sump (top section) ⇒ page 165 .

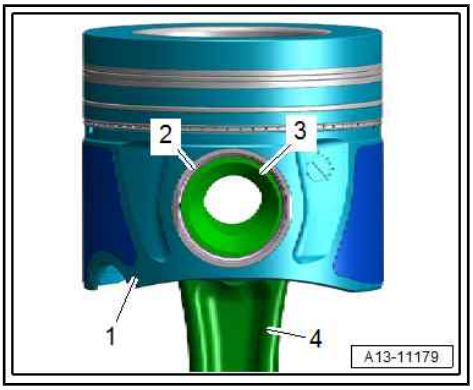
– Mark installation position and matching of conrod bearing caps to cylinder and to conrods for re-installation ⇒ page 59 .

– Unbolt conrod bearing caps.

– Pull out pistons upwards with conrods.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Take circlip -2- out of piston pin boss.
– Use drift - VW 222A- to drive out piston pin -3-.



Note

If piston pin is difficult to remove, heat piston to approx. 60 °C.

– Detach piston -1- from conrod -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Oil running surfaces of bearing shells.
– Install pistons using commercially available piston ring clamp.

Installation position:

- Pistons ⇒ page 58
- Conrods ⇒ page 59

– Install conrod bearing caps according to markings.
– Install sump (upper section) ⇒ page 165 .
– Install cylinder head ⇒ page 116 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods”, page 57

5.3 Measuring piston projection at TDC

Note

Measure piston projection at “TDC” when installing new pistons or a short engine.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Measuring bridge -VW 382/7- from measuring tool - VW 382-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Measuring plate -VW 385/17- from universal measuring tool - VW 385-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

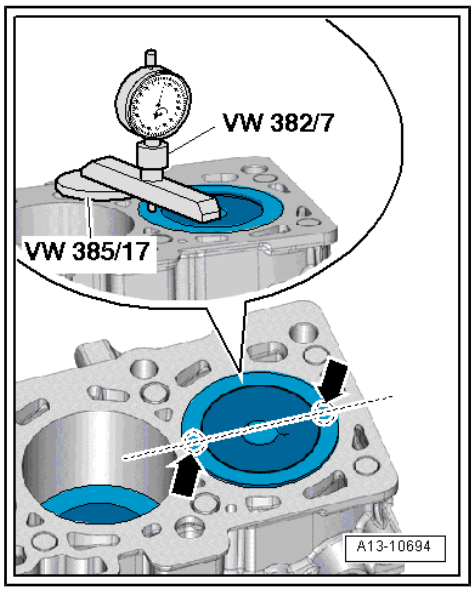
- Dial gauge - VAS 6079-



Procedure

– Secure dial gauge - VAS 6079- with measuring bridge - VW 382/7- and measuring plate -VW 385/17- to cylinder block as shown in illustration.

– Measure projection at each piston at both locations marked with -arrows- (seen in longitudinal direction of engine: at front and rear of piston).



Note

- *If the values measured for piston projection are not the same for all pistons, use the highest value to determine the correct gasket size.*
- *The cylinder head gasket size must be determined separately for each cylinder bank.*

– Depending on piston projection, install corresponding cylinder head gasket according to following table:

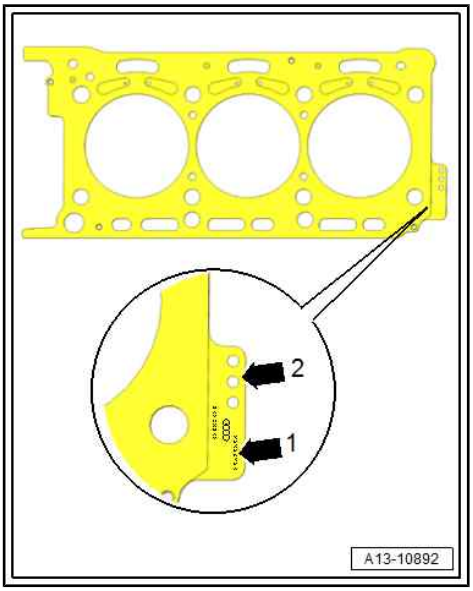
Piston projection above top surface of cylinder block	Identification (no. of holes)
0.81…0.91 mm	1
0.91…0.96 mm	2
0.96…1.07 mm	3

Identification of cylinder head gasket

1 - Part number

2 - Holes

The gaskets for the left and right cylinder heads have different shapes and cannot be interchanged.



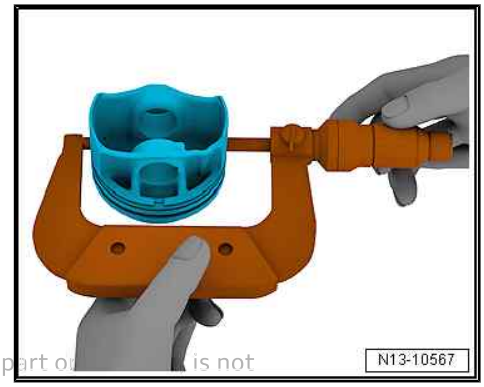
5.4 Checking pistons and cylinder bores

Checking piston

– Using a micrometer (75 ... 100 mm), measure approx. 10 mm from the lower edge, perpendicular to the piston pin axis.

• Maximum deviation from nominal dimension: 0.05 mm.

There are different piston sizes specifically matched to the different dimensions of the cylinder block.



Piston ∅ mm	
Nominal dimension	82.924 ... 82.936 [1]
Repair oversize	82.964 ... 82.976 [1]

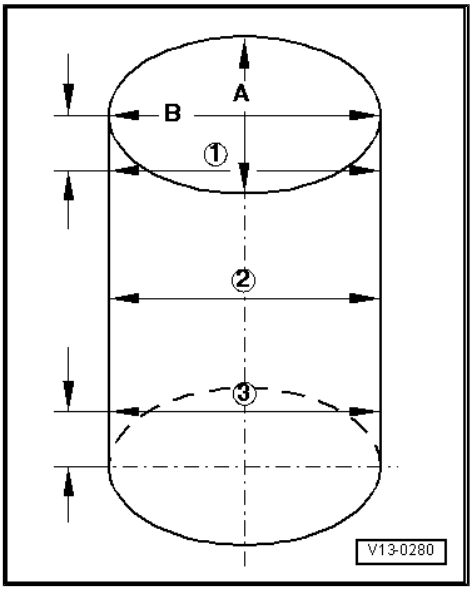
• [1] Dimensions not including coating (thickness 0.02 mm). The coating will wear down partly in service.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Measuring cylinder bore

– Use a cylinder gauge - VAS 6078- to take measurements at 3 points in transverse direction -A- and in longitudinal direction -B-.

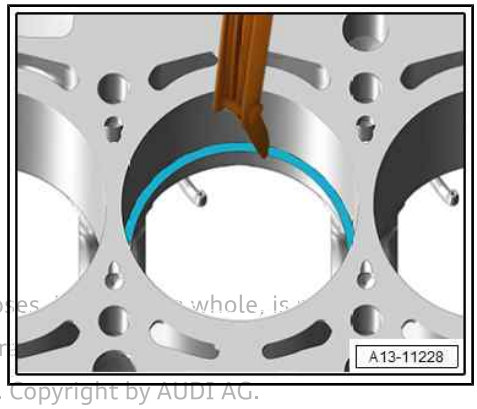
• Maximum deviation from nominal dimension: 0.08 mm.



Cylinder bore ∅ mm	
Nominal dimension	83.006 ... 83.014 [1]
Repair oversize	83.046 ... 83.054 [1]

• [1] Measure at 50 mm into cylinder bore.

Measuring piston ring gap



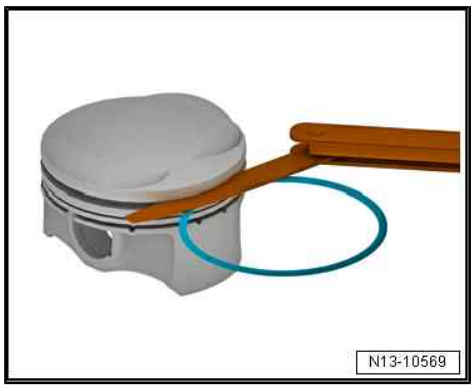
– Insert ring at right angle to cylinder wall from above and push down into lower cylinder opening approx. 50 mm from bottom of cylinder.

– To do so, use a piston without rings.

Piston ring	new mm	Wear limit mm
1st compression ring	0.26 … 0.36	0.60
2nd compression ring	0.70 … 0.90	1.20
Oil scraper ring	0.20 … 0.40	0.70

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Measuring ring-to-groove clearance



– Clean groove in piston before checking clearance.

Piston ring	new mm	Wear limit mm
1st compression ring	0.09 … 0.13	0.160
2nd compression ring	0.05 … 0.09	0.11
Oil scraper ring	0.03 … 0.07	0.10

5.5 Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Plastigauge

Procedure

– Remove conrod bearing cap. Clean bearing cap and bearing journal.

– Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or in the bearing shell.

– Fit conrod bearing cap and secure with old bolts ⇒ Item 1 (page 57) without rotating crankshaft.

– Remove conrod bearing cap again.

– Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

Radial clearance:

• New: 0.020 ... 0.069 mm.

– Renew conrod bolts.

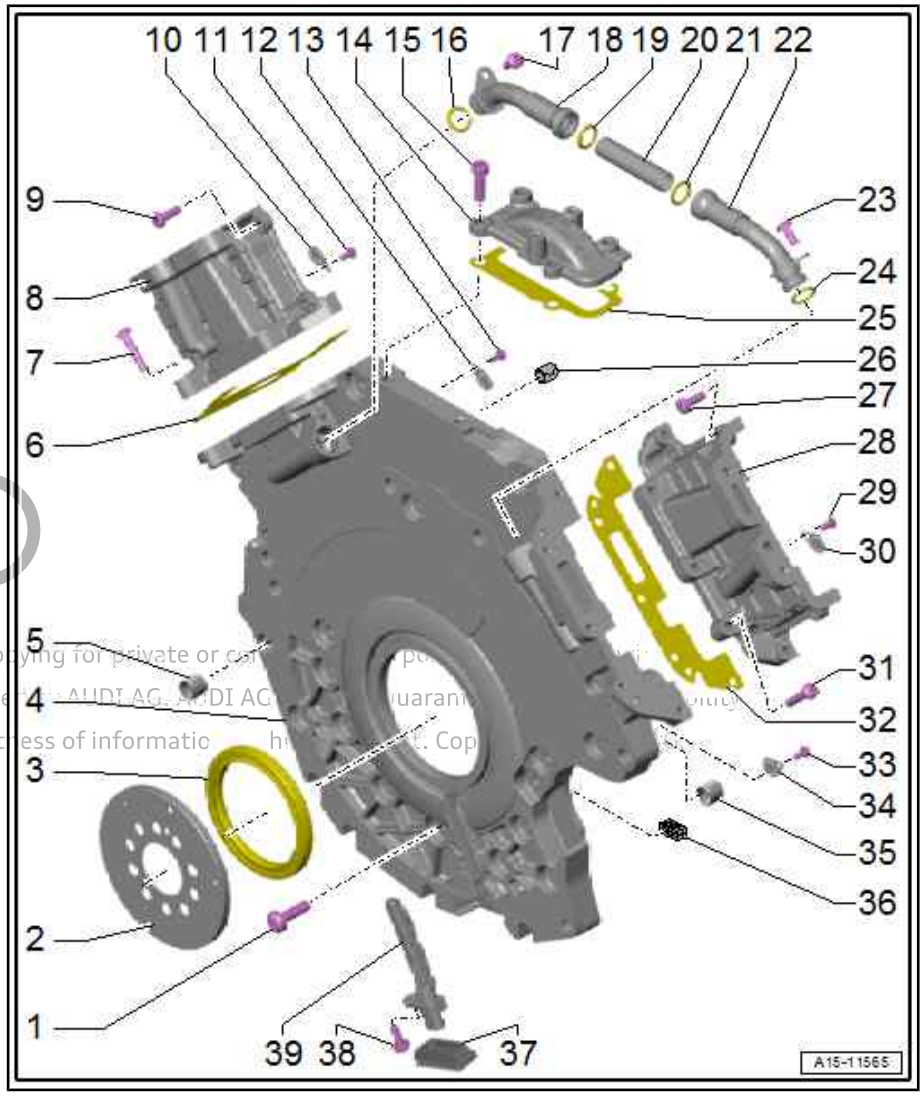
15 – Cylinder head, valve gear

1 Timing chain cover

⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover", page 65

⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover", page 68

1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover



1 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 68

2 - Sender wheel
- ❑ For engine speed sender - G28-

3 - Oil seal
- ❑ For crankshaft (gearbox end)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39

4 - Timing chain cover (bottom)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 73

5 - Dowel sleeve
- ❑ 2x

6 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 67

8 - Timing chain cover (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 67

10 - Reed valve
- ❑ For crankcase breather

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 3 Nm

12 - Reed valve
- ❑ For crankcase breather

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Cover

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torques:

- ♦ 23 Nm
- ♦ 20 Nm when using insert tool XZN 10 -V.A.G 1331/15-

16 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

18 - Line

- ❑ For crankcase breather

19 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

20 - Line

- ❑ For crankcase breather

21 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

22 - Line

- ❑ For crankcase breather

23 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

24 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

25 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

26 - Clamping sleeve

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Prevents ingress of lubricant into threaded hole

27 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 67

28 - Timing chain cover (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71

29 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

30 - Reed valve

- ❑ For crankcase breather

31 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 67

32 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

33 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

34 - Reed valve

- ❑ For crankcase breather

35 - Dowel sleeve

- ❑ 2x

36 - Sealing element

- ❑ 2x

37 - Cover

- ❑ Not fitted on all versions

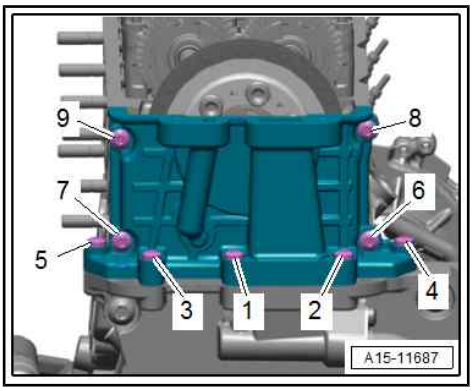
38 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 13 (page 321)

39 - Engine speed sender - G28-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 326

Timing chain cover (top left) - tightening torque and tightening sequence



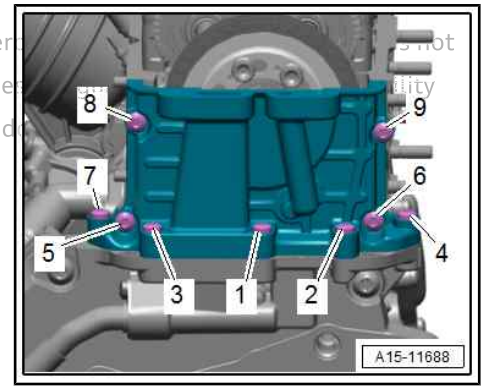
Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 9-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 9-	8 Nm
3.	-1 … 9-	8 Nm (this step is performed to allow for settling of timing chain cover)
4.	-1 … 9-	Turn 90° further

Timing chain cover (top right) - tightening torque and tightening sequence



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe... ility with respect to the correctness of information in this d...

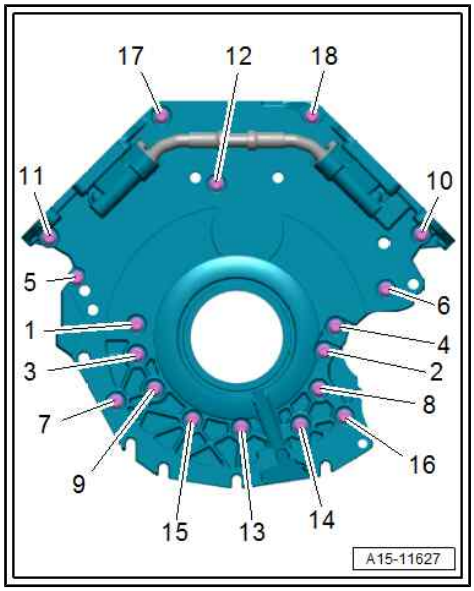
Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 9-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 9-	8 Nm
3.	-1 … 9-	8 Nm (this step is performed to allow for settling of timing chain cover)
4.	-1 … 9-	Turn 90° further

Timing chain cover (bottom) - tightening torque and tightening sequence



Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 18-	2 Nm
2.	-1 … 18-	8 Nm
3.	-1 … 18-	Turn 90° further

1.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover

⇒ “1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top left)”, page 68

⇒ “1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top right)”, page 71

⇒ “1.2.3 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)”, page 73

1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top left)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

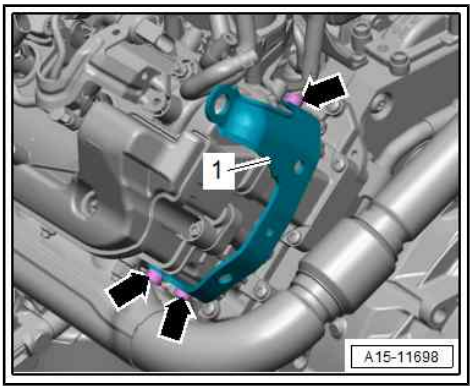
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover .

– Remove exhaust manifold (left-side) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust manifolds; Removing and installing exhaust manifolds .

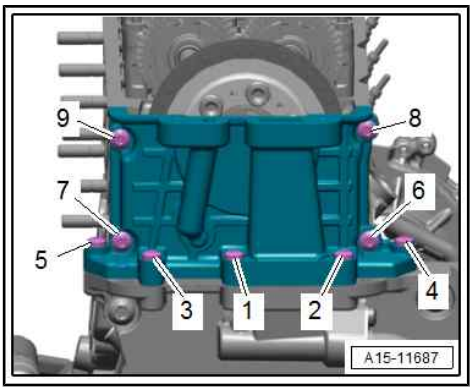
– Remove cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) ⇒ “3.4.2 Removing cylinder head cover - bank 2 (left-side)”, page 122 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove engine lifting eye (rear left) -1-.



– Loosen bolts in the sequence -9 ... 1-.
– Carefully release timing chain cover (top left) from bonded joint and remove cover.



Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to engine.

- *Block off the opening in the valve timing housing with a clean cloth to prevent small items from dropping into the engine when the timing chain cover (top) is removed.*

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Renew gasket after removing.

– Remove old sealant from sealing surfaces on timing chain cover.

Caution

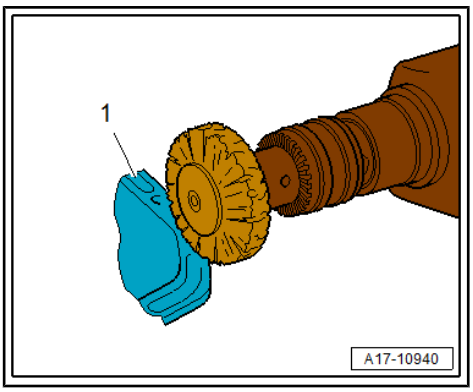
Protect lubrication system against contamination.

- *Cover exposed parts of the engine.*

WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

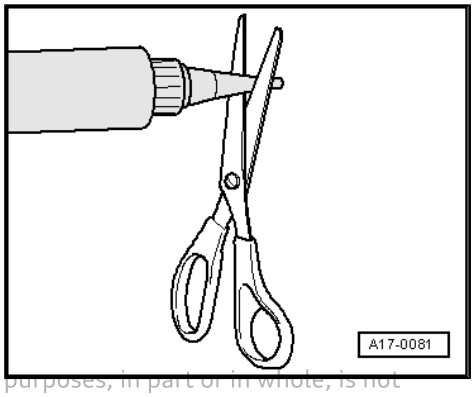


– Remove remaining sealant on timing chain cover -1- and cylinder head using rotating plastic brush or similar.
– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

Note

Note expiry date of sealant.

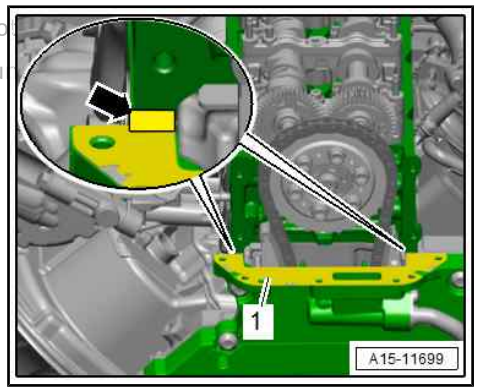
– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 1.5 mm).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Fit gasket -1-.

– Apply sealant at joints between cylinder head and timing chain cover (bottom) -arrow-, as shown in illustration.



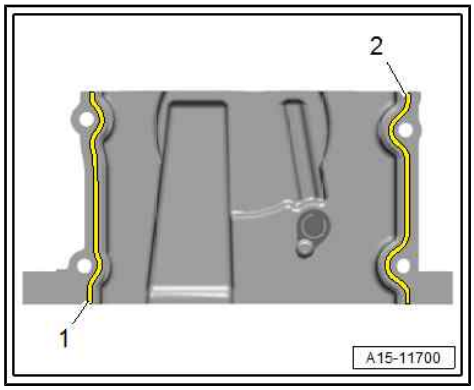
Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ***The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.***

- The bead of sealant must project 1.5 … 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.

– Apply sealant beads -1 and 2- onto clean sealing surface of timing chain cover (left-side), as illustrated.



Note

Install timing chain cover within 5 minutes of applying sealant.

– Carefully fit timing chain cover onto cylinder head but do not press sealant bead on yet.

- Sealant must not be allowed to get into threaded holes.

– First, screw all bolts for timing chain cover in by hand and then tighten.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install cylinder head cover (left-side) ⇒ “3.4.3 Installing cylinder head cover”, page 124 .

– Install exhaust manifold (left-side) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust manifolds; Removing and installing exhaust manifolds .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ““Timing chain cover (top left) - tightening torque and tightening sequence”“ , page 67
- ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head”, page 108

1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top right)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Insert tool, XZN 10 - V.A.G 1331/15-
- Socket Torx T30 - T10405-



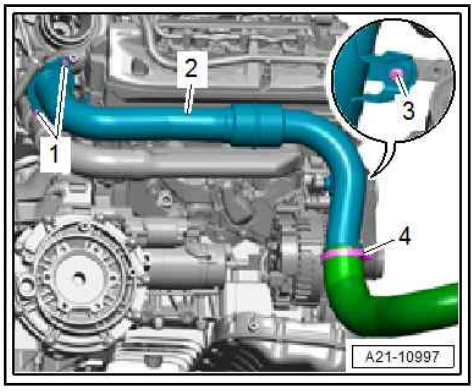
- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

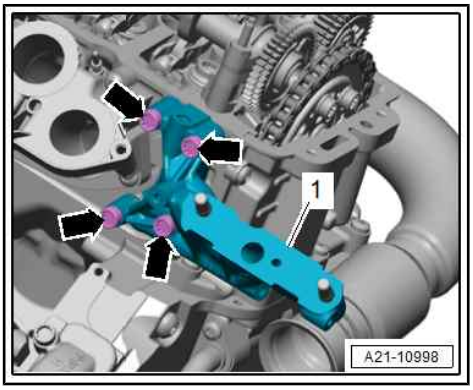
– Remove turbocharger ⇒ page 206 .
– Remove cylinder head cover (right-side) ⇒ page 121 .
– Remove bolt -3- and press air pipe -2- slightly towards rear (different versions depending on model).



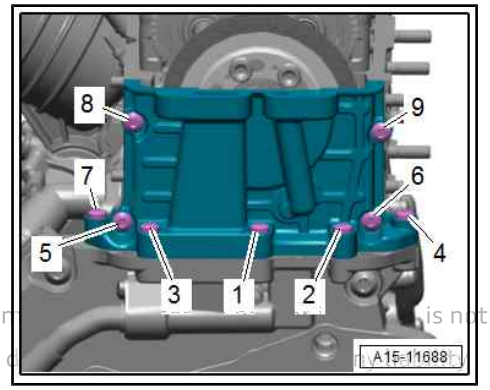
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket -1- for turbocharger.

Note

Use insert tool, XZN 10 - V.A.G 1331/15- for bolts that are difficult to access.



– Loosen bolts in the sequence -9 ... 1-.
– Carefully release timing chain cover (top right) from bonded joint and detach.



Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to engine.

- *Block off the opening in the valve timing housing with a clean cloth to prevent small items from dropping into the engine when the timing chain cover (top) is removed.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Note

Renew gasket after removing.

– Remove old sealant from sealing surfaces on timing chain cover.

Caution

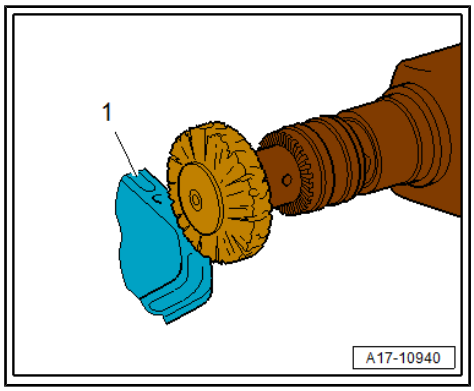
Protect lubrication system against contamination.

- *Cover exposed parts of the engine.*

WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

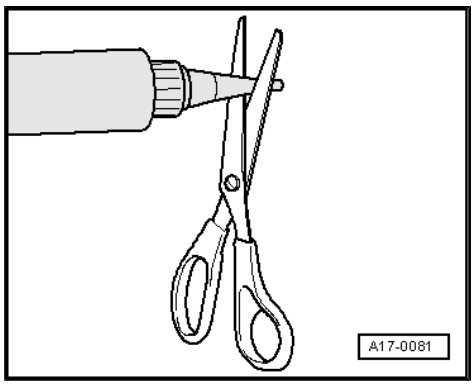


– Remove remaining sealant on timing chain cover -1- and cylinder head using rotating plastic brush or similar.
– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

Note

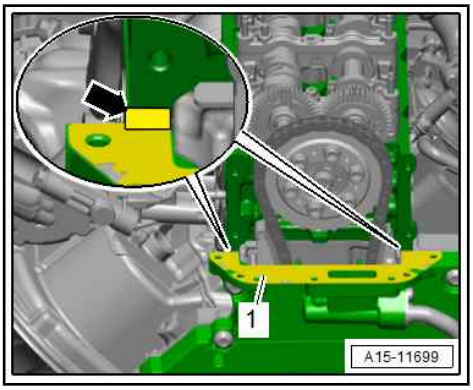
Note expiry date of sealant.

– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 1.5 mm).



– Fit gasket -1-.

– Apply sealant at joints between cylinder head and timing chain cover (bottom) -arrow-, as shown in illustration.



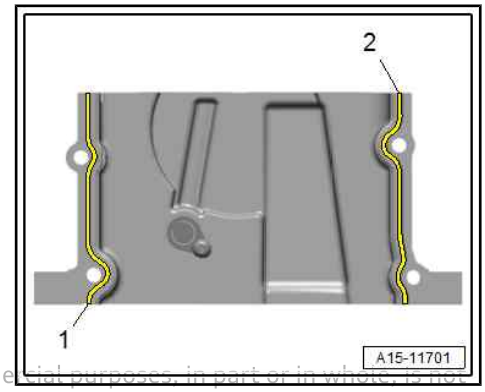
Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ***The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.***

• The bead of sealant must project 1.5 … 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.

– Apply sealant beads -1 and 2- onto clean sealing surface of timing chain cover (right-side), as illustrated.



Note

Install timing chain cover within 5 minutes of applying sealant.

– Carefully fit timing chain cover onto cylinder head but do not press sealant bead on yet.

• Sealant must not be allowed to get into threaded holes.

– First, screw all bolts for timing chain cover in by hand and then tighten.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install coolant pipe (bottom front) for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

– Install cylinder head cover (right-side) ⇒ page 121 .

– Install turbocharger ⇒ page 206 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (top right) - tightening torque and tightening sequence"" , page 67
- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger", page 202
- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - charge air system", page 211

1.2.3 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Socket - T10574-
- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

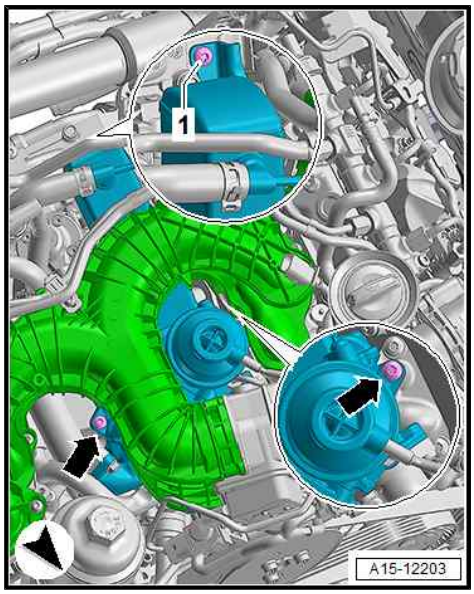
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover .

– Remove drive plate ⇒ page 37 .

– Remove timing chain covers (top) ⇒ page 68 , ⇒ page 71 .

– Remove bolt -1-.

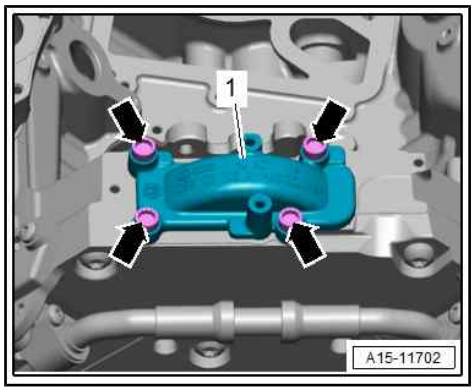
– Loosen bolts -arrows- 2 turns using socket - T10574- .



Note

The bolts -arrows- must not be loosened any further than 2 turns.

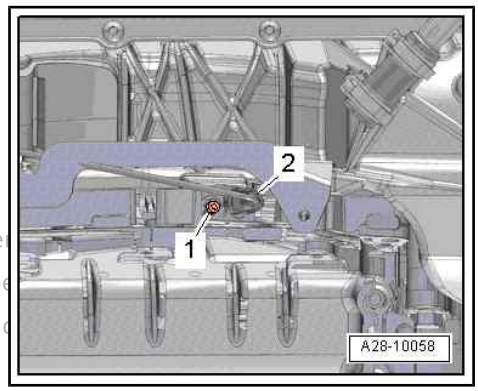
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove cover -1-.



Note

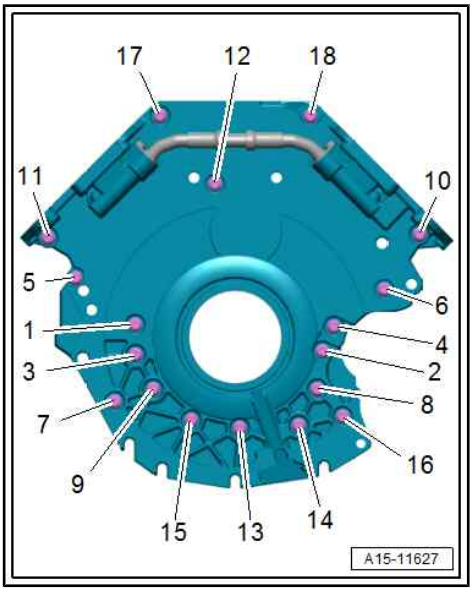
Use insert tool, XZN 10 - V.A.G 1331/15- for bolts that are difficult to access.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for engine speed sender - G28- . (Shown with gearbox installed.)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -18 ... 1-.
– Carefully release timing chain cover (bottom) from bonded joint and remove cover.
– Press crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end) out of timing chain cover (bottom).



Installing

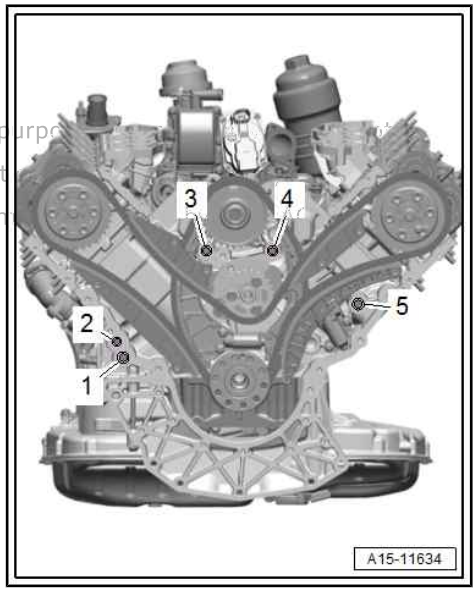
Note

Renew sealing elements after removing.

– Check whether dowel sleeves and clamping sleeves are fitted in cylinder block; install if necessary:

1, 5 - Dowel sleeves

2, 3, 4 - Spring pins



– Remove old sealant from grooves on timing chain cover and from sealing surfaces.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not ... with respect to the correctness of information in this docu...

Caution

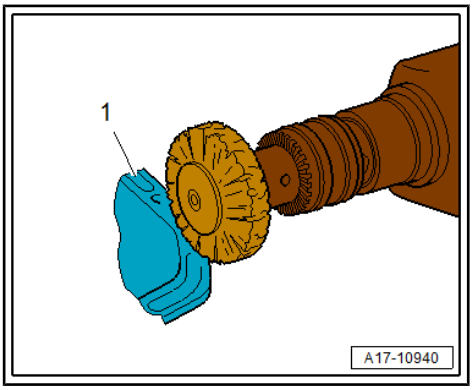
Protect lubrication system against contamination.

- ***Cover exposed parts of the engine.***

WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

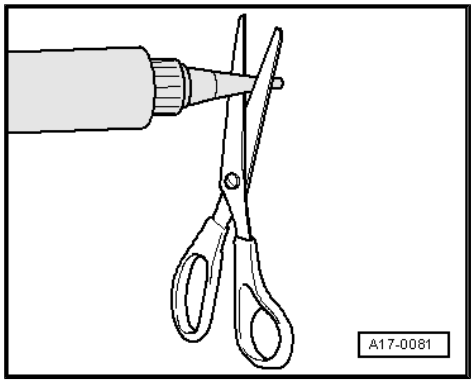


– Remove remaining sealant on timing chain cover -1- and cylinder block using rotating plastic brush or similar.
– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

Note

Note expiry date of sealant.

– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 1.5 mm).

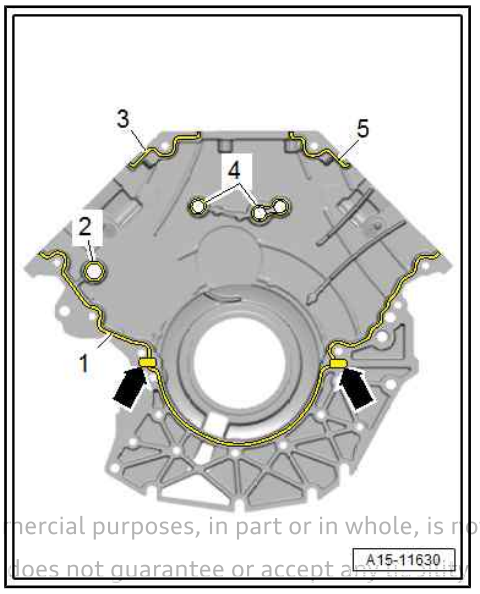


– Fit sealing elements -arrows-.

Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ***The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.***



– Apply beads of sealant onto clean sealing surface of timing chain cover (bottom) as illustrated.

- The beads of sealant -1, 3, 5- must be 1.5 ... 2.0 mm thick.
- The beads of sealant around drillings -2- and -4- must be 1.5 … 2.0 mm thick.

Note

Install timing chain cover within 5 minutes of applying sealant.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Carefully fit timing chain cover onto cylinder block but do not press sealant beads on yet.

- Sealant must not be allowed to get into threaded holes.

– First, screw all bolts for timing chain cover in by hand and then tighten.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end) ⇒ page 39 .

– Install timing chain covers (top) ⇒ “1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top left)”, page 68 and ⇒ “1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top right)”, page 71 .

– Install drive plate ⇒ page 37 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Timing chain cover; Removing and installing timing chain cover

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ““Timing chain cover (bottom) - tightening torque and tightening sequence”“ , page 68
- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover”, page 65
- ⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, engine side (front)”, page 312

2 Chain drive

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains”, page 77

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for high-pressure pump”, page 79

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - drive chain for oil pump”, page 80

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - intermediate drive”, page 81

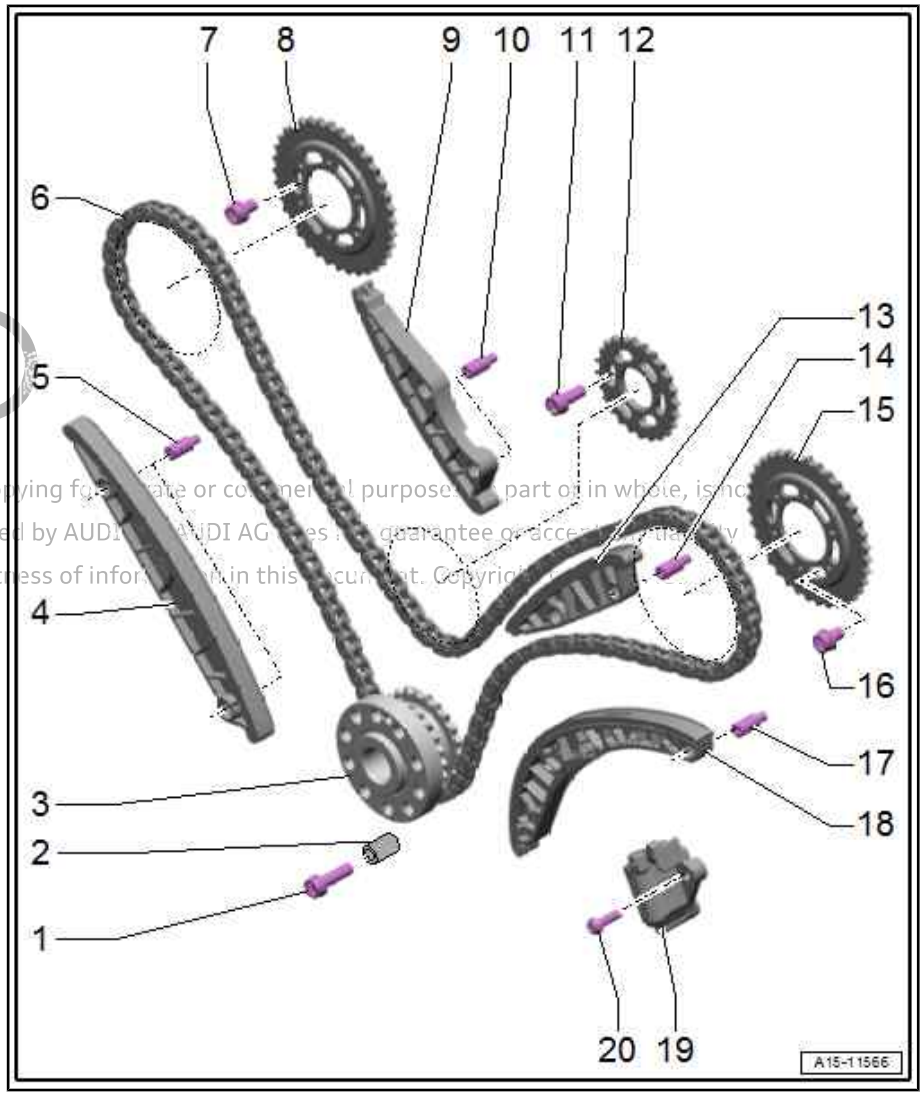
⇒ “2.5 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts”, page 81

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain”, page 91

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for high-pressure pump”, page 100

⇒ “2.8 Installing intermediate drive”, page 101

2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 23 Nm

2 - Chain slip preventer

3 - Crankshaft
- ❑ With sprocket for camshaft timing chain

4 - Guide rail
- ❑ Note installation position

5 - Guide pin
- ❑ For guide rail
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

6 - Camshaft timing chain
- ❑ Removing from camshafts ⇒ page 81
- ❑ Before removing, mark running direction with paint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 23 Nm

8 - Camshaft chain sprocket
- ❑ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ Installation position: Side with lettering legible from gearbox end

9 - Guide rail
- ❑ Note installation position

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

10 - Guide pin

- ❑ For guide rail
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 48)

12 - Drive chain sprocket

- ❑ For balance shaft

13 - Guide rail

- ❑ Note installation position

14 - Guide pin

- ❑ For guide rail
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Camshaft chain sprocket

- ❑ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side)
- ❑ Installation position: Side with lettering legible from gearbox end

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm

17 - Guide pin

- ❑ For tensioning rail
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

18 - Tensioning rail

19 - Chain tensioner

- ❑ For camshaft timing chain
- ❑ Depending on version: O-ring may be fitted at chain tensioner

20 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for high-pressure pump

1 - Drive chain for high-pressure pump
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

3 - Chain tensioner
- ❑ With guide rail

4 - Drive chain sprocket
- ❑ For high-pressure pump
- ❑ Installation position: Side with lettering legible from gearbox end

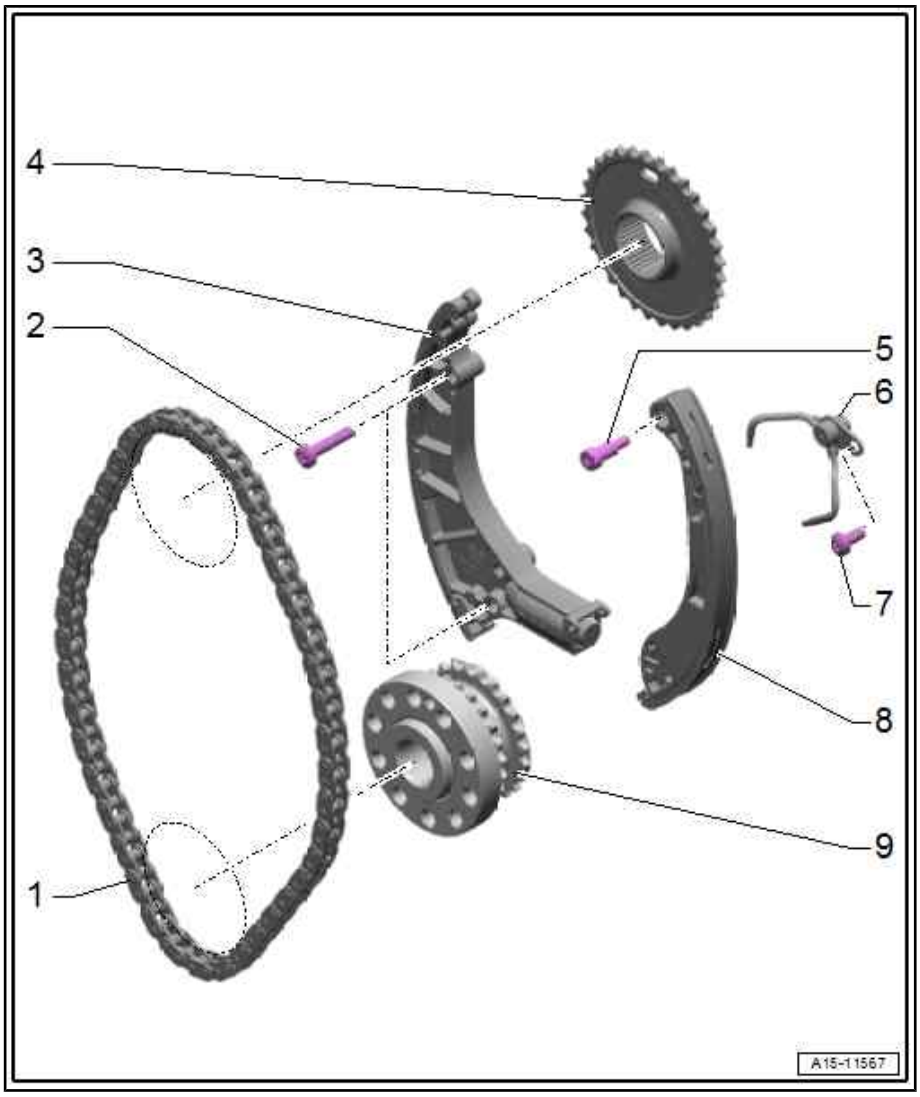
5 - Guide pin
- ❑ For guide rail
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

6 - Oil spray jet
- ❑ For chain lubrication

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +45°

8 - Tensioning rail

9 - Crankshaft
- ❑ With drive chain sprocket for high-pressure pump



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - drive chain for oil pump

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1 - Guide rail

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

3 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

4 - Drive chain
- ❑ For oil pump

5 - Guide pin
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

6 - Guide pin
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

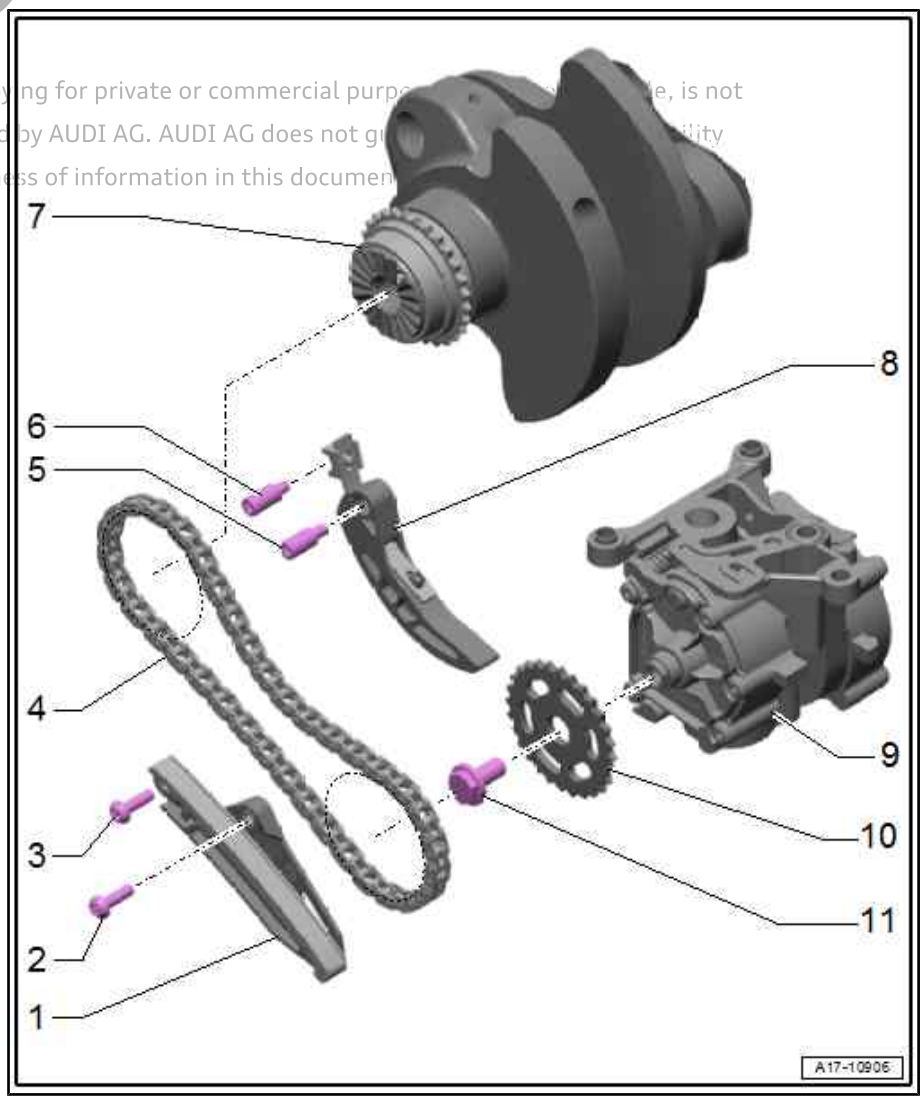
7 - Crankshaft
- ❑ With drive chain sprocket for oil pump

8 - Tensioning rail

9 - Oil pump
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

10 - Chain sprocket
- ❑ For oil pump

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 10 (page 160)



2.4 Exploded view - intermediate drive

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 16 (page 78)

2 - Camshaft chain sprocket

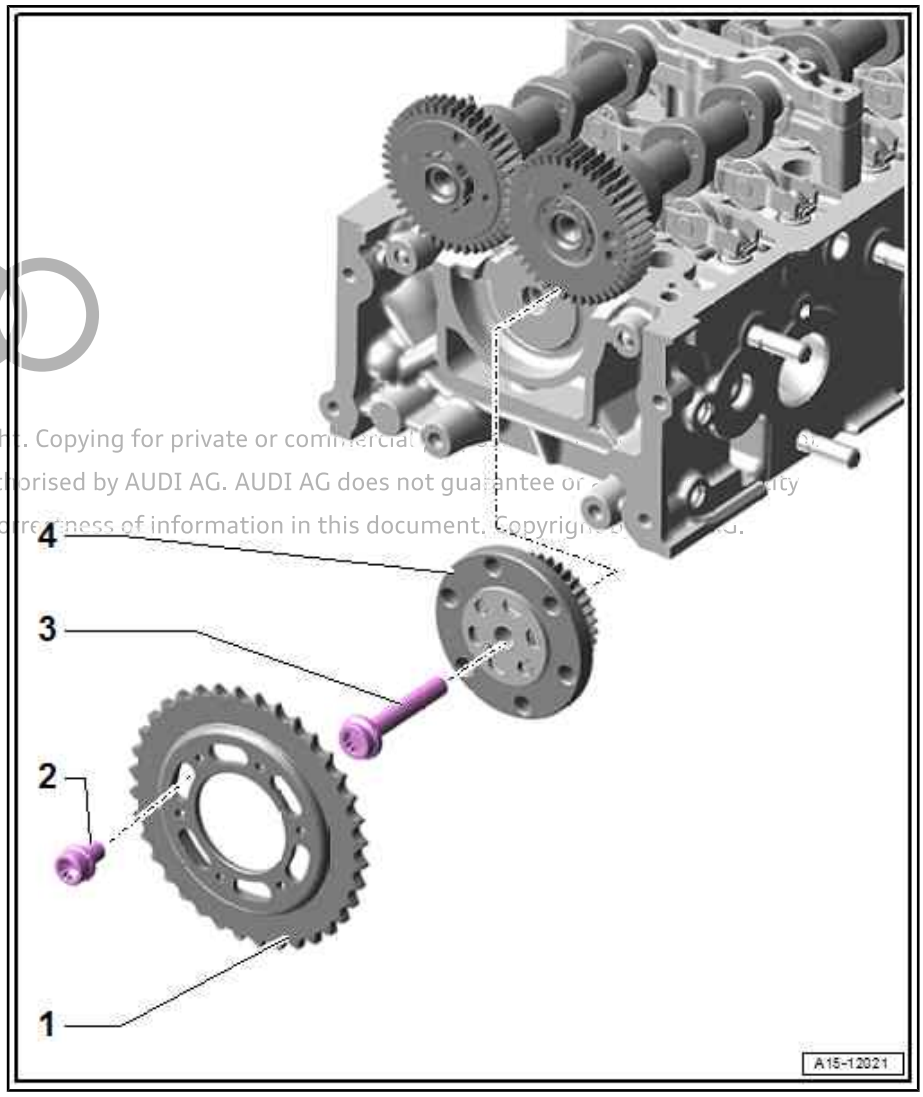
- ❑ Installation position: Side with lettering legible from gearbox end

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm +90°

4 - Intermediate drive

- ❑ Installing ⇒ page 101

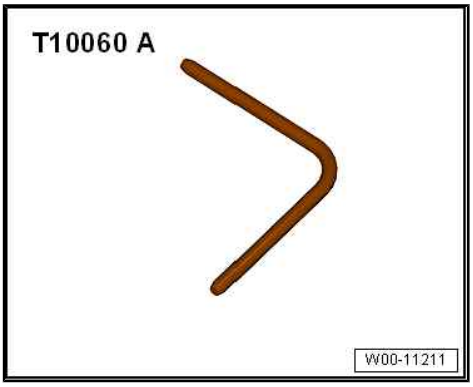


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts

Special tools and workshop equipment required

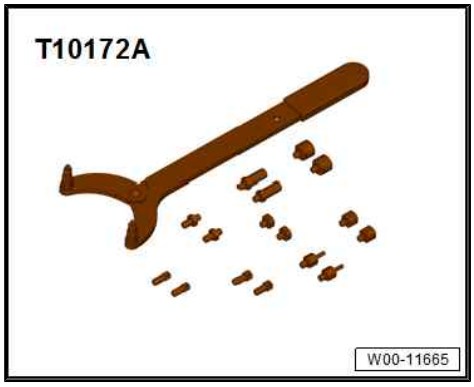
- ♦ Locking pin - T10060A- (2x)



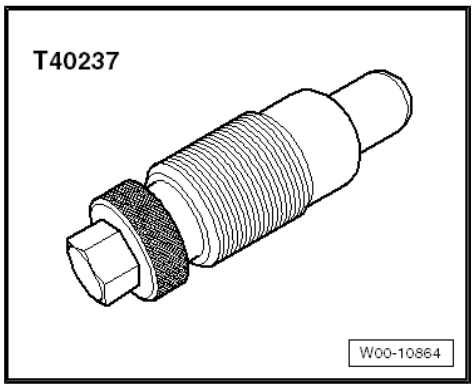
- Torque wrench - VAS 6583-



- Counterhold tool - T10172 A- with adapters -T10172/7-



- Locking pin - T40237-



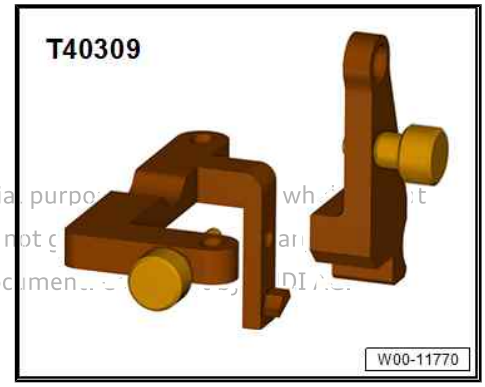
- Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



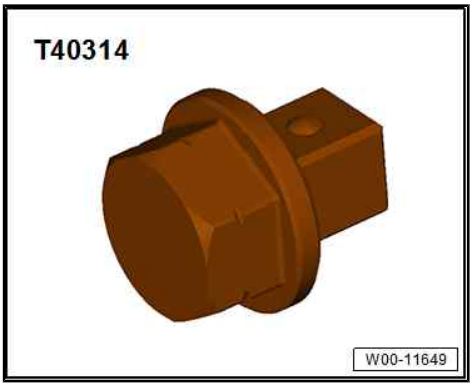
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Assembly tool - T40309-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo... wh... t
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g... ar...
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum... DI ...



- Adapter - T40310- (not illustrated)
- Adapter - T40314-



Removing

- Engine and gearbox in vehicle

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Chain drive; Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts .

Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

- ***The crankshaft and camshafts must only be turned with the chain drive mechanism fully installed.***

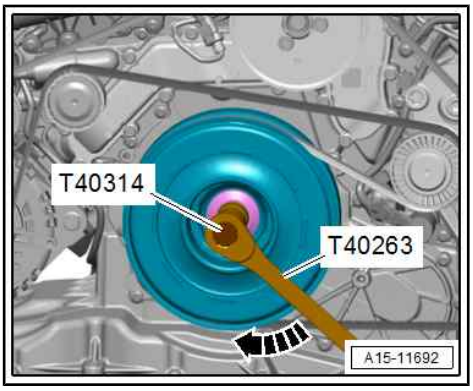
– Remove timing chain cover (top right) ⇒ page 71 .

Caution

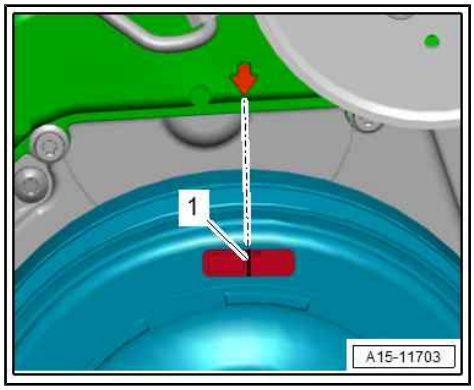
Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***

– Use wrench, 21 mm - T40263- and adapter - T40314- to turn crankshaft until vibration damper is at “TDC” position.

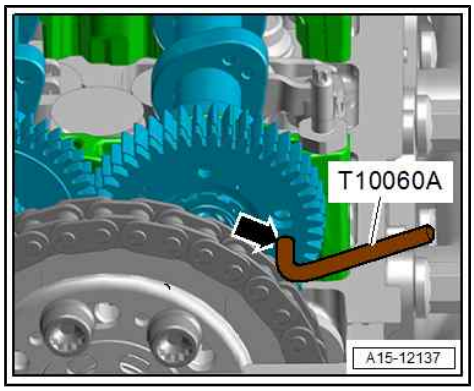


- Mark (stuck on) -1- must be vertical and aligned with arrow marking on coolant pump.

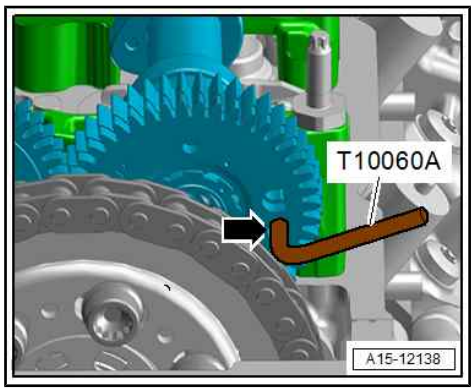


- It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- . If not, turn crankshaft 360° further in direction of engine rotation.

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



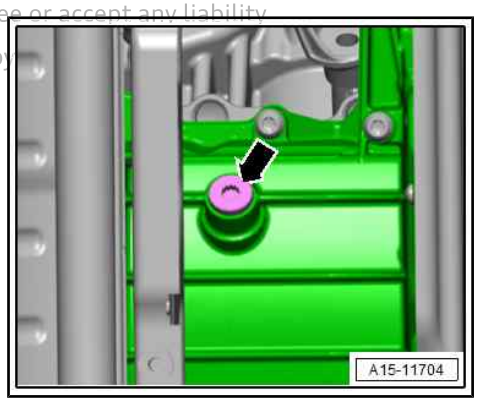
– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



A4/A5: Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

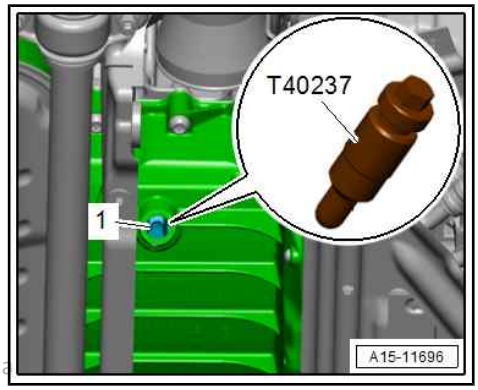
– Unscrew plug -arrow- from sump (top section).



Note

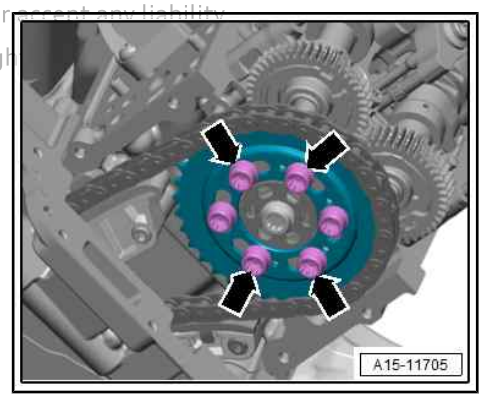
To do this on A4/A5 vehicles, the subframe cross brace must be lowered; while doing so, do not press the joint pin of the guide link out of the tapered seat ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

– Screw locking pin - T40237- into hole (20 Nm); if necessary, turn crankshaft -1- backwards and forwards slightly to fully centralise locking pin.

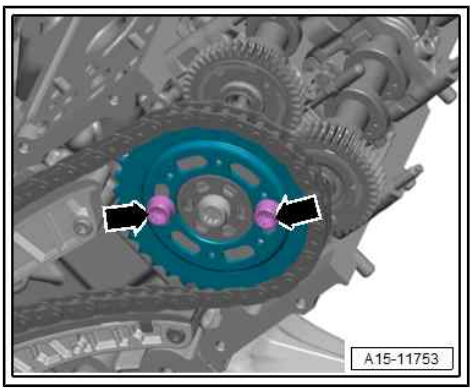


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

– Remove bolts -arrows- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side).



– Slacken bolts -arrows- by a half turn.

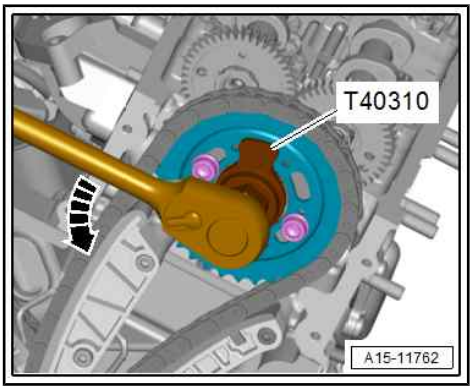


– With the help of a second mechanic, apply torque evenly to camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) by turning adapter - T40310- anti-clockwise -arrow- and maintain this torque.

• This will press the chain tensioner back.

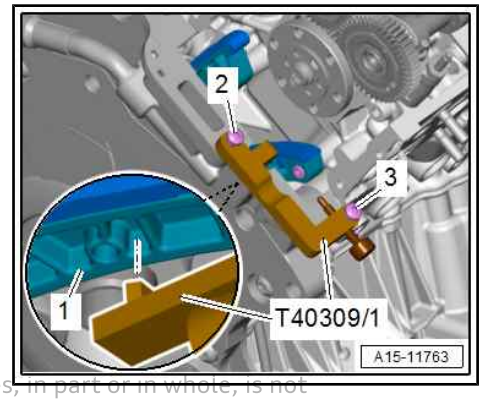
Note

The chain tensioner is oil-damped and can therefore only be pressed back slowly by applying constant pressure.



– Fit retainer -T40309/1- into tensioning rail -1- and tighten bolts -2, 3-, as shown in illustration.

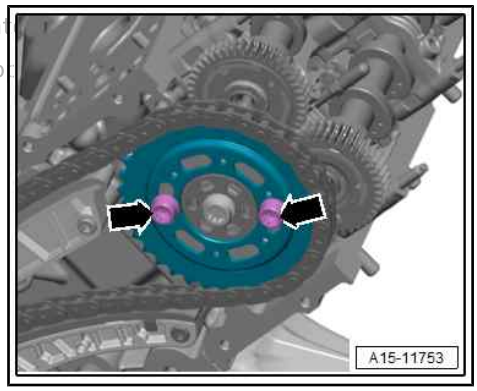
Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-2-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-3-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
3.	-2-	8 Nm
4.	-3-	8 Nm



– Release tension on camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and remove adapter - T40310- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

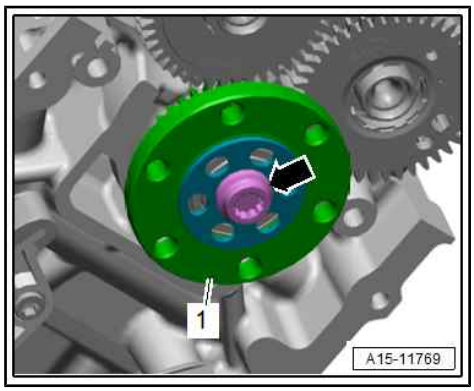
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- completely and detach camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side).



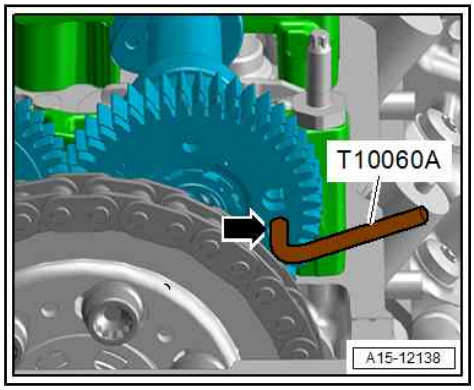
Note

Do not loosen bolt -arrow- for intermediate drive -1- for cylinder bank 1 (right-side). If bolt for intermediate drive has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted ⇒ page 101 .

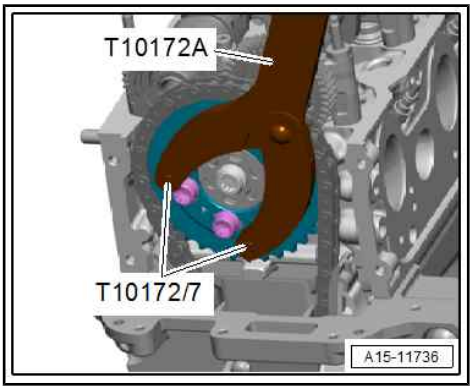
– Remove timing chain cover (top left) ⇒ page 68 .



• Inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) locked at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

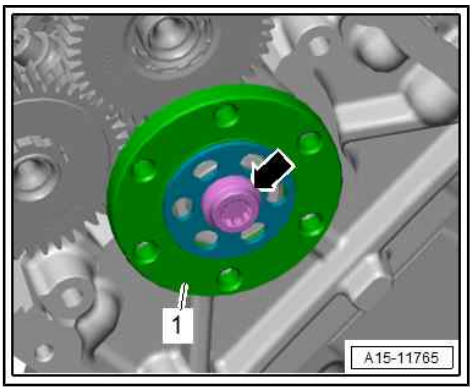


– Apply counterhold tool - T10172 A- with adapter -T10172/7- to head of bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) and remove bolts (re-apply counterhold tool several times as necessary).
– Detach camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) and secure camshaft timing chain with a piece of wire to prevent it from falling into chain case.



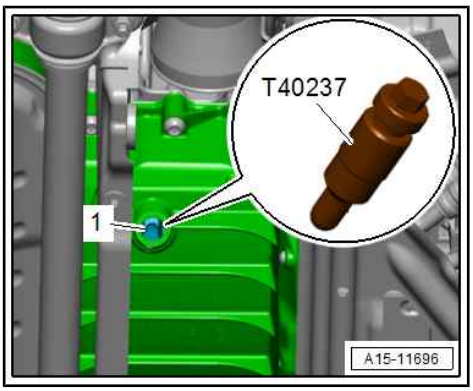
Note

Do not loosen bolt -arrow- for intermediate drive -1- for cylinder bank 2 (left-side). If bolt for intermediate drive has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted ⇒ *page 105* .

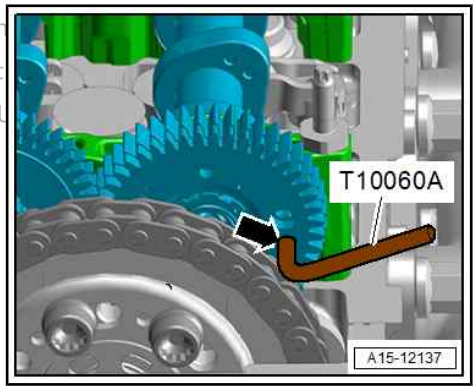


Installing

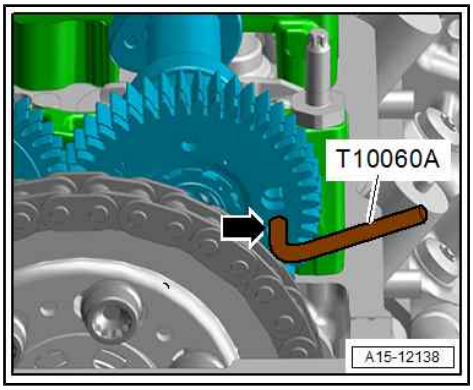
• Crankshaft locked in “TDC” position with locking pin - T40237- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU



- Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .
- Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .

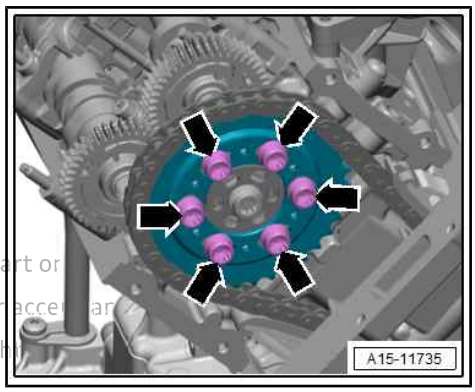


Note

Locking pins -T10060A- must not be tensioned; it should be possible to move them easily. If necessary, turn intermediate drive slightly to align camshafts (fit two bolts and turn using counterhold tool - T10172 A- and adapter -T10172/7-).

– Position camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) with timing chain on intermediate drive.

- The side of the chain sprocket with lettering faces the gearbox.
- The elongated holes in the camshaft chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the threaded holes in the intermediate drive.



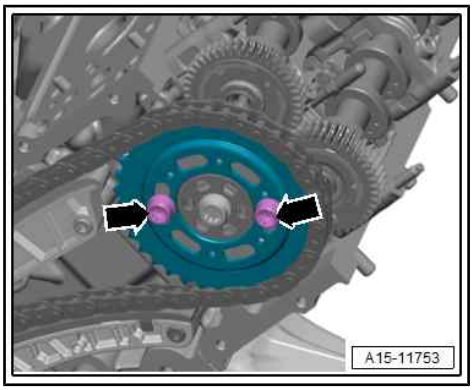
– Loosely screw in bolts -arrows-.

- It should just be possible to turn the camshaft chain sprocket on the intermediate drive without axial movement.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Position camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) with timing chain on intermediate drive.

- The side of the chain sprocket with lettering faces the gearbox.
- The elongated holes in the camshaft chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the threaded holes in the intermediate drive.

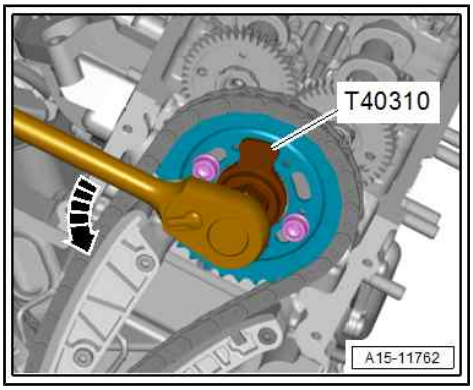


– Screw in bolts -arrows- loosely for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side).

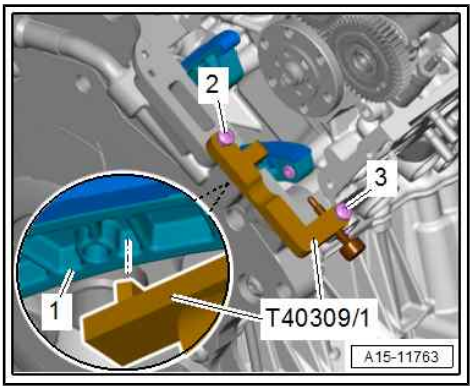
- It should just be possible to turn the camshaft chain sprocket on the intermediate drive without axial movement.

– Check that camshaft timing chain is positioned correctly on guide rail and tensioning rail.

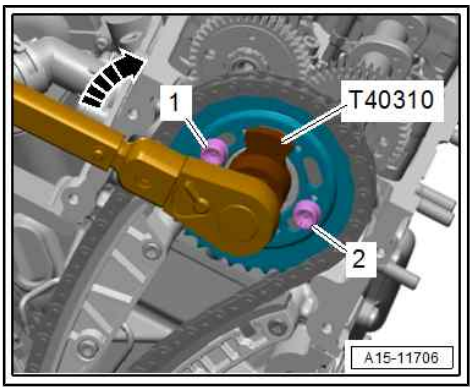
– With the help of a second mechanic, apply torque evenly to camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) by turning adapter - T40310- anti-clockwise -arrow- and maintain this torque.



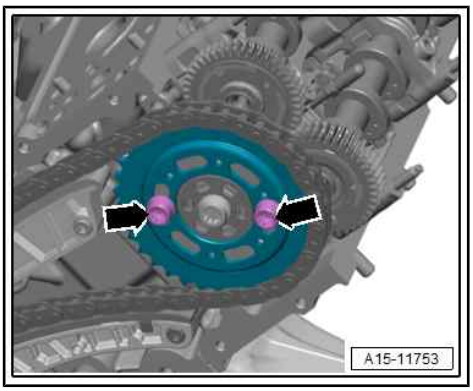
– Remove retainer -T40309/1- .
– Release camshaft chain sprocket.
– Remove bolts -2, 3-.



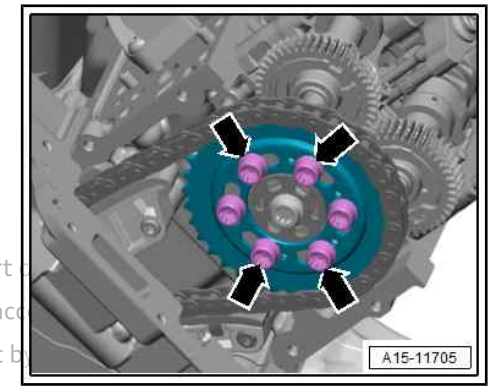
– Apply an initial torque of 10 Nm to camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) in clockwise direction -arrow- using adapter - T40310- and torque wrench - VAS 6583- .
– Detach torque wrench and adapter - T40310- from camshaft chain sprocket.



– Pre-tighten bolts -1, 2- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) to 10 Nm.

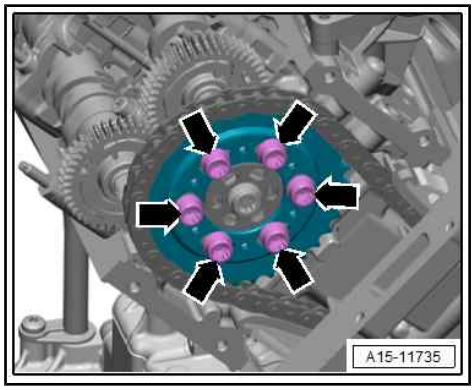


– Screw in bolts -arrows- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and pre-tighten to 10 Nm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

– Pre-tighten bolts -arrows- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) to 10 Nm.
– Tighten bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (right-side) to final torque.
– Tighten bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) to final torque.
– Remove locking pin - T40237- and locking pin -T10060A- .



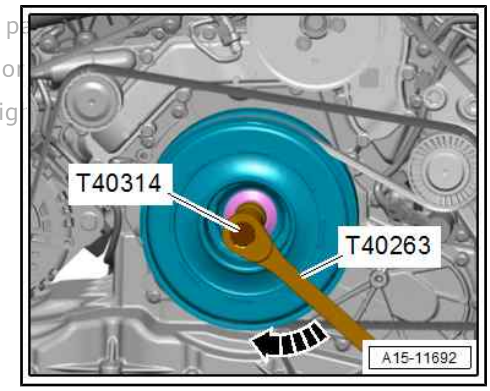
Checking valve timing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
p ted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

Caution

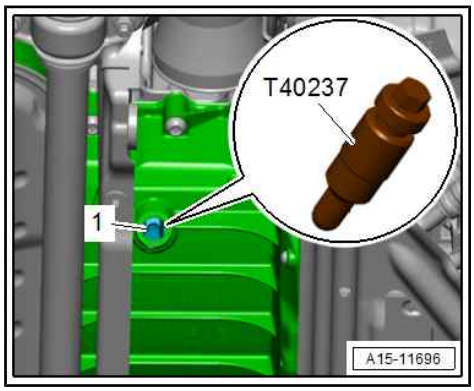
Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***



– Turn crankshaft two rotations until vibration damper is at “TDC” position again.

– While turning in this direction, lock crankshaft -1- with locking pin - T40237- . Tighten locking pin to 20 Nm.



Caution

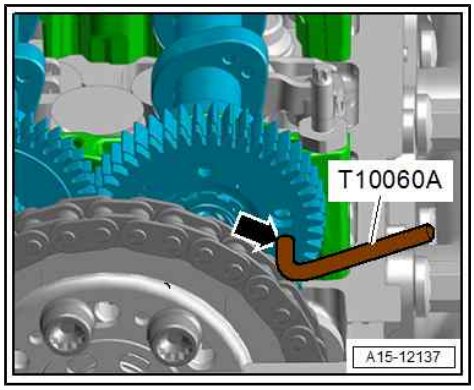
The crankshaft must be exactly in “TDC” position to ensure accurate valve timing adjustment.

- ***If crankshaft has been turned past “TDC” position, turn crankshaft two further rotations until it is again positioned just before “TDC”. Then turn further in the same direction and lock crankshaft with locking pin - T40237- .***

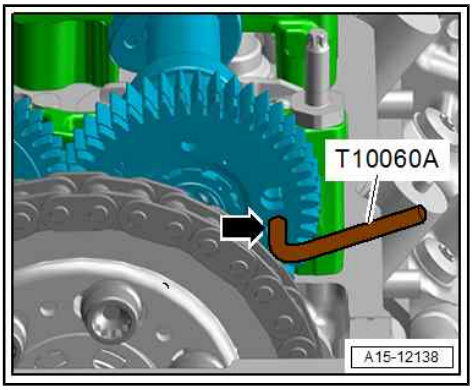
– Check that camshafts on both cylinder heads are positioned at “TDC”.

• It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- .

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



Note

- *The adjustment is OK even if the locking pins -T10060A- are difficult to insert.*
- *If it is not possible to insert the locking pins -T10060A- , repeat the adjustment procedure ⇒ page 87 .*

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Remove locking pin - T40237- and locking pin -T10060A- .

– Install timing chain covers (top)
⇒ “1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top left)”, page 68 and
⇒ “1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (top right)”, page 71 .

– A4/A5: Install subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Chain drive; Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts .

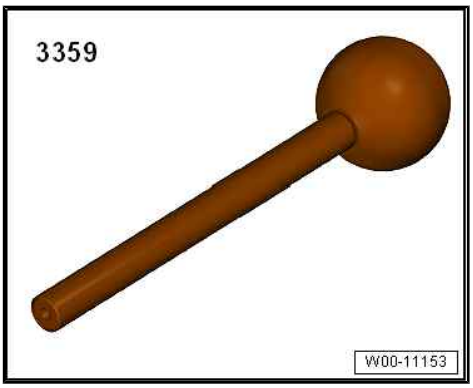
Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains”, page 77
- Plug for “TDC” marking ⇒ Item 19 (page 162)

2.6 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain

Special tools and workshop equipment required

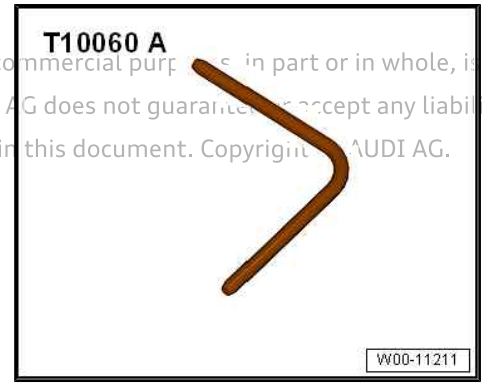
- Locking pin - 3359-



- Torque wrench - VAS 6583-

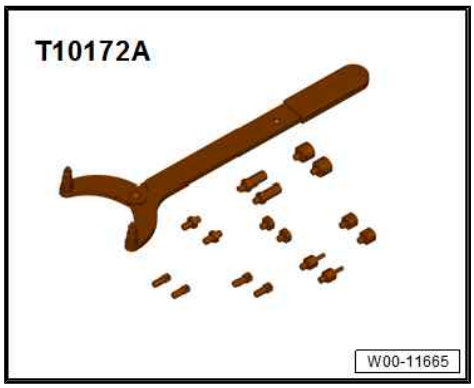


- Locking pin - T10060A- (2x)

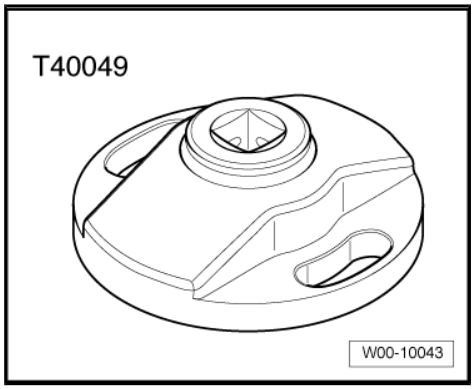


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

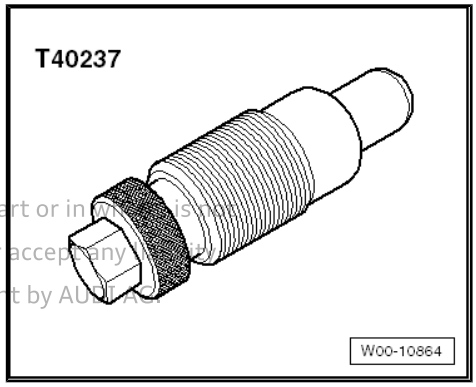
- Counterhold tool - T10172A-



- Key - T40049-



♦ Locking pin - T40237-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Locking pin - T40316- (not illustrated)

Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox .

– Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ page 73 .

Caution

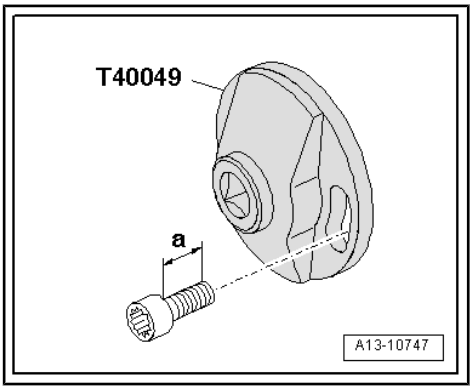
Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

- *The crankshaft and camshafts must only be turned with the chain drive mechanism fully installed.*

Caution

Risk of damage to drive chain if thread of bolt exceeds specified length.

- *Use bolts with a maximum thread length -a- of 22 mm to attach key -T40049- .*
- *If no suitable bolts are available, position suitable washer (s) under bolt head so that remaining thread length does not exceed 22 mm.*

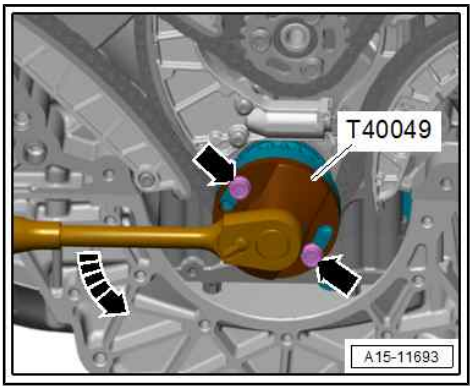


– Secure key - T40049- onto rear of crankshaft -arrows-.

Caution

Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

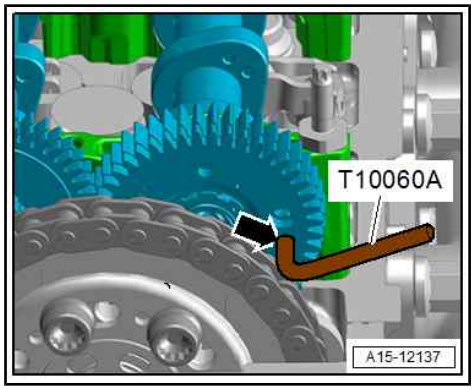
- *Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.*



– Rotate crankshaft to “TDC”.

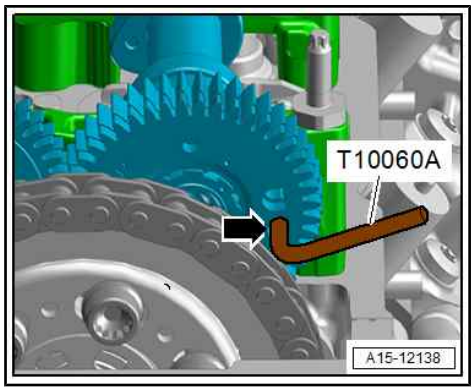
- It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- .

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

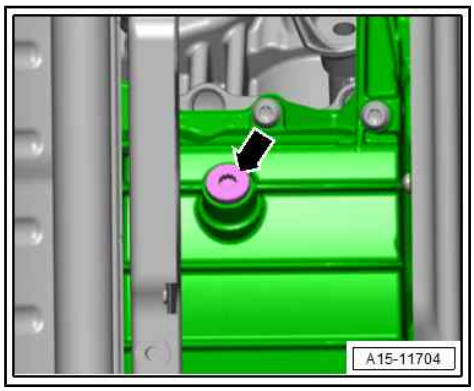
A4/A5: Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .



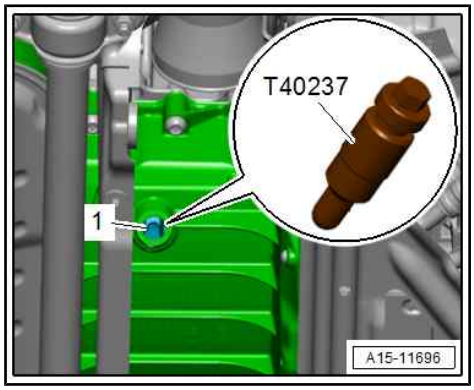
– Unscrew plug -arrow- from sump (top section).

Note

To do this on A4/A5 vehicles, the subframe cross brace must be lowered; while doing so, do not press the joint pin of the guide link out of the tapered seat ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

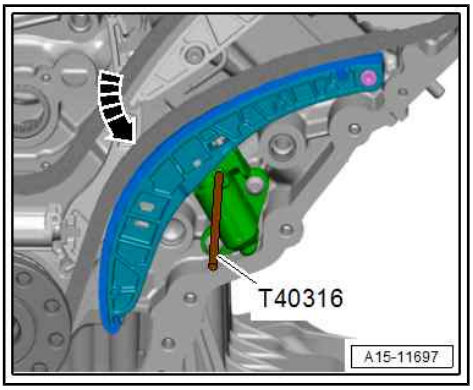


– Screw locking pin - T40237- into hole (20 Nm); if necessary, turn crankshaft -1- backwards and forwards slightly to fully centralise locking pin.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press tensioning rail of camshaft timing chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40316- .



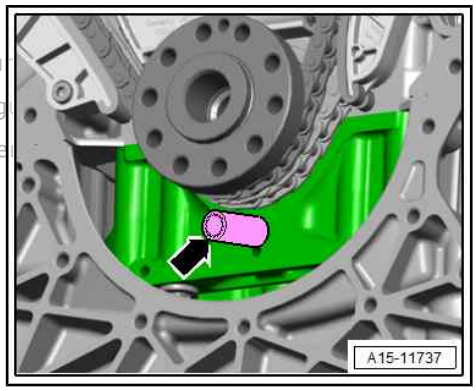
– Remove bolt -arrow- for chain slip preventer.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g

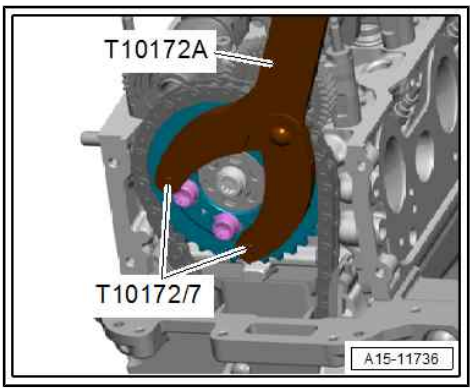
Caution

If a used timing chain rotates in the opposite direction when it is refitted, this can cause breakage.

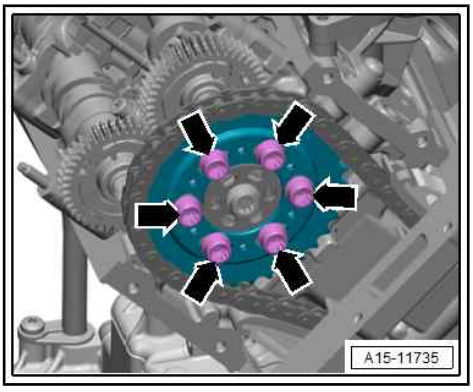
- ***Mark running direction of timing chain with coloured arrows for re-installation.***



– Apply counterhold tool - T10172A- with adapter -T10172/7- to head of bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).

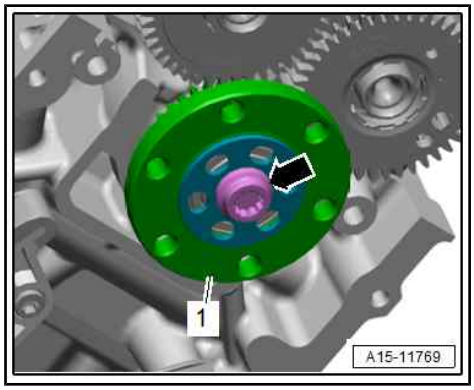


– Remove bolts -arrows- (apply counterhold tool for each one).
– Perform the same work step on the other side of the vehicle.
– Detach camshaft timing chain with camshaft chain sprockets.



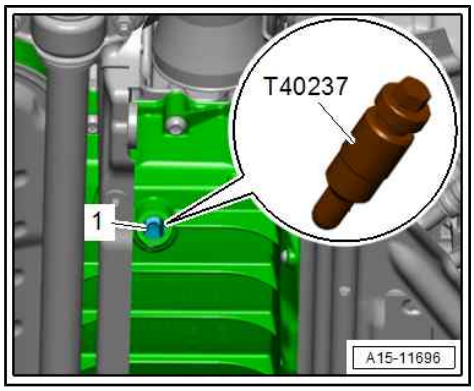
Note

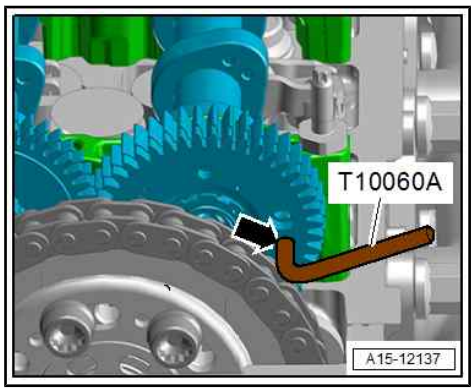
Do not loosen bolt -arrow- for intermediate drive -1-. If bolt for intermediate drive has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted *⇒ page 101* *.*

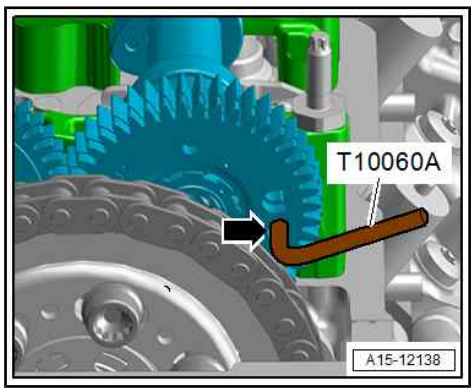


Installing

- Crankshaft locked in “TDC” position with locking pin - T40237- .

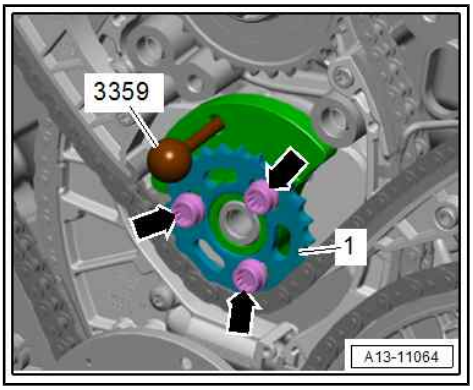






Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .
- Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” using locking pin - T10060A- .
- Balance shaft locked in “TDC” position with locking pin - 3359- .



Note

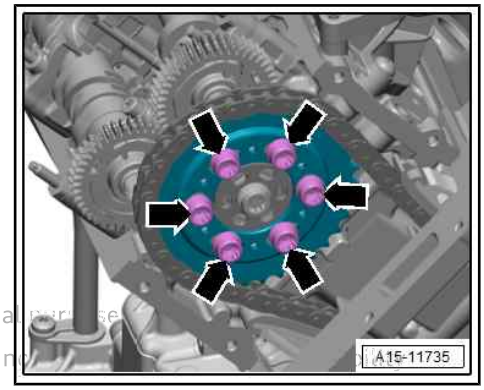
- ♦ *Locking pins -T10060A- must not be tensioned; it should be possible to move them easily. If necessary, turn intermediate drive slightly to align camshafts (fit two bolts and turn using counterhold tool - T10172A- and adapter -T10172/7-).*
- ♦ *After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.*

– Position camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) with timing chain on intermediate drive.

- The side of the chain sprocket with lettering faces the gearbox.
- The elongated holes in the camshaft chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the threaded holes in the intermediate drive.

– Loosely screw in bolts -arrows-.

- It should just be possible to turn the camshaft chain sprocket on the intermediate drive without axial movement.



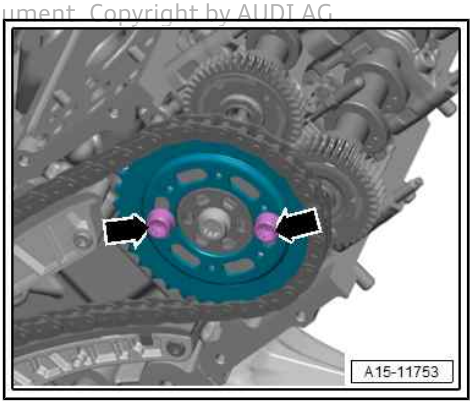
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Position camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) with timing chain on intermediate drive.

- The side of the chain sprocket with lettering faces the gearbox.
- The elongated holes in the camshaft chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the threaded holes in the intermediate drive.

– Screw in bolts -arrows- loosely for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side).

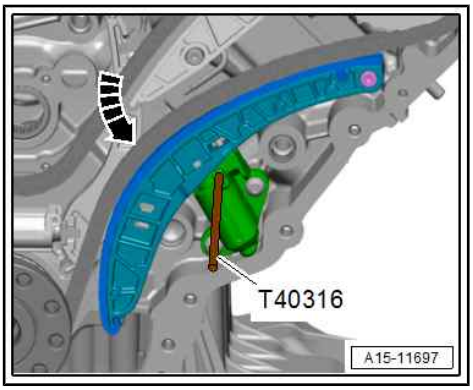
- It should just be possible to turn the camshaft chain sprocket on the intermediate drive without axial movement.



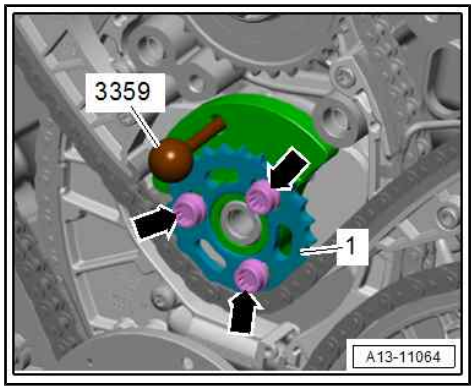
– Check that camshaft timing chain is positioned correctly on guide rail and tensioning rail.

– Press tensioning rail of camshaft timing chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and remove locking pin -T40316- .

– Release chain tensioner.



– Loosen bolts -arrows- at drive chain sprocket -1- for balance shaft.
– Lock balance shaft with locking pin - 3359- , as shown in illustration.

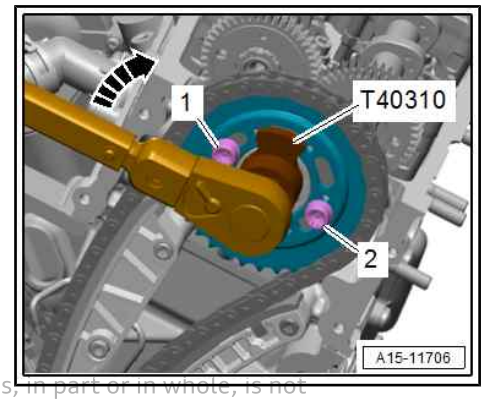


Note

If necessary, remove bolts and bring drive chain sprocket for balance shaft into position.

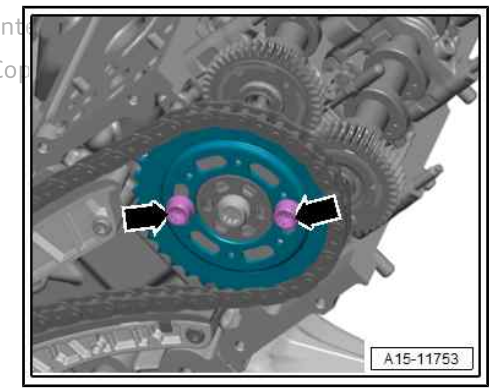
– Loosely screw in bolts -arrows-.
• The elongated holes in the drive chain sprocket must be aligned centrally over the tapped holes in the balance shaft.
• It should just be possible to turn the drive chain sprocket on the balance shaft without axial movement.

– Apply an initial torque of 10 Nm to camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) in clockwise direction -arrow- using adapter - T40310- and torque wrench - VAS 6583- .
– Detach torque wrench and adapter - T40310- from camshaft chain sprocket.

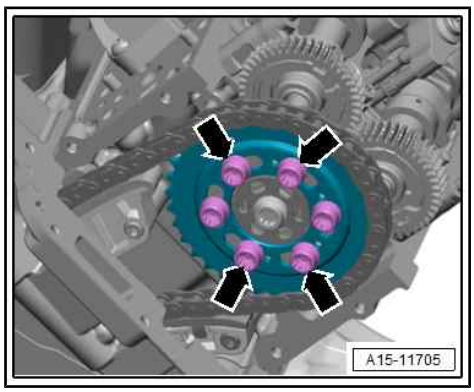


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

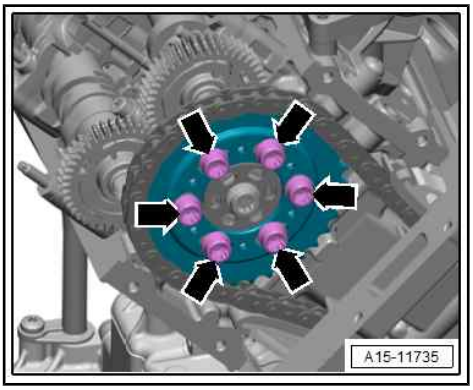
– Pre-tighten bolts -1, 2- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) to 10 Nm.



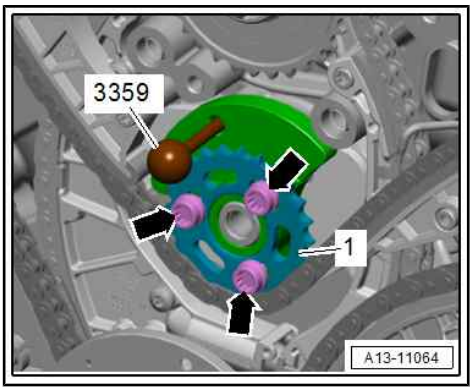
– Screw in bolts -arrows- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and pre-tighten to 10 Nm.



– Pre-tighten bolts -arrows- for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) to 10 Nm.
– Tighten bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) to final torque.
– Tighten bolts for camshaft chain sprocket for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) to final torque.



– Tighten bolts -arrows- at drive chain sprocket -1- for balance shaft.
– Remove locking pin - 3359- , adapter - T40310- and locking pin -T10060A- .
– Remove locking pin - T40237- .

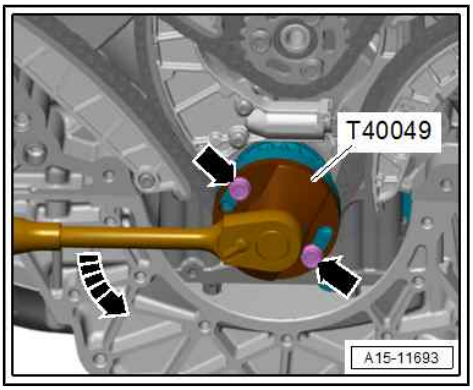


Checking valve timing

Caution

Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- *Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.*

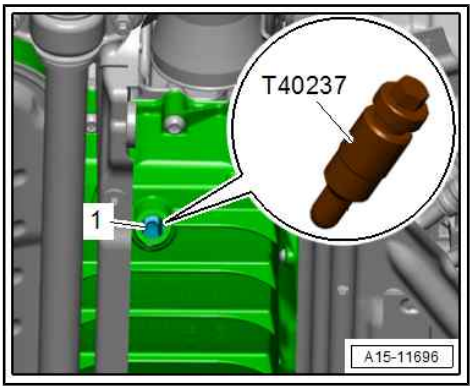


– Turn crankshaft two rotations until it is again positioned just before “TDC”.
– While turning in this direction, lock crankshaft -1- with locking pin - T40237- . Tighten locking pin to 20 Nm.

Caution

The crankshaft must be exactly in “TDC” position to ensure accurate valve timing adjustment.

- *If crankshaft has been turned past “TDC” position, turn crankshaft two further rotations until it is again positioned just before “TDC”. Then turn further in the same direction and lock crankshaft with locking pin - T40237- .*

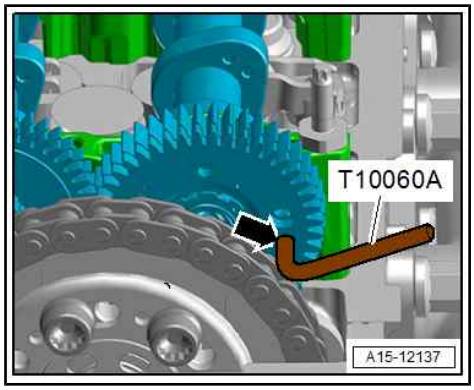


– Check that camshafts on both cylinder heads are positioned at “TDC”.

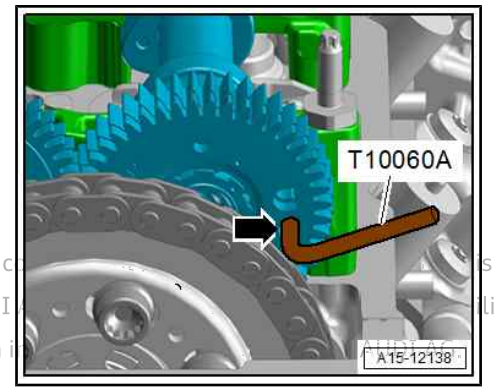
• It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



Note

- *The adjustment is OK even if the locking pins -T10060A- are difficult to insert.*
- *If it is not possible to insert the locking pins -T10060A-, repeat the adjustment procedure ⇒ page 96 .*

Copyright AUDI AG. Any forwarding or c... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... lity with respect to the correctness of information i... AUDI AG.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Remove locking pin - T40237- and locking pin - T10060A- .

– Install timing chain covers ⇒ page 68 .

– A4/A5: Install subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

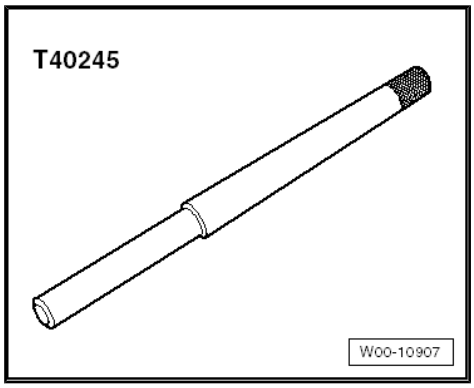
Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains”, page 77
- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft”, page 48
- Plug for “TDC” marking ⇒ Item 19 (page 162)

2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for high-pressure pump

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Locking pin - T40245-



- Locking pin - T40316- (not illustrated)

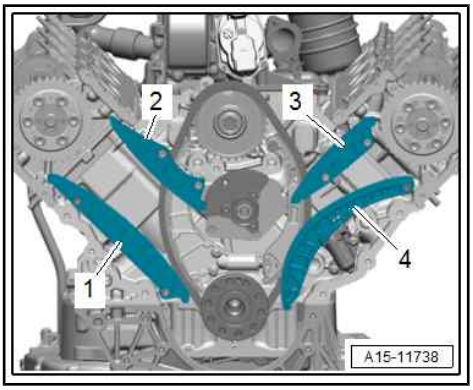
Removing

– Remove camshaft timing chain ⇒ page 91 .

Note

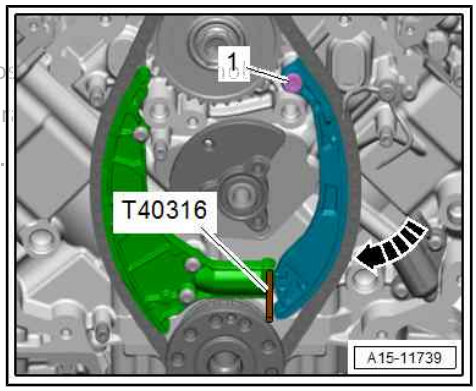
Mark position of guide rail -1- for re-installation.

– Detach guide rails -1, 2, 3- and tensioning rail -4-.



– Press tensioning rail of chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40316- .
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove tensioning rail.
– Detach chain sprocket for high-pressure pump slightly and remove drive chain for high-pressure pump.

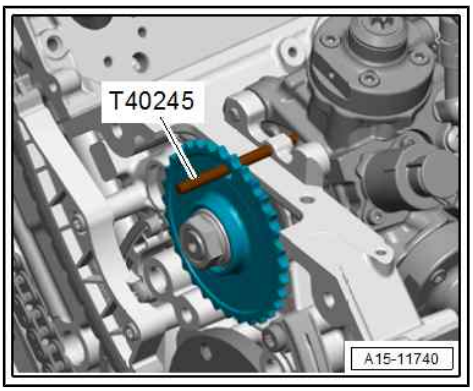
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar
Without liability for the correctness of information in this document.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Lock chain sprocket for high-pressure pump in position using locking pin - T40245- and fit drive chain for high-pressure pump.
– Install camshaft timing chain ⇒ page 91 .
– Remove locking pin - T40245- for chain sprocket for high-pressure pump.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for high-pressure pump”, page 79

2.8 Installing intermediate drive

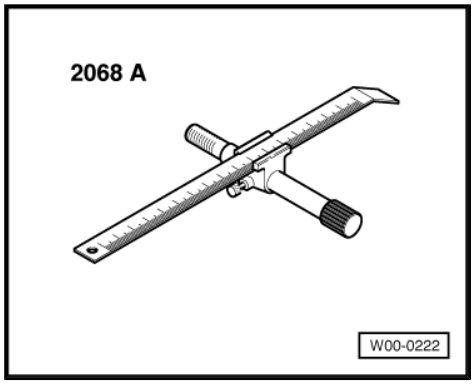
⇒ “2.8.1 Installing intermediate drive for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and adjusting backlash”, page 101

⇒ “2.8.2 Installing intermediate drive for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) and adjusting backlash”, page 105

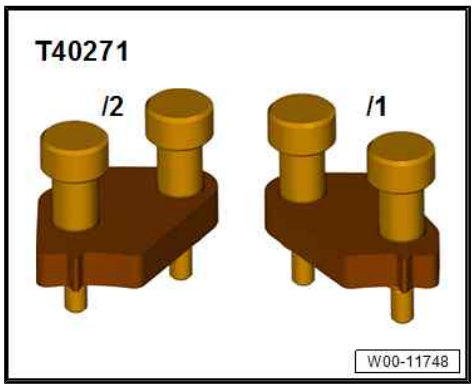
2.8.1 Installing intermediate drive for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and adjusting backlash

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- TDC adjustment bar - 2068A-



- Setting tool - T40271-



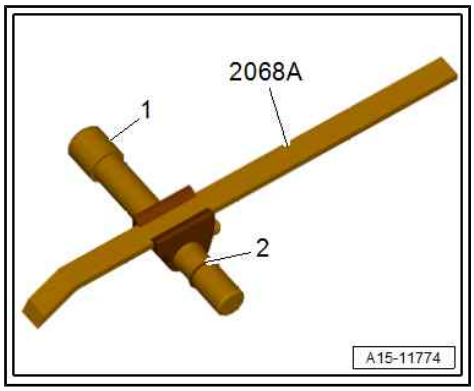
- Adjustment pin - T40313-



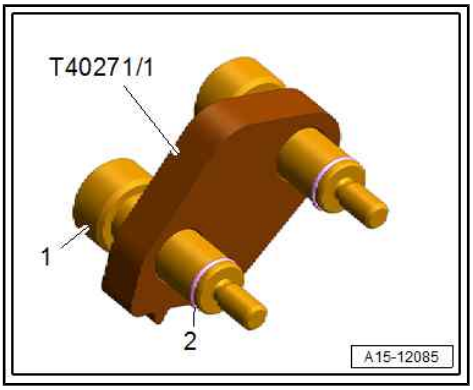
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Preparing tool

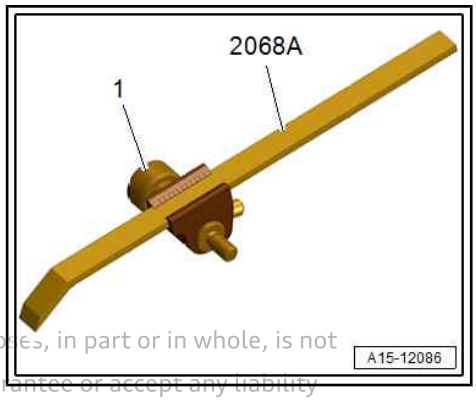
– Remove retaining ring -2- and take knurled screw -1- out of TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- .



– Remove circlip -2- and take knurled screw -1- out.



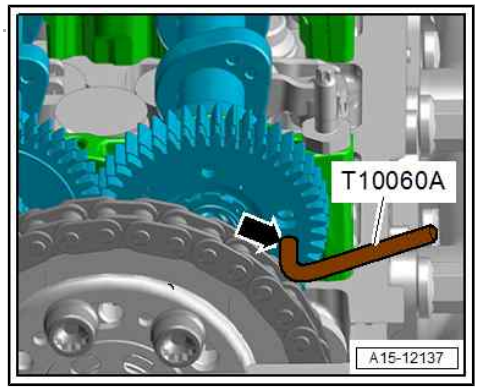
– Slide knurled screw -1- from tool -T40271/1- into TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- , as shown in illustration.



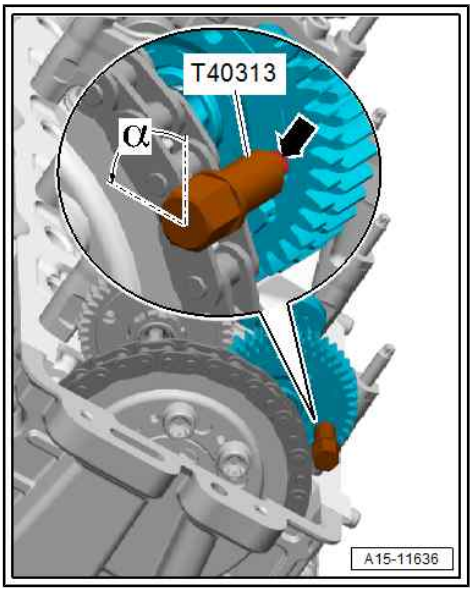
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Procedure

- Timing chain removed from camshafts.
- Camshafts for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) installed.
- Exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) locked at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



- Backlash compensation assembly of exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) locked in place with adjustment pin - T40313- . Teeth of the two gears of exhaust camshaft must align ⇒ page 139 .



– Align flange -3- with eccentric washer -4- of intermediate drive.

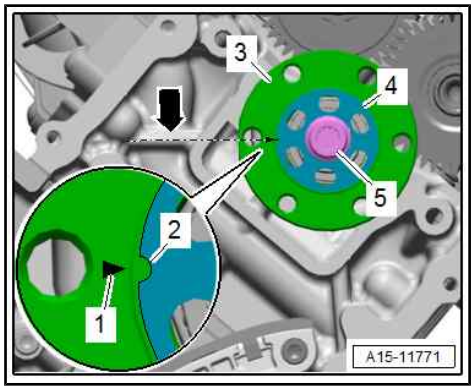
• Marking -1- should align with notch -2-.

– Fit intermediate drive on cylinder head.

• Marking -1- and notch -2- must align with cast projection -arrow- on cylinder head.

– Screw in bolt -5- for intermediate drive by hand until it makes contact.

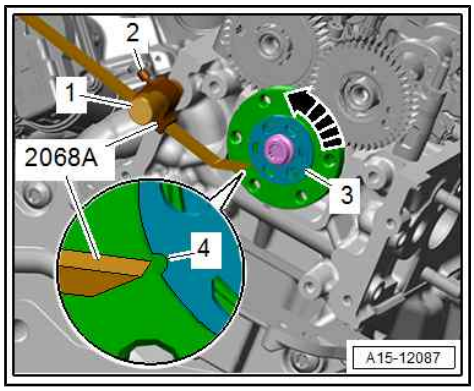
• It should just be possible to turn the eccentric washer of the intermediate drive without axial movement.



– Turn eccentric washer -3- by hand anti-clockwise -arrow- as far as stop.

– Secure TDC adjustment bar - 2068 A- to cylinder head using knurled screw -1-, as shown in illustration.

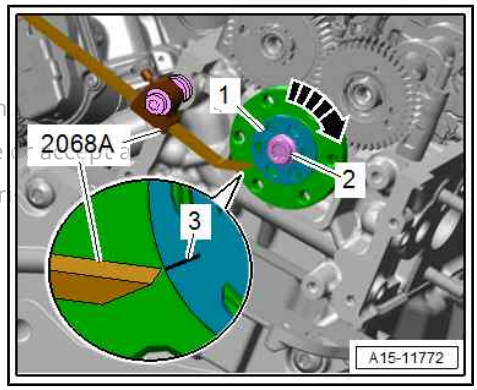
– Align caliper gauge of TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- with marking -4- on eccentric washer, as shown in illustration, then secure with locking bolt -2-.



– Turn eccentric washer -1- clockwise -arrow- until line marking -3- is aligned with TDC adjustment bar - 2068 A- , as illustrated.

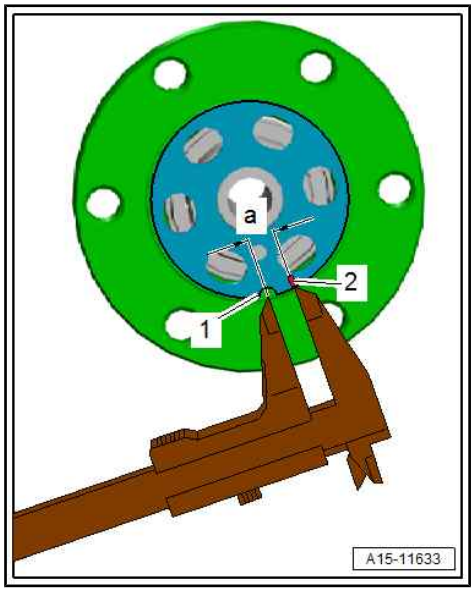
– Tighten bolt -2-, ensuring that eccentric washer remains in setting position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr



Note

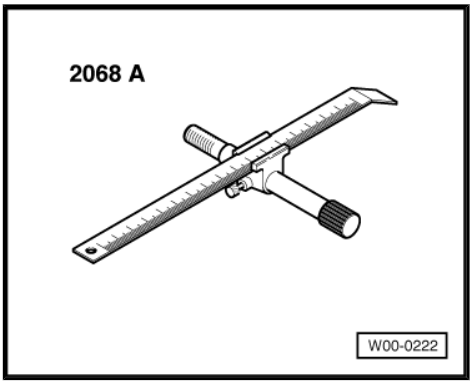
On some versions, there is no line marking on the eccentric washer. If this is the case, a mark -2- must be made at a distance -a- = 5.2 mm to the right of the notch -1-.



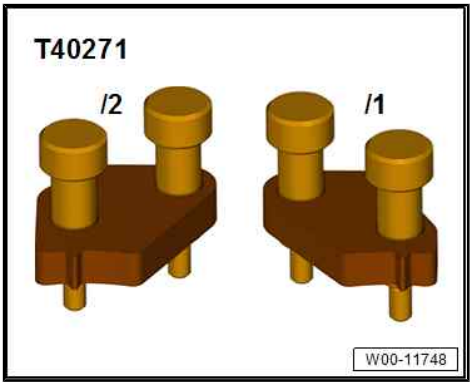
2.8.2 Installing intermediate drive for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) and adjusting backlash

Special tools and workshop equipment required

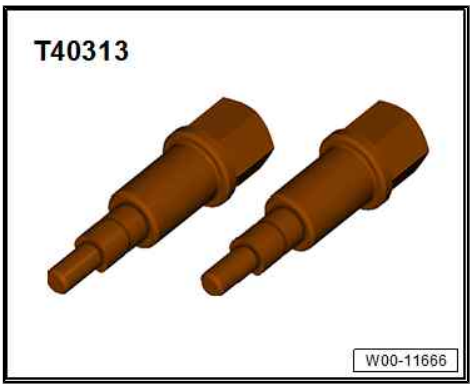
- TDC adjustment bar - 2068A-



- Setting tool - T40271-

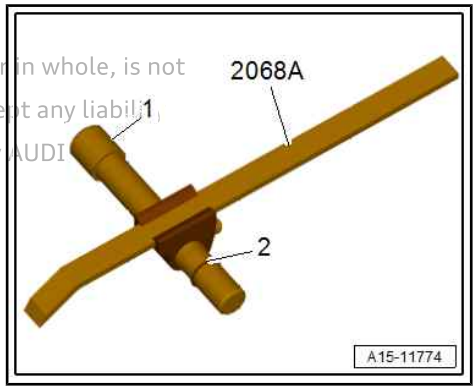


- Adjustment pin - T40313-



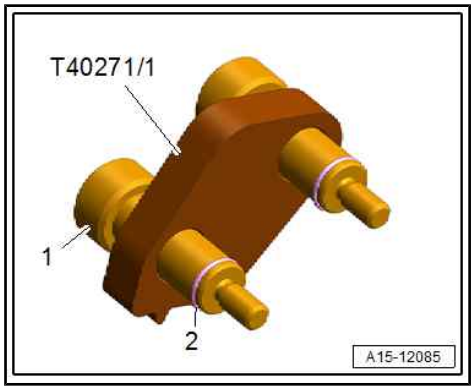
Preparing tool

– Remove retaining ring -2- and take knurled screw -1- out of TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- .

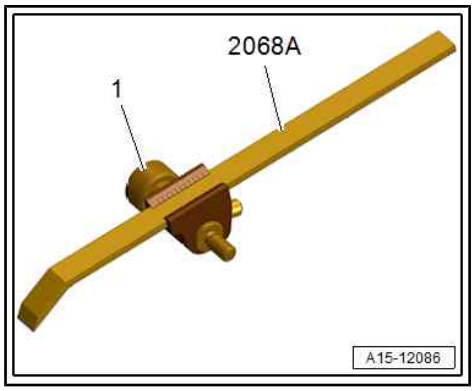


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove circlip -2- and take knurled screw -1- out.

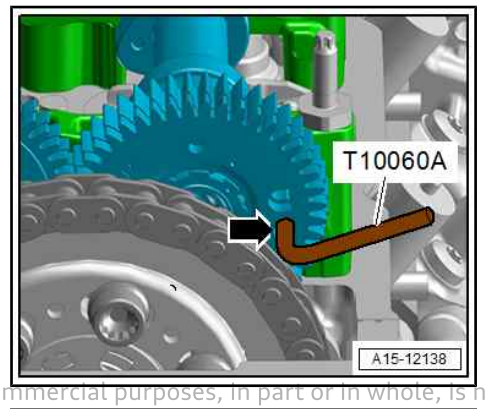


– Slide knurled screw -1- from tool -T40271/1- into TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- , as shown in illustration.



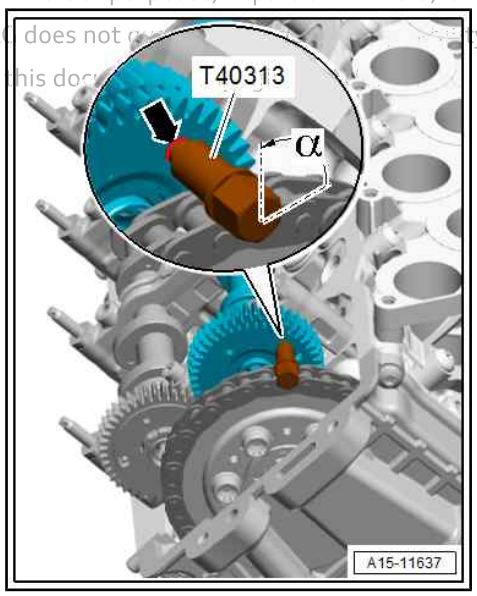
Procedure

- Timing chain removed from camshafts.
- Camshafts for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) installed.
- Inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) locked at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
of the completeness and correctness of the information in this doc

- Backlash compensation assembly of inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) locked in place with adjustment pin - T40313- . The teeth of the two gears of inlet camshaft must align ⇒ page 140 .



– Align flange -3- with eccentric washer -4- of intermediate drive.

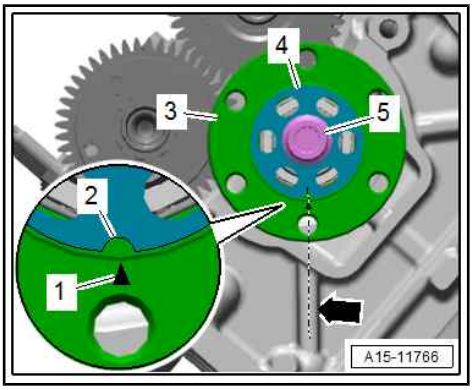
• Marking -1- should align with notch -2-.

– Fit intermediate drive on cylinder head.

• Marking -1- and notch -2- must align with cast projection -arrow- on cylinder head.

– Screw in bolt -5- for intermediate drive by hand until it makes contact.

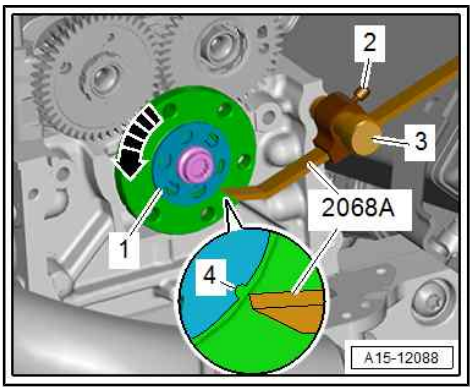
• It should just be possible to turn the eccentric washer of the intermediate drive without axial movement.



– Turn eccentric washer -1- anti-clockwise -arrow- as far as stop.

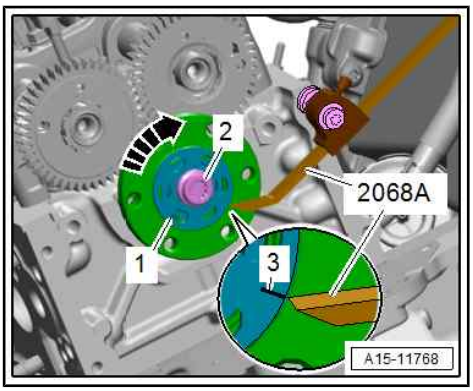
– Secure TDC adjustment bar - 2068 A- to cylinder head using knurled screw -3-, as shown in illustration.

– Align caliper gauge of TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- with marking -4- on eccentric washer, as shown in illustration, then secure with locking bolt -2-.



– Turn eccentric washer -1- clockwise -arrow- until notch -3- is aligned with TDC adjustment bar - 2068A- , as illustrated.

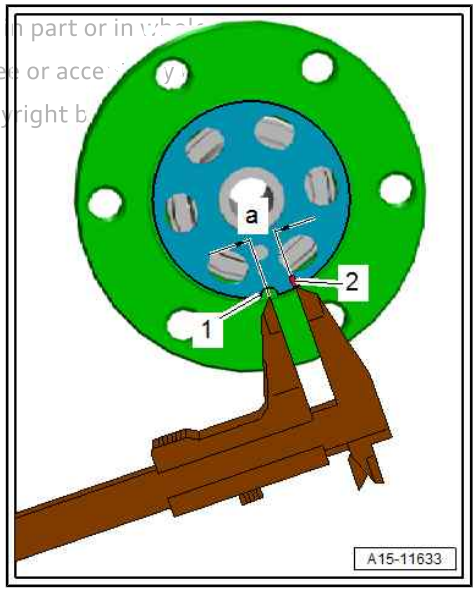
– Tighten bolt -2-, ensuring that eccentric washer remains in setting position.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

On some versions, there is no line marking on the eccentric washer. If this is the case, a mark -2- must be made at a distance -a- = 5.2 mm to the right of the notch -1-.

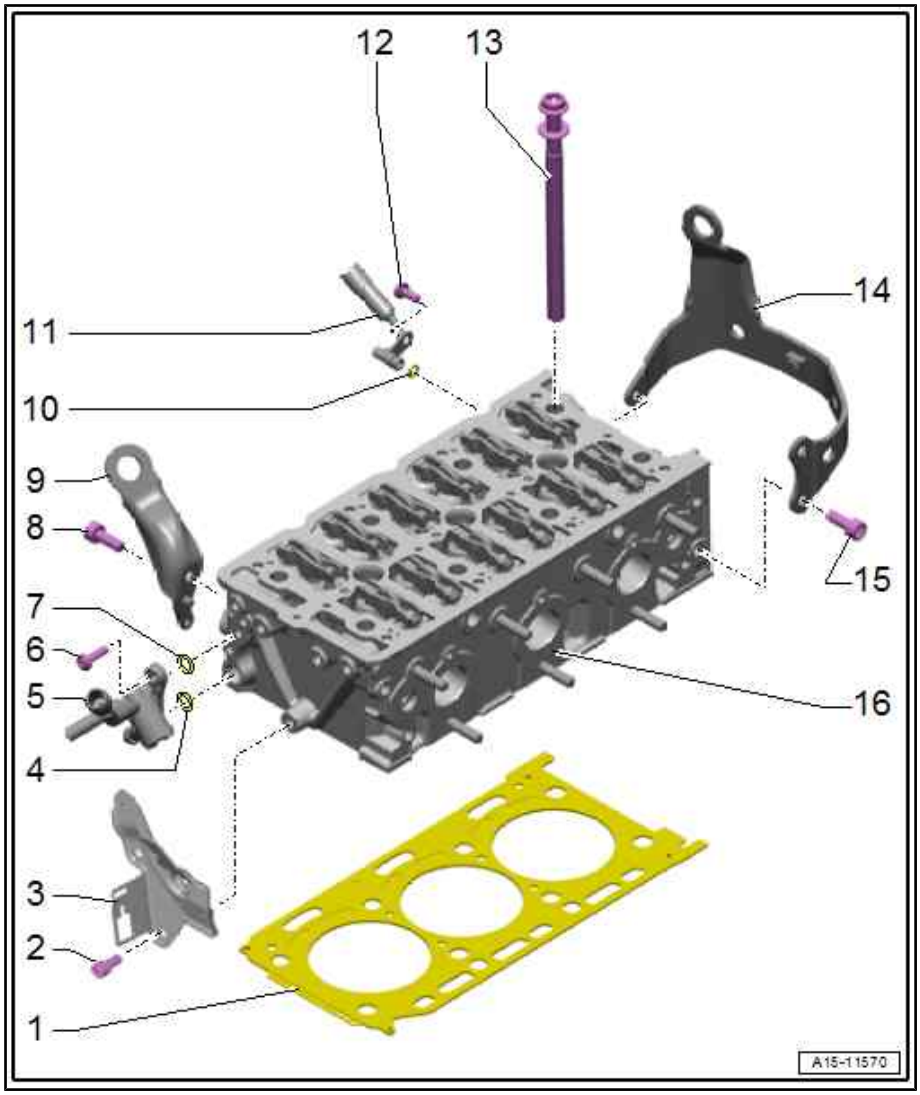


3 Cylinder head

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head”, page 108
⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - cylinder head cover”, page 110
⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head”, page 114
⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover”, page 121
⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing seals for injectors”, page 125
⇒ “3.6 Checking compression”, page 126

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head



1 - Cylinder head gasket
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 114
- ❑ Identification ⇒ page 109
- ❑ Installation position: part number must face cylinder head
- ❑ If renewed, change coolant and engine oil

2 - Bolt
- ❑ For ⇒ Item 3 (page 108)
- ❑ 23 Nm

3 - Bracket
- ❑ Not fitted on all models

4 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Coolant pipe

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 23 Nm

9 - Engine lifting eye

10 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

11 - Coolant pipe

12 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

13 - Bolt
- ❑ Correct sequence when slackening ⇒ page 115
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 109

14 - Engine lifting eye

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm

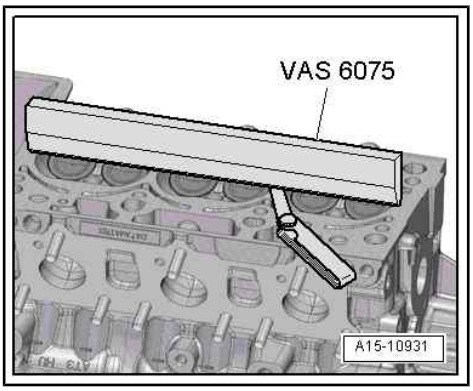
16 - Cylinder head

- ❑ Shown for cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ To prevent damage to glow plugs, always place cylinder head on a soft foam surface after removal.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114
- ❑ Checking for distortion ⇒ page 109
- ❑ Cylinder heads must not be reworked on TDI engines
- ❑ If renewed, change coolant and engine oil

Checking cylinder head for distortion

– Use straight edge 500 mm - VAS 6075- and feeler gauge to measure cylinder head for distortion at several points.

- Max. permissible distortion: 0.1 mm.
- Cylinder heads must not be reworked on TDI engines.



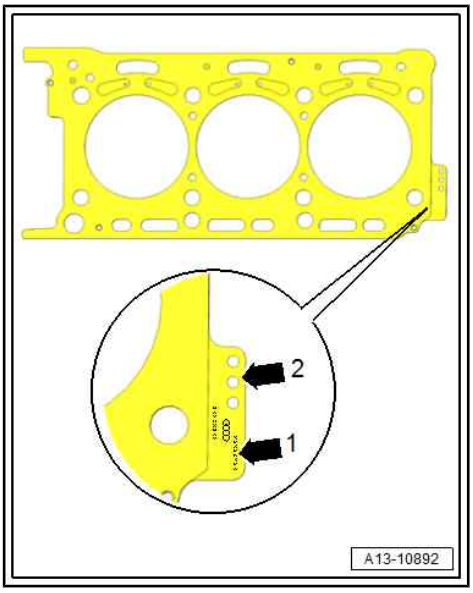
Identification of cylinder head gasket

1 - Part number

2 - Holes

Note

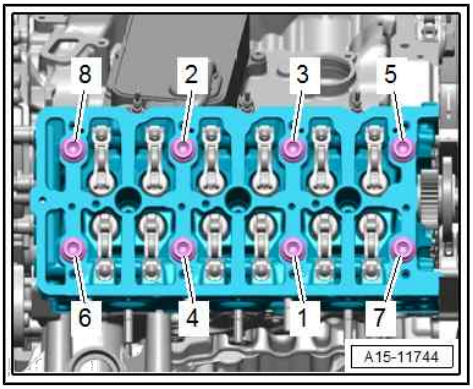
- *Cylinder head gaskets of different thicknesses are fitted depending on the amount of piston projection ⇒ page 61 . If renewing the cylinder head gasket only, the new gasket should have the same identification as the old one.*
- *The gaskets for the left and right cylinder heads have different shapes and cannot be interchanged.*



Cylinder head - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 8-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 8-	35 Nm
3.	-1 … 8-	50 Nm
4.	-1 … 8-	Turn 90° further
5.	-1 … 8-	Turn 90° further
6.	-1 … 8-	Turn 90° further



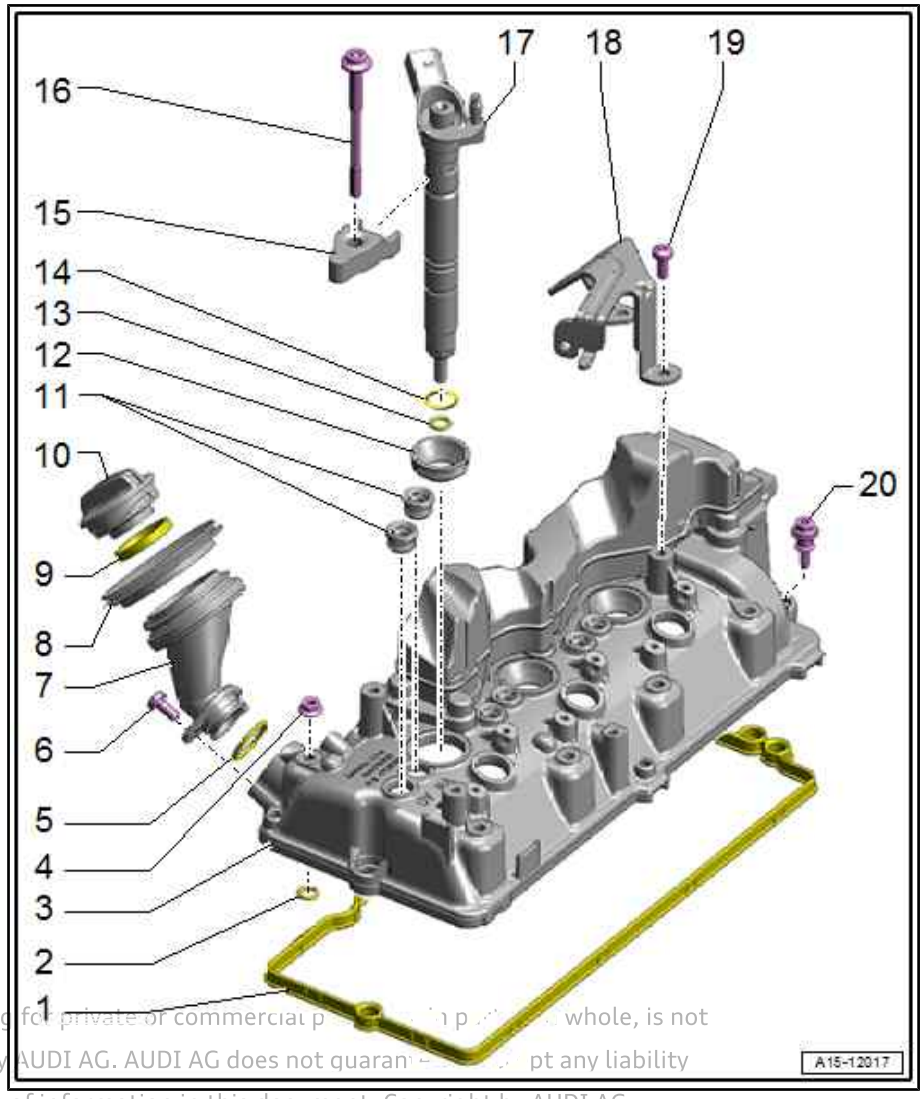
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - cylinder head cover

⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - aluminium cylinder head cover”, page 110

⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - plastic cylinder head cover”, page 112

3.2.1 Exploded view - aluminium cylinder head cover



1 - Gasket

- ❑ For cylinder head cover
- ❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

2 - O-ring

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Renew after removing

3 - Cylinder head cover

- ❑ Shown for cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover”, page 121

4 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence:

- ◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 111
- ◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 111

5 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Oil filler neck

8 - Grommet

9 - Seal

- ❑ For filler cap
- ❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

10 - Filler cap

11 - Grommets

- ❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

12 - Seal

- ❑ For injector
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 125

13 - Copper seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p... whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran... pt any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

15 - Clamping piece

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing injectors”, page 255

16 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 3 (page 239)

17 - Injector

- ❑ Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

18 - Bracket

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 7.5 Nm

20 - Bolt

- ❑ With seal
- ❑ Renew if damaged or leaking
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence:

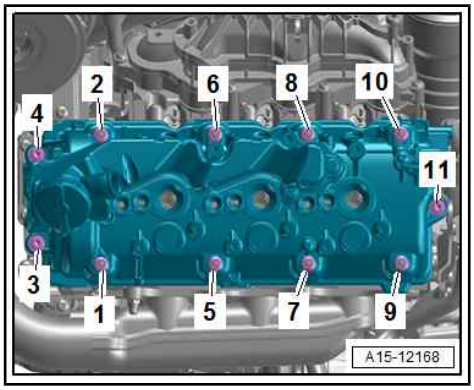
◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 111

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 111

Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolted connections in stages in the sequence shown:

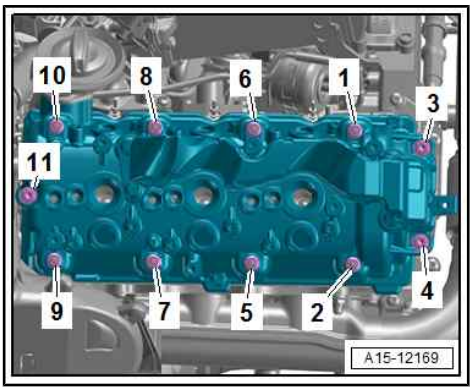
Stage	Bolts, nuts, ball studs	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 11-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 11-	9 Nm



Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolted connections in stages in the sequence shown:

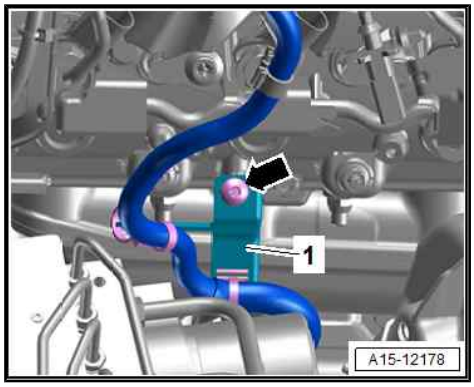
Stage	Bolts, nuts, ball studs	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 11-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 11-	9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Bracket for SCR supply line - tightening torque

– Tighten bolt -arrow- to 9 Nm.



3.2.2 Exploded view - plastic cylinder head cover

1 - Gasket

- ❑ For cylinder head cover
- ❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

2 - O-ring

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Renew after removing

3 - Cylinder head cover

- ❑ Shown for cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover”, page 121

4 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence:

- ♦ ⇒ Fig. ““Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence””, page 113
- ♦ ⇒ Fig. ““Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence””, page 114

5 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Bolt

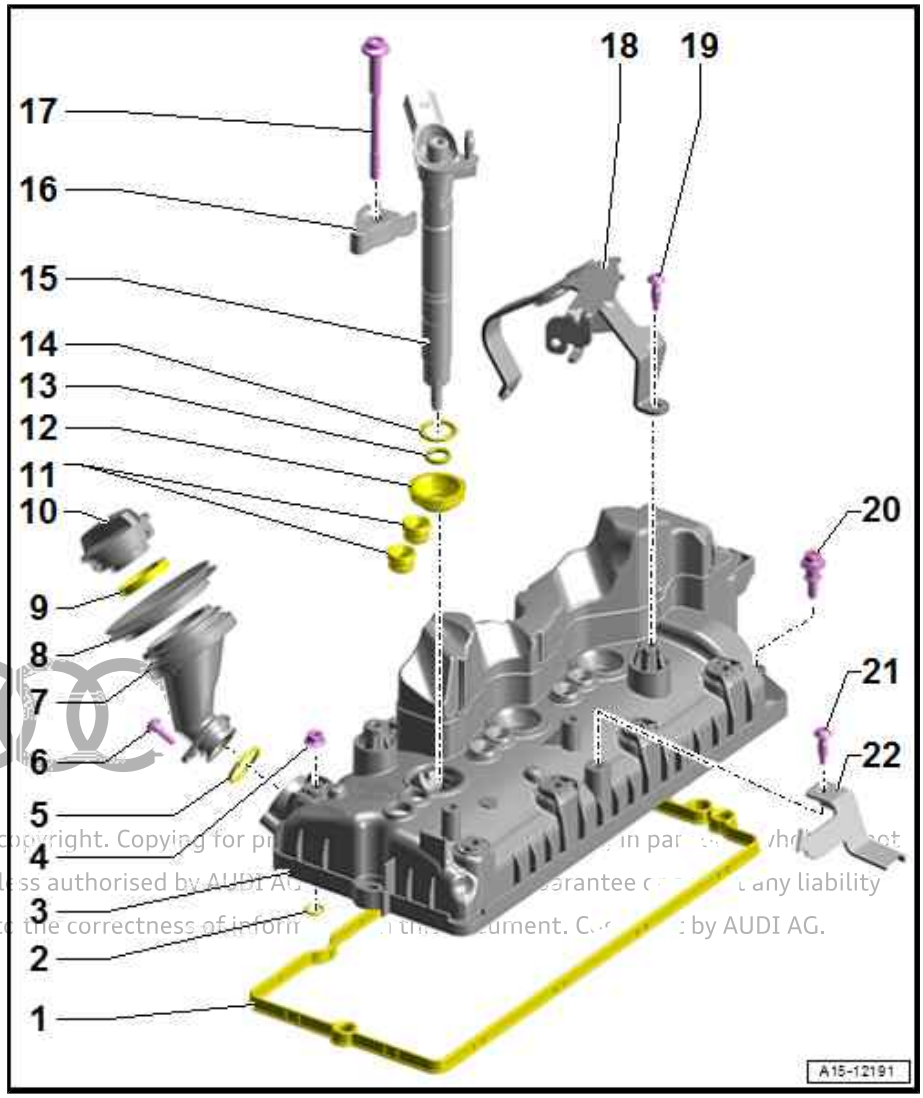
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Oil filler neck

8 - Grommet

9 - Seal

- ❑ For filler cap



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr... in par... wh... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG... guarantee o... any liability with respect to the correctness of inform... this ...ument. C... by AUDI AG.

❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

10 - Filler cap

11 - Grommets

❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

12 - Seal

❑ For injector

❑ Renewing ⇒ page 125

13 - Copper seal

❑ Renew after removing

14 - O-ring

❑ Renew after removing

15 - Injector

❑ Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255

16 - Clamping piece

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing injectors”, page 255

17 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 3 (page 239)

18 - Bracket

19 - Bolt

❑ Thread-forming

❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque

❑ 6 Nm

20 - Bolt

❑ With seal

❑ Renew if damaged or leaking

❑ Tightening torque and sequence:

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 113

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 114

21 - Bolt

❑ 6 Nm

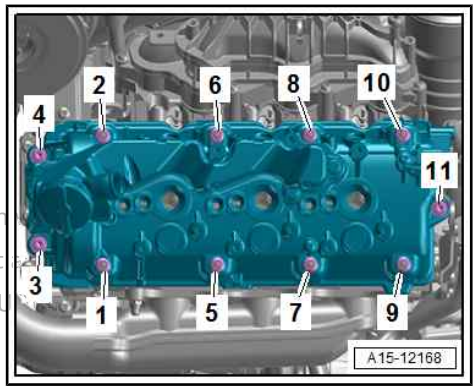
22 - Bracket

❑ For SCR supply line

Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolted connections in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts, nuts, ball studs	Tightening torque
1	-1 .. 11-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2	-1 .. 11-	8 Nm

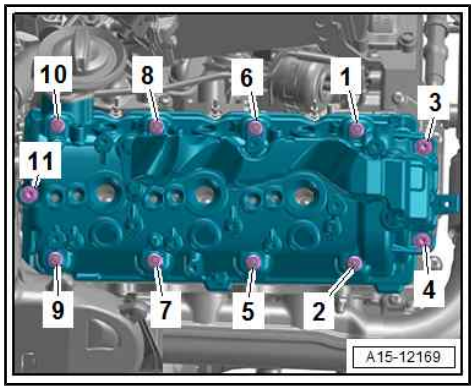


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolted connections in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts, nuts, ball studs	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 11-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 11-	8 Nm



3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head

⇒ “3.3.1 Removing cylinder head - bank 1 (right-side)”, page 114

⇒ “3.3.2 Removing cylinder head - bank 2 (left-side)”, page 116

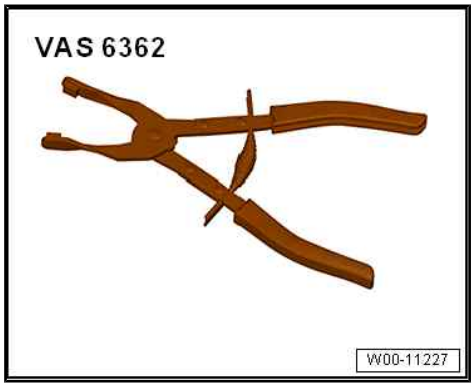
⇒ “3.3.3 Installing cylinder head”, page 118

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.1 Removing cylinder head - bank 1 (right-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Procedure

– Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .

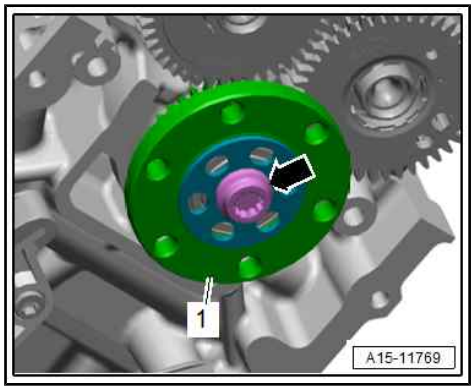
– Remove camshaft timing chain from camshaft timing chain sprockets
⇒ “2.5 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts”, page 81 .

– Remove camshafts (right-side)
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

Note

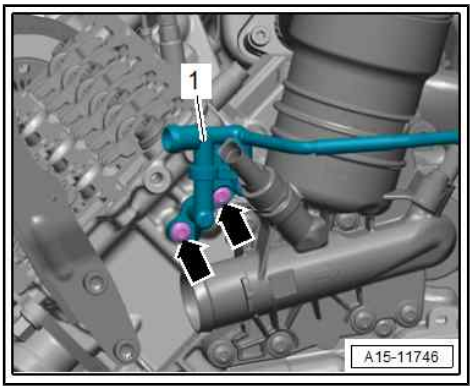
♦ *If bolt -arrow- has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted ⇒ page 101 .*

♦ *Only loosen bolt when renewing cylinder head and fitting intermediate drive on new cylinder head.*

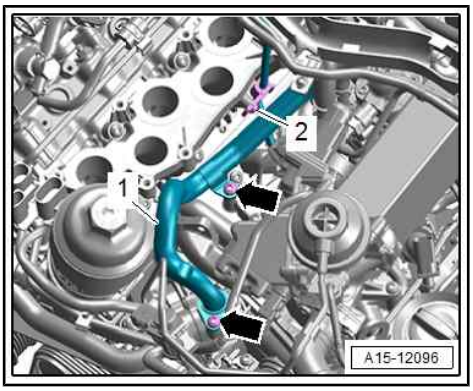


– Unbolt coolant pipe (front) and disconnect from thermostat housing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

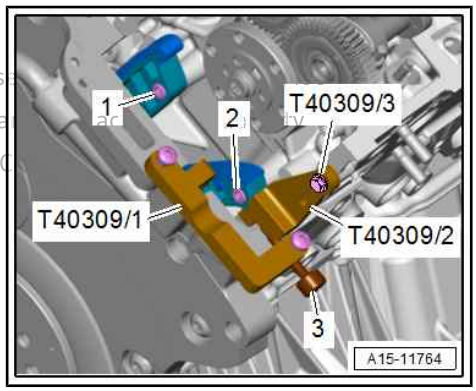
– Remove bolts -arrows- and move coolant connection -1- to one side.



– Remove bolts -arrows- and move coolant pipe (top right) -1- to side.
– Remove bolt -2- from retaining clamp for high-pressure pipe.



– Remove guide pin -1-.
– Secure clamp -T40309/2- to cylinder head with fitted bolt -T40309/3- , as shown in illustration.
– Support tensioning rail by tightening knurled screw -3- of bracket -T40309/1- until clamp -T40309/2- makes contact with tensioning rail.
– Loosen guide pin -2- and unscrew it by hand.



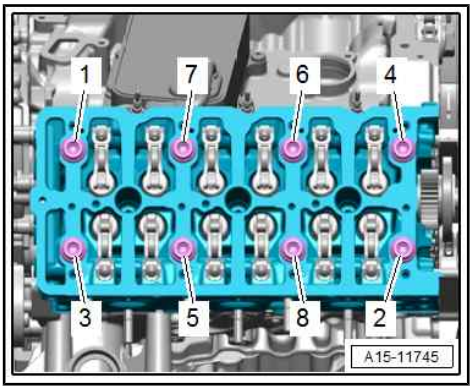
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
Translation from German - Only the German text is authentic.

Note

To avoid damaging the thread in the cylinder head, it must be possible to unscrew the guide bolt for the tensioning rail easily. If necessary, tighten knurled screw -3- further slightly.

– Loosen knurled screw -3-, unscrew fitted bolt -T40309/3- and detach clamp -T40309/2- .

– Slacken cylinder head bolts in the sequence -1 ... 8-.
– Remove bolts and carefully take off cylinder head.



Caution

Risk of damage to glow plugs when putting down cylinder head.

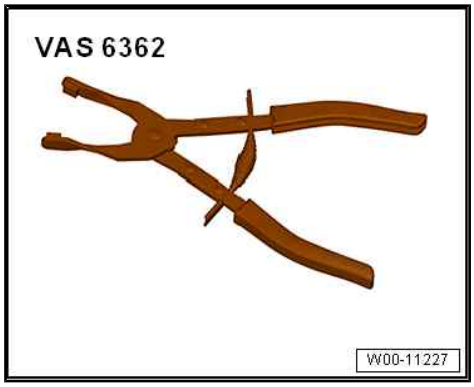
- ***After removal, the cylinder head must not be put down on the gasket side with the glow plugs still installed, because the glow plugs project slightly beyond the gasket surface.***

– Seal off all open passages in the intake and exhaust system with clean cloths or plugs (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

3.3.2 Removing cylinder head - bank 2 (left-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Procedure

– Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .

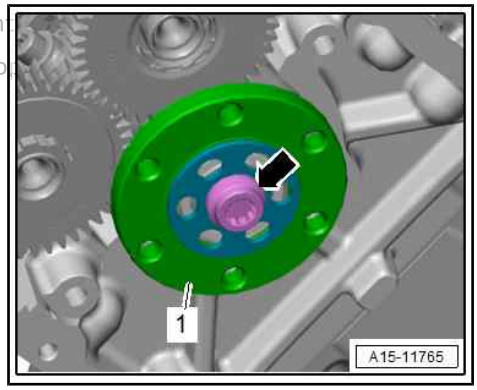
– Remove camshaft timing chain from camshaft timing chain sprockets
⇒ “2.5 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts”, page 81 .

– Remove camshafts (left-side)
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

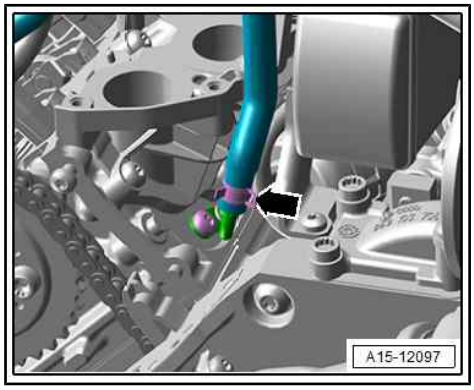
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

Note

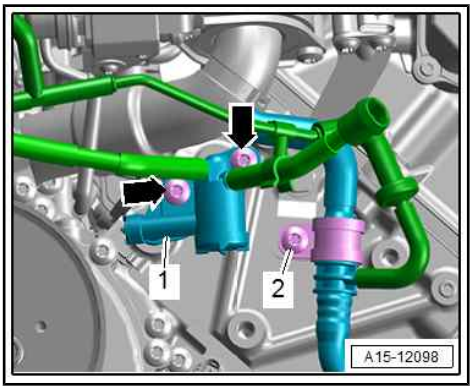
- *If bolt -arrow- has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted ⇒ page 105 .*
- *Only loosen bolt when renewing cylinder head and fitting intermediate drive on new cylinder head.*



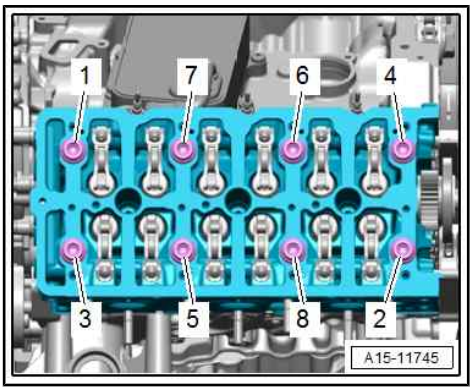
– Release hose clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose for injector for reducing agent - N474- .



– Remove bolts -arrows- and move coolant connection -1- to one side.
– If fitted, remove bolt -2- at retaining clamp for vacuum line.



– Slacken cylinder head bolts in the sequence -1 ... 8-.
– Remove bolts and carefully take off cylinder head; pay attention to vacuum hoses and electrical wiring.



Caution

Risk of damage to glow plugs when putting down cylinder head.

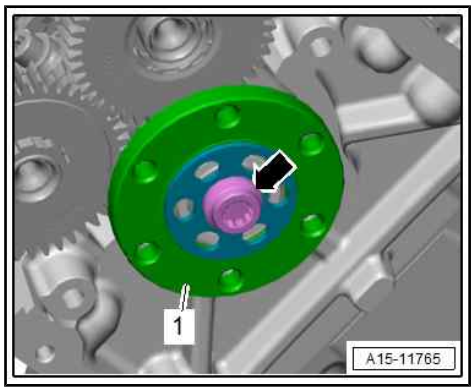
- ***After removal, the cylinder head must not be put down on the gasket side with the glow plugs still installed, because the glow plugs project slightly beyond the gasket surface.***

– Seal off all open passages in the intake and exhaust system with clean cloths or plugs (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.3 Installing cylinder head

Procedure



Note

- *If bolt -arrow- has been loosened, backlash must be re-adjusted ⇒ page 105 .*
- *Only loosen bolt when renewing cylinder head and fitting intermediate drive on new cylinder head.*
- *Illustration shows the intermediate drive for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) as an example.*

Caution

Risk of damage to sealing surfaces.

- ***Carefully remove sealant residue from cylinder head and cylinder block.***
- ***Ensure that no long scores or scratches are made on the surfaces.***

Risk of damage to cylinder block.

- ***No oil or coolant must be allowed to remain in the blind holes for the cylinder head bolts in the cylinder block.***

Risk of leaks at cylinder head gasket.

- ***Carefully remove any remaining emery and abrasive material.***
- ***Do not remove new cylinder head gasket from packaging until it is ready to be fitted.***
- ***Handle the cylinder head gasket very carefully to prevent damage to the silicone coating or the indented area of the gasket.***

Risk of damage to open valves.

- ***When installing an exchange cylinder head, the plastic protectors fitted to protect the open valves should not be removed until the cylinder head is ready to be fitted.***

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on valve gear.

- ***Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is operated.***

Copyright AUDI AG. Any use for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

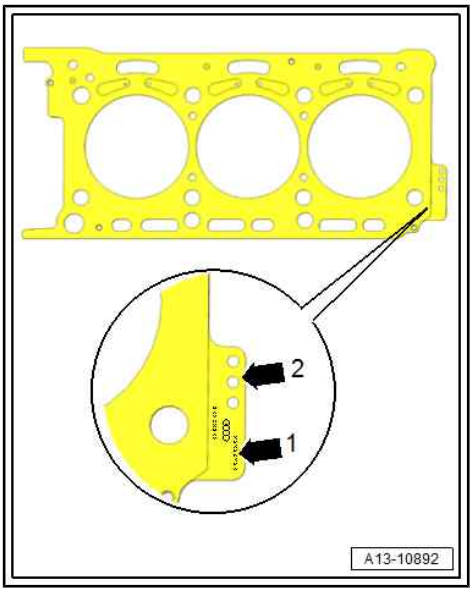
Note

- *After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.*
- *Renew self-locking nuts, as well as seals, gaskets and O-rings after removing.*
- *Cylinder heads must not be reworked on TDI engines.*
- *When installing an exchange cylinder head, the contact surfaces between roller rocker fingers and cams must be oiled before installing the cylinder head cover.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *After fitting a new cylinder head or cylinder head gasket, change engine oil and coolant in entire cooling system.*

– Note cylinder head gasket identification:

1 - Part number

2 - Holes



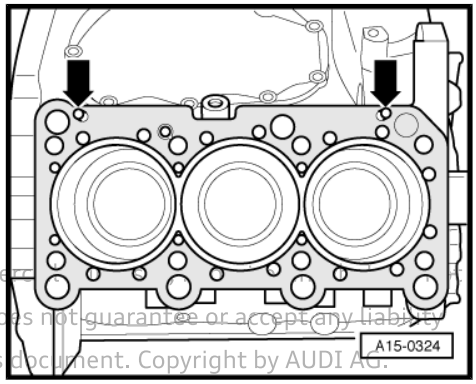
Note

- *If the cylinder head gasket or cylinder head have been renewed, select the new cylinder head gasket according to the number of holes on the old gasket.*
- *If parts of the crankshaft drive have been renewed, select the new cylinder head gasket by measuring the piston projection at "TDC" ⇒ page 61 .*
- *The gaskets for the left and right cylinder heads have different shapes and cannot be interchanged.*

– Place cylinder head gasket in position.

• Pay attention to dowel sleeves -arrows- in cylinder block.

• Installation position of cylinder head gasket: the word "oben" (top) or the part number should face towards the cylinder head.



– Fit cylinder head.

– Tighten cylinder head bolts ⇒ page 109 .

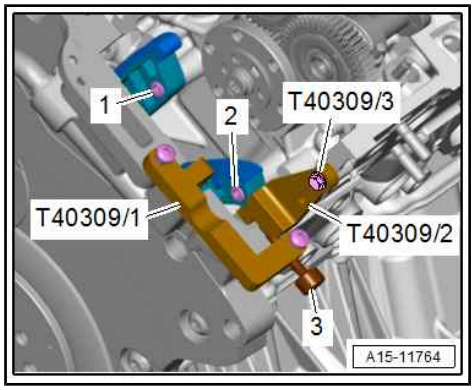
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Cylinder head bolts do not have to be torqued down again later after repair work.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

Cylinder head, bank 1 (right-side):



– Screw in and tighten guide pin -1- for guide rail by hand.
– Secure clamp -T40309/2- to cylinder head with fitted bolt -T40309/3- , as shown in illustration.
– Align tensioning rail with threaded hole for guide pin in cylinder head; to do so, screw in knurled screw -3- of bracket T40309/1 until clamp -T40309/2- adjusts tensioning rail into installation position.
– Screw in and tighten guide pin -2- by hand.

Note

To avoid damaging the thread in the cylinder head, it must be possible to screw in the guide bolt for the tensioning rail easily. If necessary, tighten or loosen fitted bolt -T40309/3- further slightly.

– Loosen knurled screw -3-, unscrew fitted bolt -T40309/3- and detach clamp -T40309/2- .
– Install coolant pipe (front and top right) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

Both sides (continued):

– Install camshafts
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

Note

If the cylinder head was renewed, you must install the intermediate drive and re-adjust the backlash ⇒ page 101 .

– Install camshaft timing chain ⇒ page 81 .
– Install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .
– Change coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Cylinder head; Removing and installing cylinder head .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head”, page 108
- ⇒ Fig. ““Cylinder head - tightening torque and sequence”“, page 109

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover

⇒ “3.4.1 Removing cylinder head cover - bank 1 (right-side)”, page 121

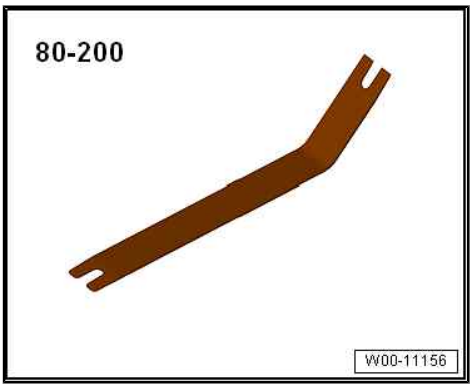
⇒ “3.4.2 Removing cylinder head cover - bank 2 (left-side)”, page 122

⇒ “3.4.3 Installing cylinder head cover”, page 124

3.4.1 Removing cylinder head cover - bank 1 (right-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

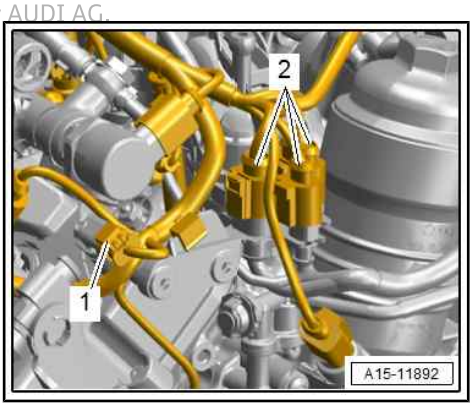


Removing

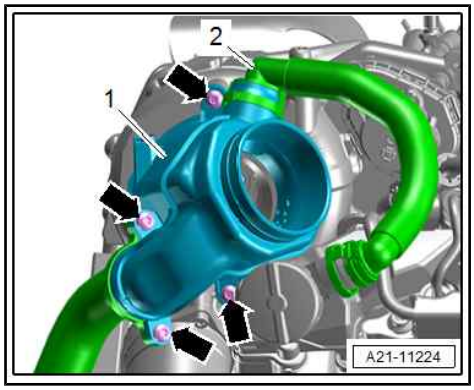
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Cylinder head; Removing and installing cylinder head cover .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

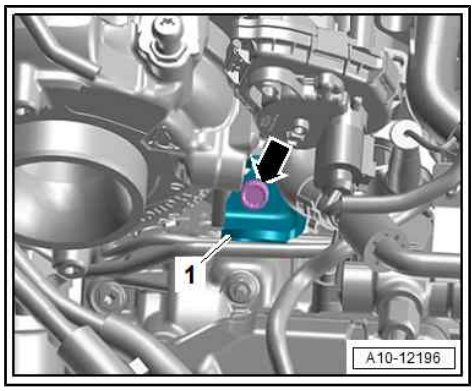
– Remove high-pressure reservoir (rail) ⇒ page 267 .
– Remove injectors ⇒ page 255 .
– Unplug electrical connector for Hall sender - G40- -item 1-.
– Detach electrical connectors -2- from bracket and move electrical wiring harness clear at cylinder head cover using removal lever - 80-200- .



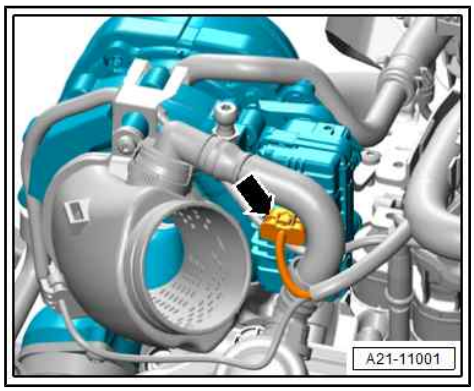
– Press release tabs on both sides and disconnect crankcase breather hose -2-.
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach resonator -1-.



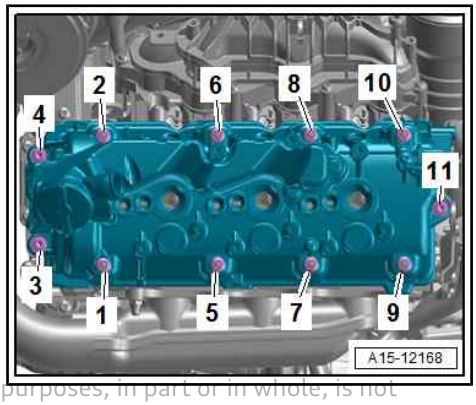
– If necessary, remove bolt -arrow- and detach engine lifting eye -1-.



– If necessary, unplug electrical connector -arrow-.
– If fitted, detach noise insulation.
– Use a vacuum cleaner to remove any residue left by the noise insulation.



– Loosen bolts in the sequence -11 … 1-; to do so, counterhold at centre hex studs for camshaft bearing caps. (Illustration shows aluminium cylinder head cover.)
– Remove cylinder head cover; pay attention to electrical wiring and noise insulation for electric compressor if necessary.



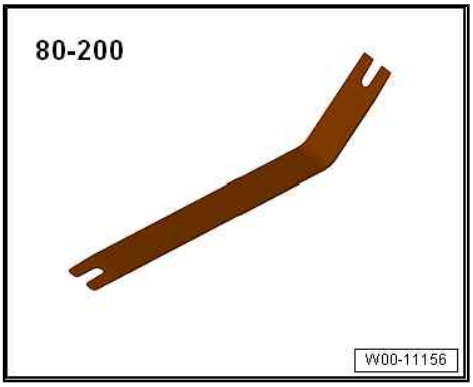
Installing ⇒ “3.4.3 Installing cylinder head cover”, page 124

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4.2 Removing cylinder head cover - bank 2 (left-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

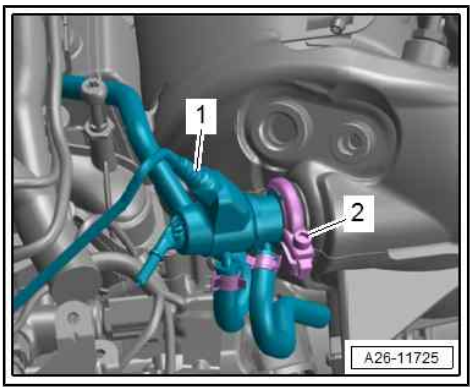
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



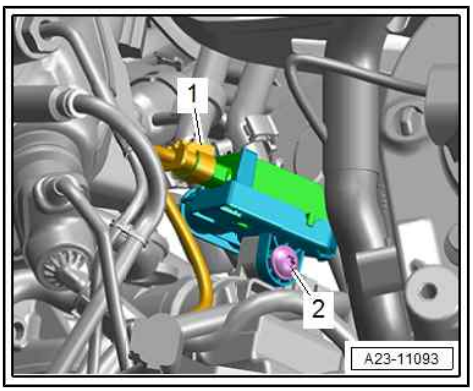
Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Cylinder head; Removing and installing cylinder head cover .

– Remove high-pressure reservoir (rail) ⇒ page 267 .
– Remove injectors ⇒ page 255 .
– Remove intake manifold flap motor - V157- ⇒ page 234 .
– Unscrew bolt -2- and release screw-type clip.
– Detach injector for reducing agent - N474- -item 1- and place to one side.
– Unplug electrical connectors on glow plugs for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).

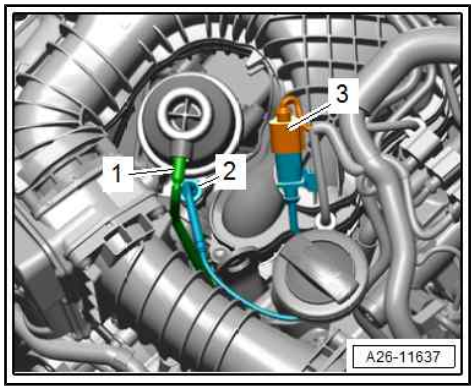


– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -2- and move pressure differential sender 2 - G524- clear.



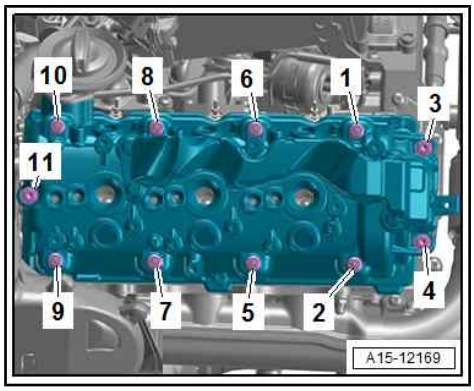
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach electrical connector -3- for exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98- -item 2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wiring clear.
– Move electrical wiring and SCR supply line clear.
– Detach noise insulation.
– Use a vacuum cleaner to remove any residue left by the noise insulation.



– Loosen bolts in the sequence -11 … 1-; counterhold at centre hex studs for camshaft bearing caps (shown on aluminium cylinder head cover).
– Remove cylinder head cover; pay attention to electrical wiring and noise insulation for electric compressor if necessary.

Installing ⇒ "3.4.3 Installing cylinder head cover", page 124



3.4.3 Installing cylinder head cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

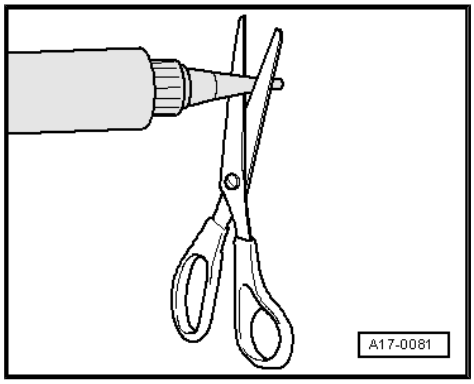
♦ *Renew O-rings after removing.*
♦ *Renew gasket for cylinder head cover if damaged.*

– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

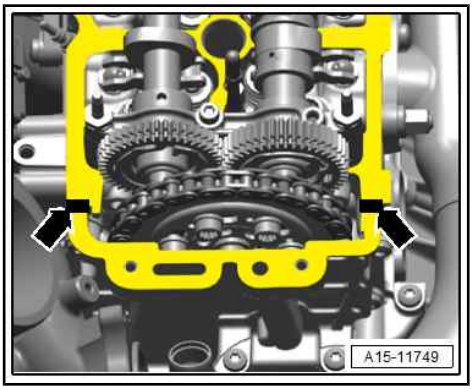
Note

Note expiry date of sealant.

– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 2 mm).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Apply sealant bead -arrows- at each joint between cylinder head and timing chain cover (top left).

• Width of sealant beads: approx. 2 mm.

– Tighten bolts and nuts for cylinder head cover.

– If previously removed, install intake manifold flap motor -V157- ⇒ page 234 .

– Install injectors ⇒ page 255 .

– Install high-pressure reservoir (rail) ⇒ page 267 .

– Check fuel system for leaks ⇒ page 218 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Cylinder head; Removing and installing cylinder head cover .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 111
- ⇒ Fig. ""Aluminium cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 111
- ⇒ Fig. ""Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 113
- ⇒ Fig. ""Plastic cylinder head cover, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 114
- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 108
- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger", page 202
- Body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view - suspension strut, upper links

3.5 Removing and installing seals for injectors

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

- Carrier - 3390-

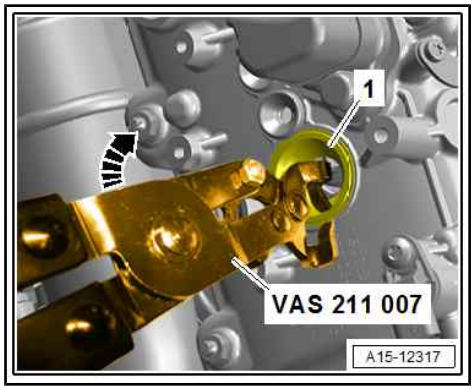


- Pliers -VAS 211 007- (not illustrated)

Procedure

• Injector removed ⇒ page 255 .

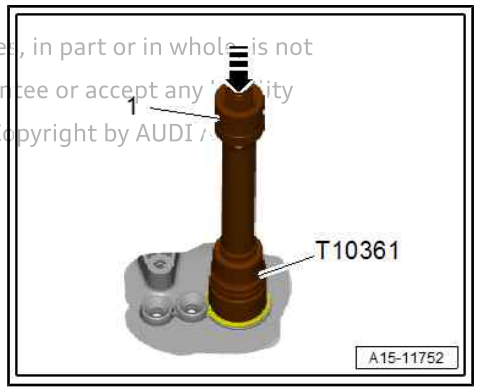
– Pull off seal -1- using pliers -VAS 211 007- -arrow-.



– Drive in new injector seal as far as stop using socket, AF 24 - T10361- and short extension -1-.

– Install injector ⇒ page 255 .

Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.6 Checking compression

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Compression tester - V.A.G 1763- with adapter - V.A.G 1763/8-



Procedure

- Engine oil temperature approx. 30° C
- Battery voltage at least 12.5 V

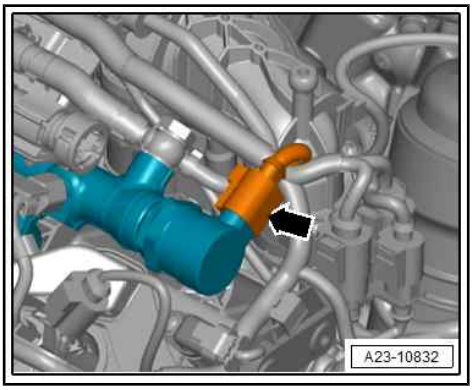
Caution

Incorrect handling of ceramic glow plugs can cause engine damage.

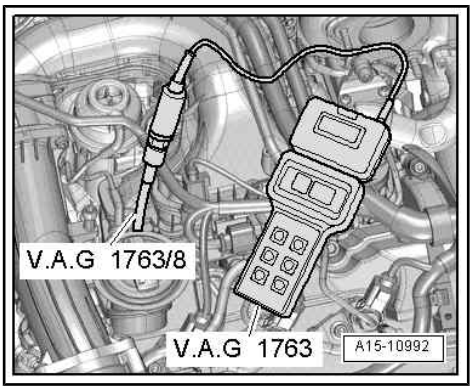
- *Observe safety precautions ⇒ page 5 .*

– Remove all glow plugs ⇒ page 322 .

– Unplug electrical connector -arrow- at fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- on high-pressure reservoir (rail) (cylinder bank 1, right-side).
– Briefly start engine to relieve fuel pressure in high-pressure reservoir (rail).



– Screw in adapter - V.A.G 1763/8- in place of corresponding glow plug and connect compression tester - V.A.G 1763- . (Using the compression tester ⇒ Operating instructions .)
– Have a second mechanic operate starter until tester shows no further pressure increase.
– Repeat procedure on each cylinder.



Compression pressure	bar
When new	28 … 33
Wear limit	21
Maximum difference between cylinders	5

Assembling

Assembly is performed in reverse sequence; note the following:

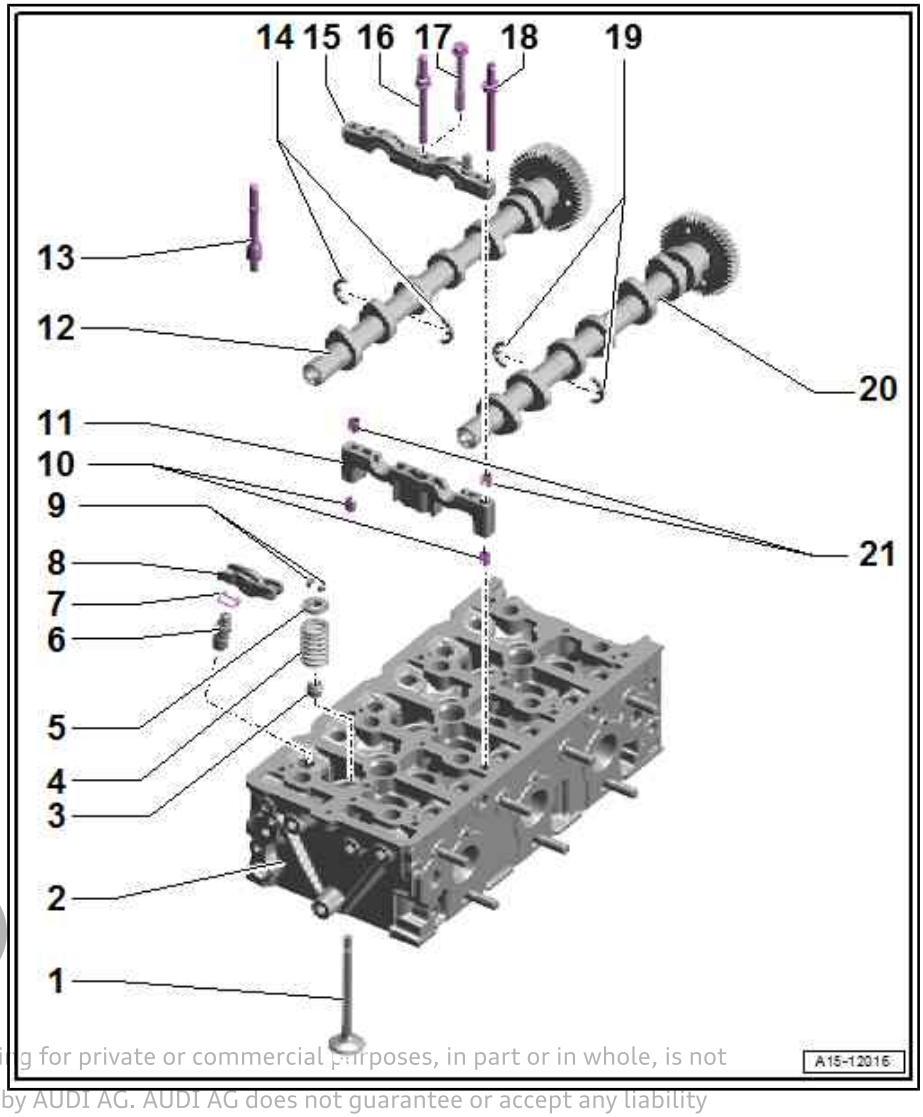
– Install glow plugs ⇒ page 322 .
– Erase any entries in engine control unit event memory resulting from work performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Valve gear

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - valve gear”, page 128
⇒ “4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft”, page 134
⇒ “4.3 Measuring radial clearance of camshaft”, page 135
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136
⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals”, page 149

4.1 Exploded view - valve gear



1 - Valve

- ❑ Do not machine, only grinding-in is permitted
- ❑ Mark installation position for re-installation
- ❑ Checking ⇒ page 158
- ❑ Valve dimensions ⇒ page 158
- ❑ Checking valve guides ⇒ page 157

2 - Cylinder head

- ❑ Shown for cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ Checking valve guides ⇒ page 157
- ❑ Machining valve seats ⇒ page 157

3 - Valve stem oil seal

- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 149

4 - Valve spring

5 - Valve spring plate

6 - Hydraulic compensation element

- ❑ Clipped into roller rocker finger -item 9-
- ❑ Mark installation position for re-installation
- ❑ Lubricate contact surfaces before installing

7 - Securing clip

- ❑ Not supplied separately
- ❑ Check for firm attachment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Roller rocker finger

- ❑ Mark installation position for re-installation
- ❑ Check roller bearings for ease of movement
- ❑ Lubricate contact surfaces before installing
- ❑ Assembly: attach to hydraulic compensation element -item 7- using securing clip -item 8-
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 133

9 - Valve cotters

10 - Dowel sleeves

- ❑ Only for bearing cap (gearbox end) with camshaft thrust bearing

11 - Bearing pedestal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136
- ❑ Note installation position

12 - Inlet camshaft

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 136
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 145
- ❑ Measuring axial clearance ⇒ page 134
- ❑ Measuring radial clearance ⇒ page 135
- ❑ Runout: max. 0.01 mm

13 - Support bracket

- ❑ For clamping piece
- ❑ Only for cylinder bank 1 (right-side)
- ❑ Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 239)

14 - Thrust bearing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Bearing cap

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136
- ❑ Note installation position

16 - Bolt

- ❑ With shoulder for clamping piece
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 132

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 132

18 - Centre hex stud

- ❑ With shoulder for clamping piece
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 132

19 - Thrust bearing

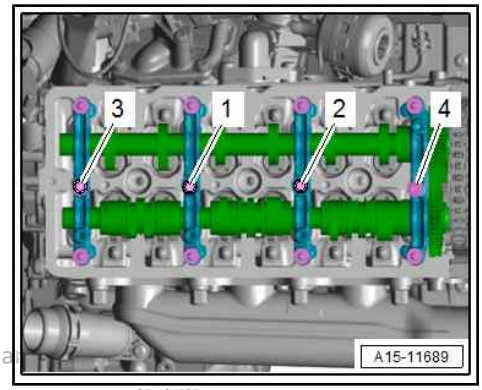
20 - Exhaust camshaft

- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ “4.4.2 Renewing camshaft”, page 145
- ❑ Measuring axial clearance ⇒ page 134
- ❑ Measuring radial clearance ⇒ page 135
- ❑ Runout: max. 0.01 mm

21 - Dowel sleeves

- ❑ Only for bearing pedestal (gearbox end) with camshaft thrust bearing

A - camshaft bearing - tightening torque and sequence, method 1



These instructions apply to:

- Timing chain detached from camshaft chain sprocket
- Intermediate drive removed

Note

Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease.

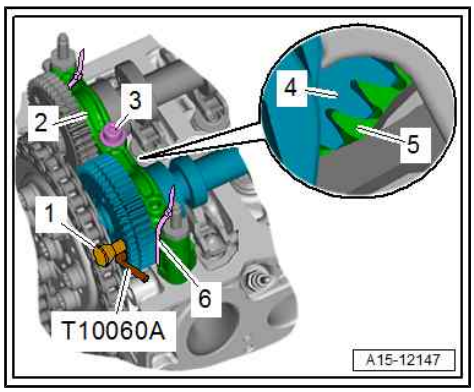
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage 1

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	Screw in by hand until bolt heads make contact with bearing caps

– Only if intermediate drive is installed: Check that splines of camshaft -4- and intermediate drive -5- mesh. If necessary, push down mounting bracket -2- with your hand and screw in bolt -3- by hand until it makes contact.



WARNING

The components of the backlash compensation assembly are under spring tension. This can cause injury.

- *Do NOT remove locking pin - T10060A- .*
- *Do NOT remove assembly aid -1- (only for new camshafts).*
- *Do NOT remove adjustment pin - T40313- (for re-installing used camshafts).*

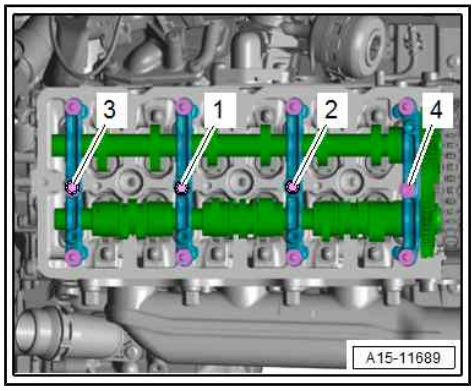
Caution

Risk of excess strain when tightening camshaft bearings.

- *Do NOT remove cable ties -6-.*

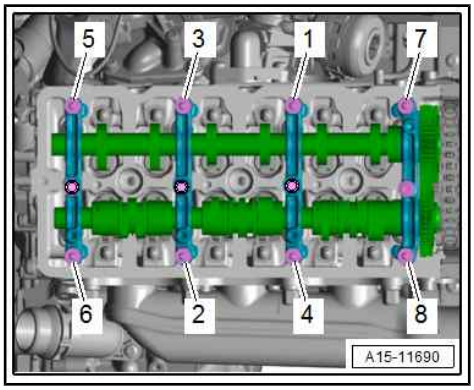
Stage 2

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	Continue tightening 1 turn at a time in several stages until all bearing caps make full contact with cylinder head and a torque of 3 Nm is reached
-1 … 4-	3 Nm



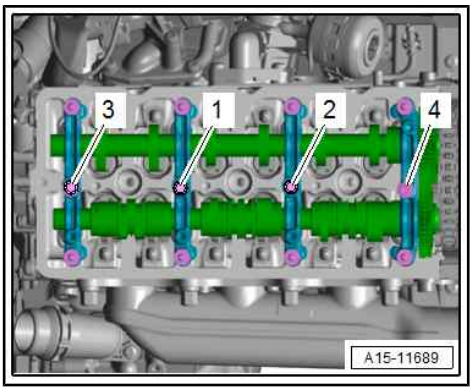
Stage 3

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 8-	3 Nm



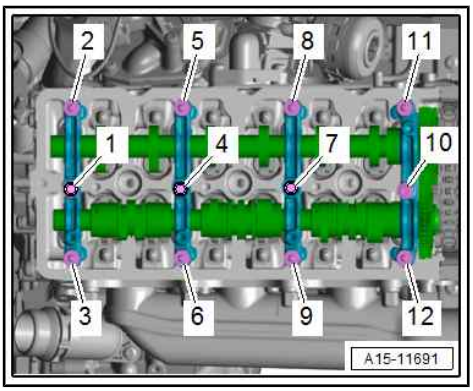
Stage 4

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	3 Nm (this step is performed to allow for settling of components)



Stage 5

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 12-	3 Nm
-1 … 12-	Turn 45° further



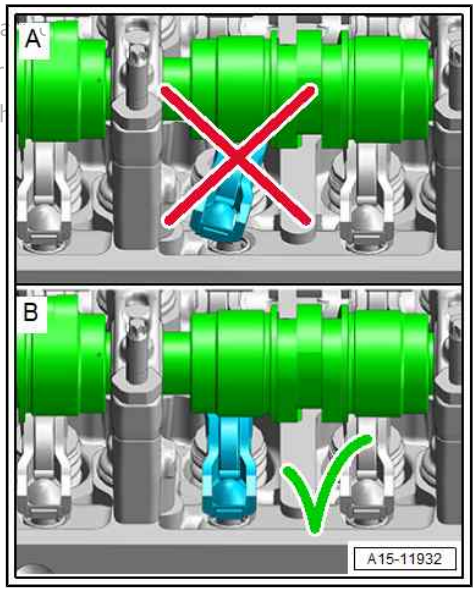
Roller rocker fingers - installation position

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
pe ed unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

Caution

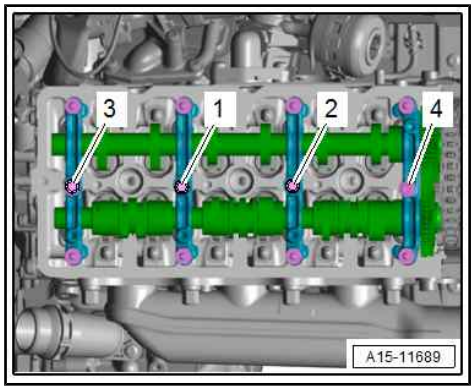
Risk of engine damage if roller rocker fingers are installed incorrectly.

- ***Check that roller rocker fingers are installed in the correct position.***



– Remove cable ties.

B - camshaft bearing - tightening torque and sequence, method 2



These instructions apply to:

- Timing chain drive fully installed

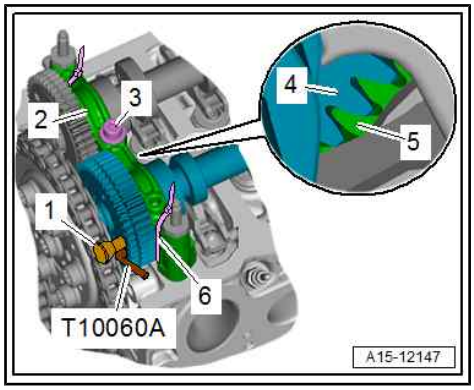
Note

Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage 1

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	Screw in by hand until bolt heads make contact with bearing caps



– Check that splines of camshaft -4- and intermediate drive -5- mesh. If necessary, push down mounting bracket -2- with your hand and screw in bolt -3- by hand until it makes contact.
– Remove locking pin - T10060A- .
– If a new camshaft is being installed, detach assembly aid -1-.
– If a used camshaft is being re-installed, remove adjustment pin - T40313- .

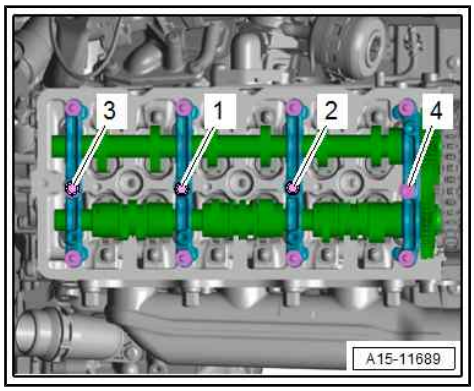
Caution

Risk of excess strain when tightening camshaft bearings.

- ***Do NOT remove cable ties -6-.***

Stage 2

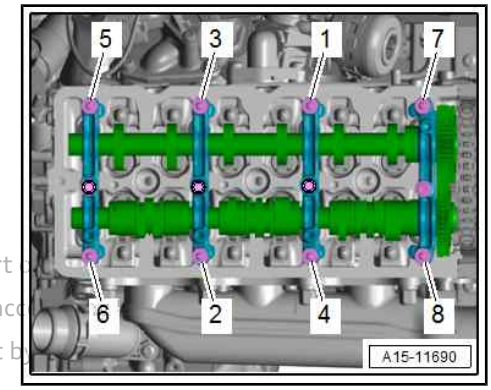
Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	Continue tightening 1 turn at a time in several stages until all bearing caps make full contact with cylinder head and a torque of 3 Nm is reached
-1 … 4-	3 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Stage 3

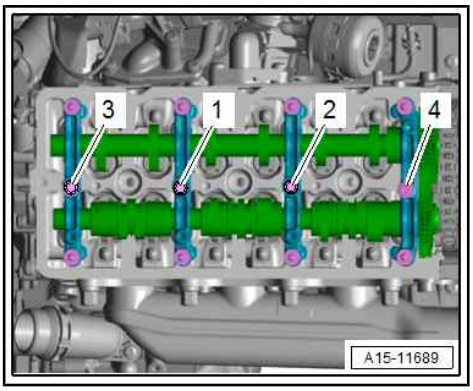
Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 8-	3 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

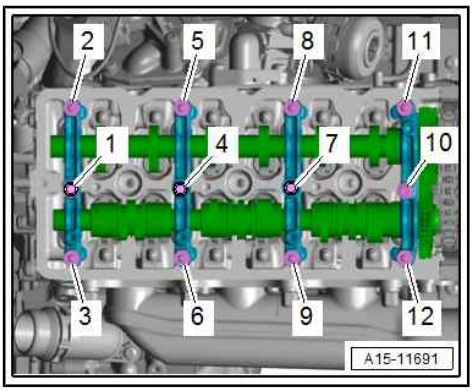
Stage 4

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 4-	3 Nm (this step is performed to allow for settling of components)



Stage 5

Bolts	Tightening torque
-1 … 12-	3 Nm
-1 … 12-	Turn 45° further



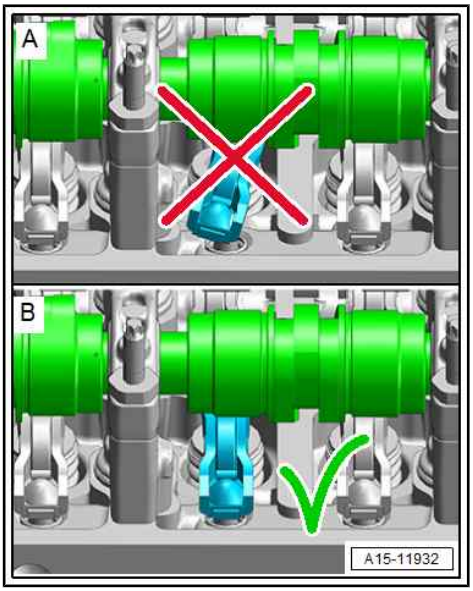
Roller rocker fingers - installation position

Caution

Risk of engine damage if roller rocker fingers are installed incorrectly.

- ***Check that roller rocker fingers are installed in the correct position.***

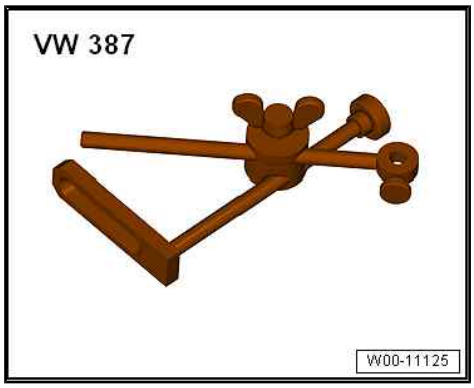
– Remove cable ties.



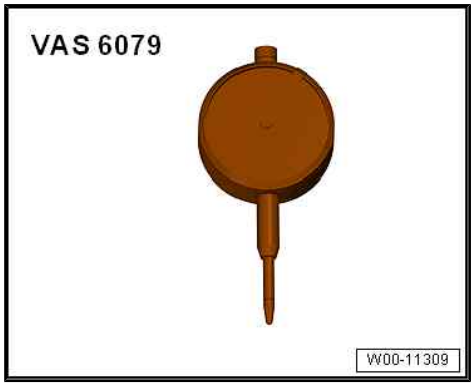
4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



- Dial gauge - VAS 6079-



- Adjustment pin - T40313-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Remove camshafts ⇒ page 136 .

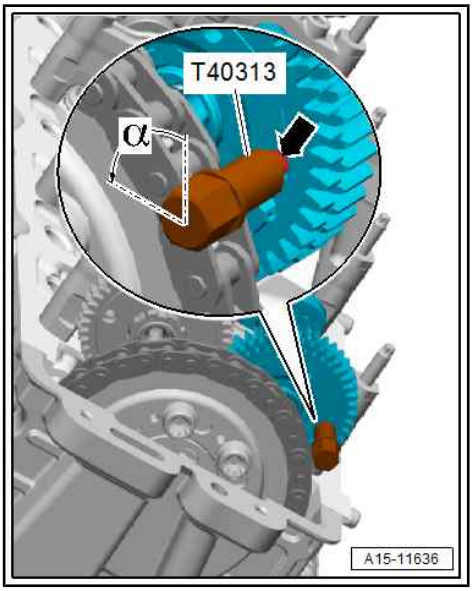
– Mark allocation of roller rocker fingers for re-installation.

– Carefully remove roller rocker fingers and place them on a clean surface.

– Move camshafts into installation position and tighten bolts on outer camshaft bearings to 9 Nm.

– Lock backlash compensation assembly of inlet and exhaust camshafts into place with adjustment pin - T40313- .

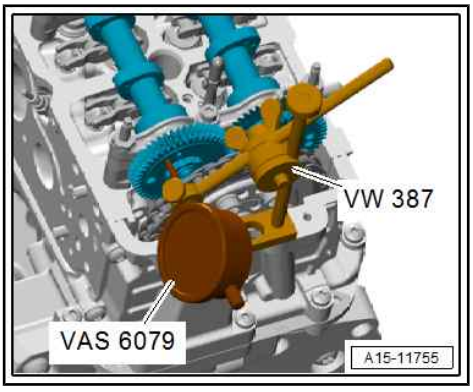
• Teeth of the two gears of exhaust camshaft must align ⇒ page 139 .



Note

Exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) is shown as an example.

– Secure dial gauge - VAS 6079- with universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387- to cylinder head as shown in illustrations.

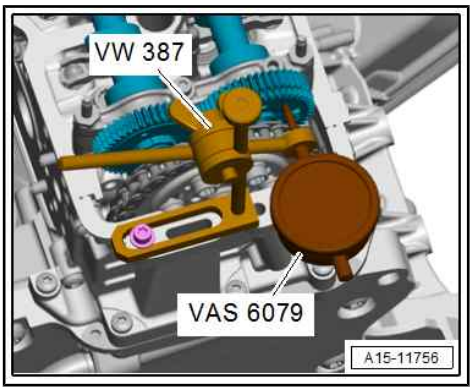


Axial clearance (inlet camshaft)

• Specification: 0.0682 … 0.0750 mm.

Axial clearance (exhaust camshaft)

• Specification: 0.0682 … 0.0750 mm.



4.3 Measuring radial clearance of camshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Plastigauge

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Remove camshafts ⇒ page 136 .

– Mark allocation of roller rocker fingers for re-installation.

– Carefully remove roller rocker fingers and place them on a clean surface.

– Clean bearings and bearing journals.

– Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or bearing shell to be measured.

• The Plastigauge must be positioned in the centre of the bearing.

– Re-insert camshafts with camshaft bearings and tighten without rotating camshafts.

– Remove camshafts with camshaft bearings again.

– Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

Radial clearance:

• New: 0.037 ... 0.063 mm.

4.4 Removing and installing camshaft

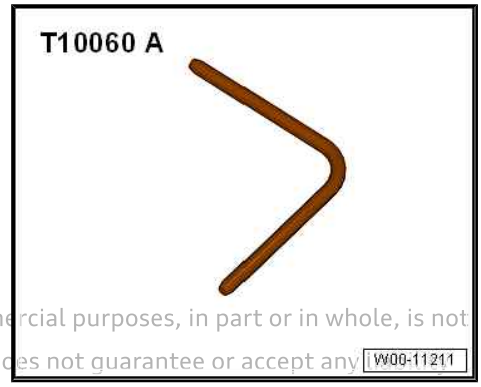
⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136

⇒ “4.4.2 Renewing camshaft”, page 145

4.4.1 Removing and installing camshaft

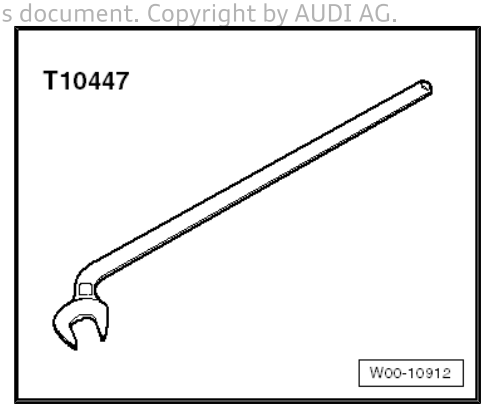
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pin - T10060A- (2x)

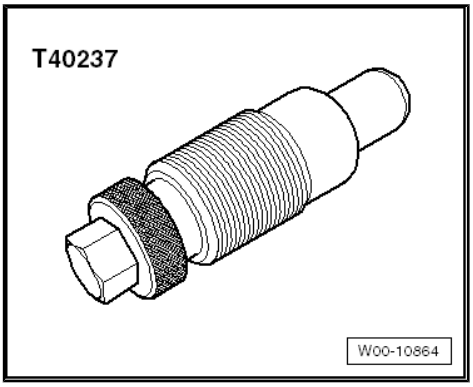


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

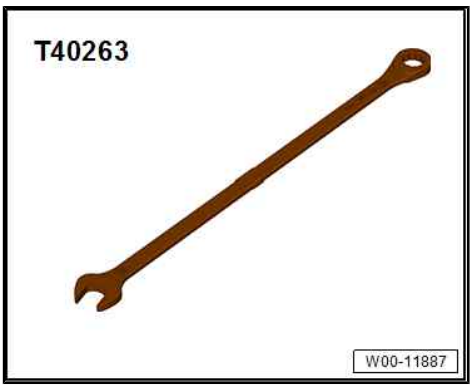
♦ Open-end spanner 16 mm - T10447-



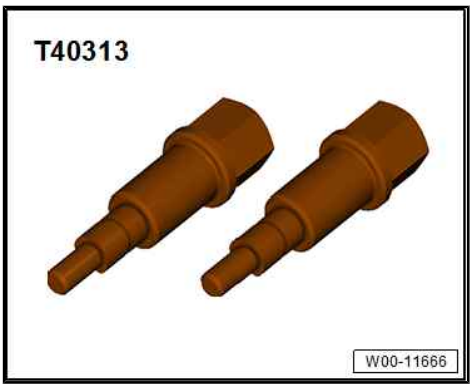
- Locking pin - T40237-



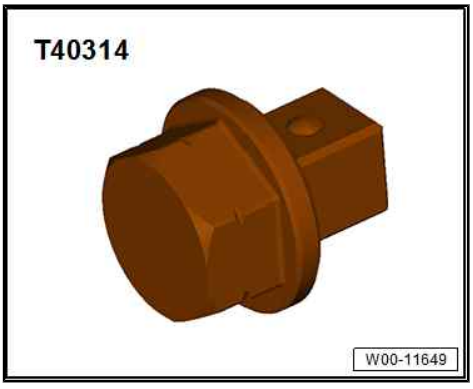
- Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



- Adjustment pin - T40313-



- Adapter - T40314-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

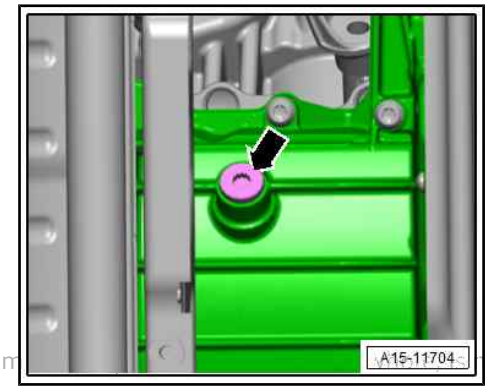
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Valve gear; Removing and installing camshaft .

– Remove corresponding cylinder head cover ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover”, page 121 .

– Remove noise insulation (front)/one-piece noise insulation ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .

A4/A5: Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

– Unscrew plug -arrow- from sump (top section).



Note

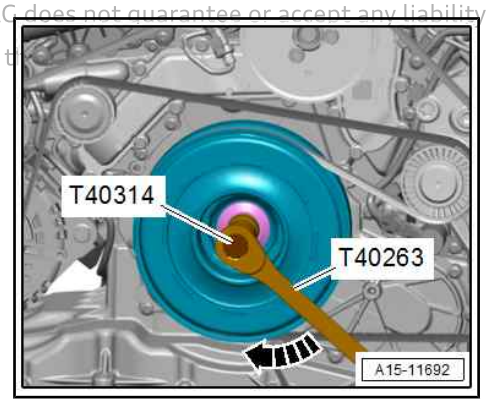
To do this on A4/A5 vehicles, the subframe cross brace must be lowered; while doing so, do not press the joint pin of the guide link out of the tapered seat ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com ot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t

Caution

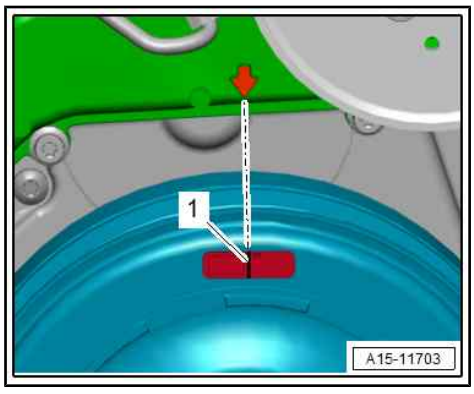
Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***

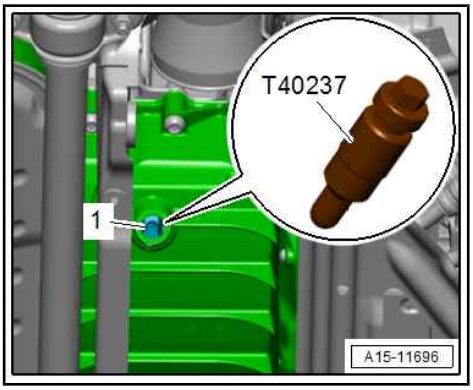


– Use wrench, 21 mm - T40263- and adapter -T40314- to turn crankshaft until vibration damper is at “TDC” position. (Illustration shows vehicle with alternator.)

• Mark (stuck on) -1- must be vertical and aligned with arrow marking on coolant pump.



– While turning in this direction, lock crankshaft -1- with locking pin - T40237- . Tighten locking pin to 20 Nm.

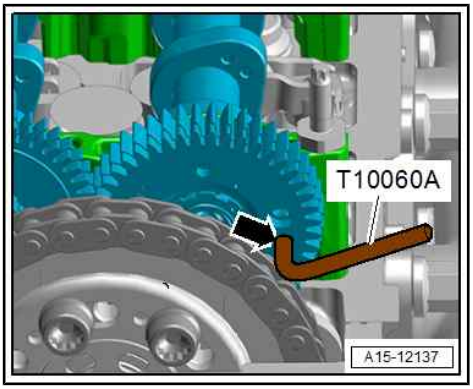


Caution

The crankshaft must be exactly in "TDC" position to ensure accurate valve timing adjustment.

- ***If crankshaft has been turned past "TDC" position, turn crankshaft two further rotations until it is again positioned just before "TDC". Then turn further in the same direction and lock crankshaft with locking pin - T40237- .***

• It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- . If not, turn crankshaft 360° further in direction of engine rotation.

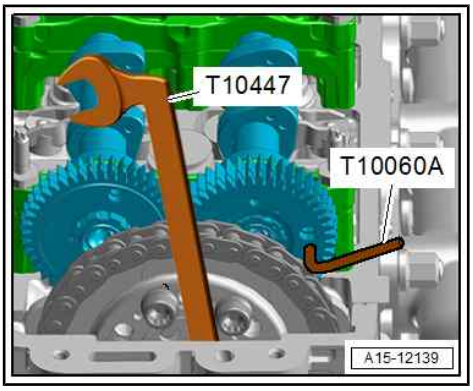


Camshafts for cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

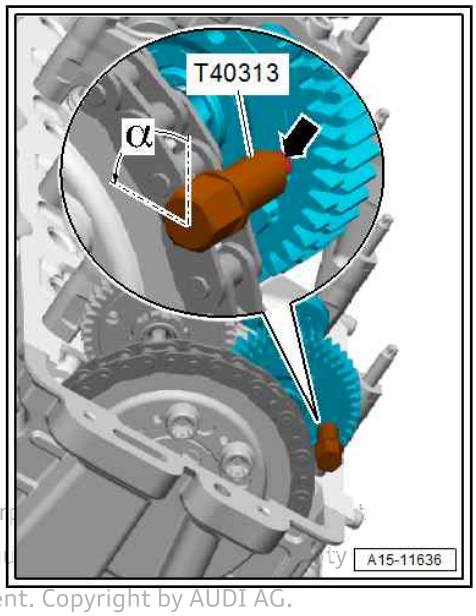
– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at "TDC" by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

Note

If exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) cannot be locked, use open-end spanner (16 mm) - T10447- to turn camshaft chain sprocket slightly back and forth, as shown.



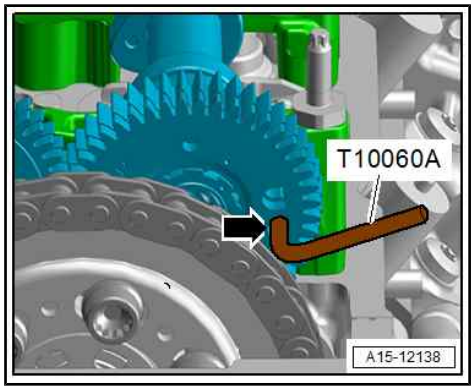
– Lock backlash compensation assembly of exhaust camshaft in place by inserting adjustment pin - T40313- into sprocket as far as groove -arrow- and turning it 90° anti-clockwise.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

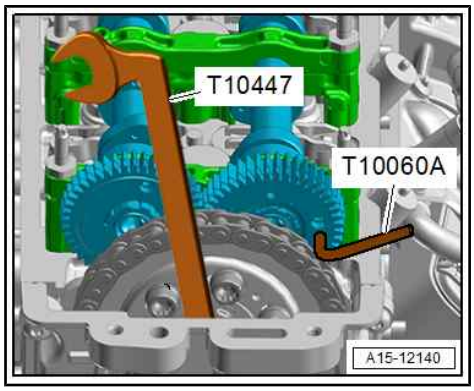
Camshafts for cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.

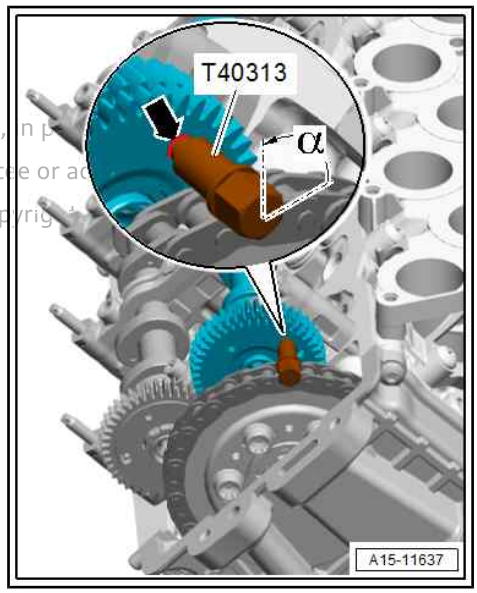


Note

If inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) cannot be locked, use open-end spanner (16 mm) - T10447- to turn camshaft chain sprocket slightly back and forth, as shown.



– Lock backlash compensation assembly of inlet camshaft in place by inserting adjustment pin - T40313- into sprocket as far as groove -arrow- and turning it 90° anti-clockwise.

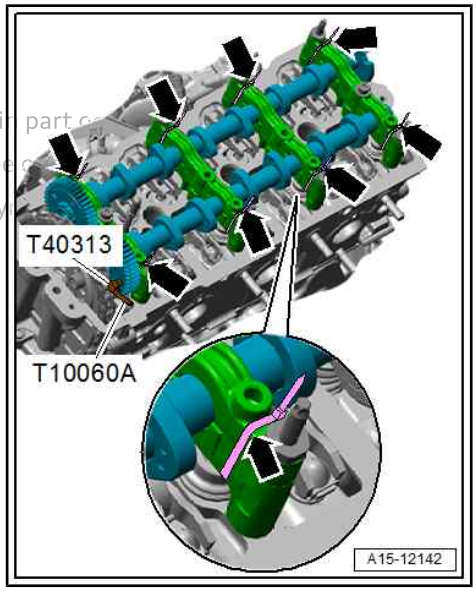


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante e or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig t

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Both sides (continued):

– Wrap one cable tie -arrows- on each side around bearing pedestal and bearing cap and secure.

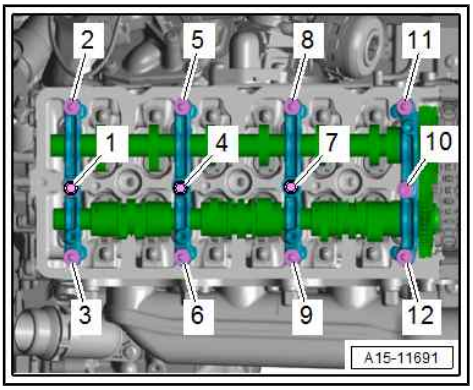


Note

- *Fit cable ties tightly, aligning them so that bolts on bearing cap can be slackened/tightened.*
- *With the cable ties it is possible to detach the camshafts together with the camshaft bearings. This prevents components from being interchanged and ensures that the "TDC" position is maintained.*

Note

Mark allocation of bolts for re-installation.



– Unscrew bolts in several stages one turn at a time in sequence -12 ... 1- until all camshaft bearings are clear.

Note

Make sure you do not damage the roller rocker fingers and hydraulic compensation elements when removing the camshafts.

– Carefully detach camshaft bearings together with camshafts.

Caution

Do NOT interchange components!

- ***Do not release cable ties until after re-installation.***

– If necessary for additional work, mark roller rocker fingers and hydraulic compensation elements for re-installation, remove them and place them on a clean surface.

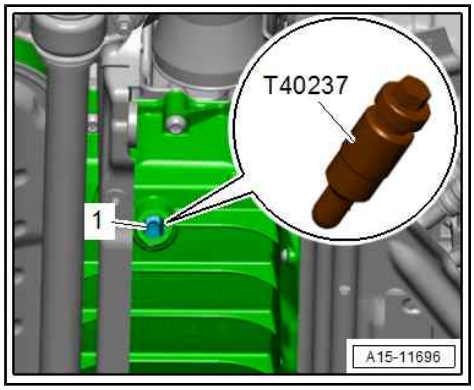
Installing

Note

Clean threads and threaded holes; they must be free of oil and grease.

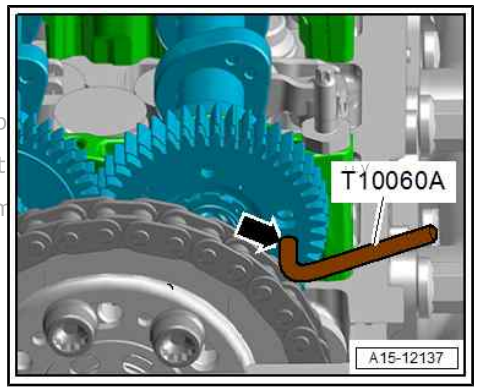
Requirements

- Crankshaft locked in “TDC” position with locking pin - T40237- .

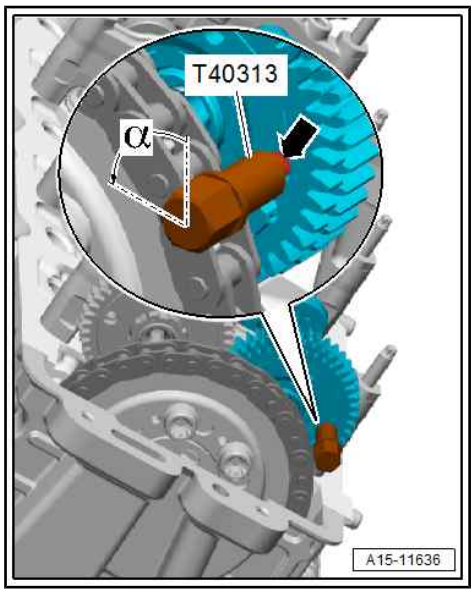


- Exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) locked at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum



- Backlash compensation assembly of exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) locked in place with adjustment pin - T40313- .



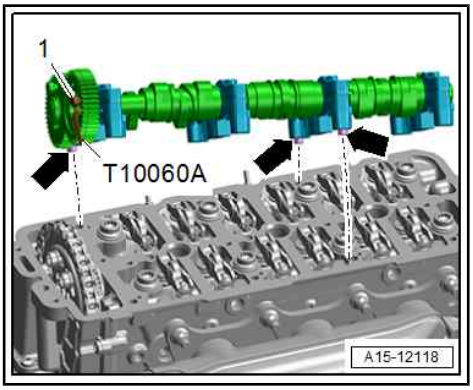
Note

New camshafts are supplied with an assembly aid which is inserted in place of the adjustment pin -T40313- .

– Check installation position of dowel sleeves:

• Dowel sleeves -arrows- must be inserted in holes in bearing pedestals “X4” and “X2” ⇒ page 147 .

• Dowel sleeves must engage in holes in cylinder head.

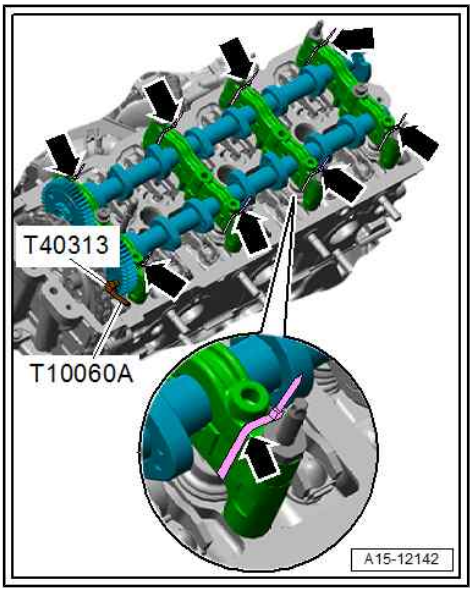


WARNING

The components of the backlash compensation assembly are under spring tension. This can cause injury.

- *Do NOT remove locking pin - T10060A- .*
- *Do NOT remove assembly aid -1- (only for new camshafts).*
- *Do NOT remove adjustment pin - T40313- (for re-installing used camshafts).*

– Fit camshafts and camshaft bearings (secured with cable ties -arrows-) on cylinder head.



Note

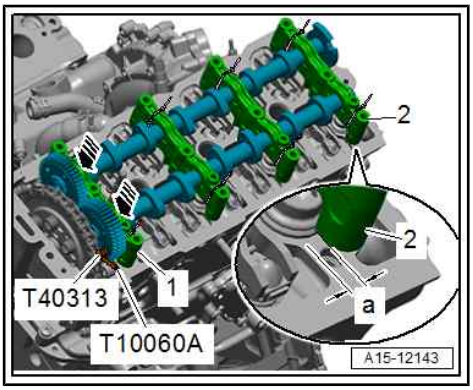
The cable ties help to keep the camshafts and camshaft bearings straight when they are tightened, and to keep both camshafts in “TDC” position respective to one another.

– Push bearing mounting “X4” -item 1- down fully by hand until it makes contact with cylinder head; pay attention to dowel sleeve when doing so.

♦ Doing this ensures that the fitting sleeves reach their installation position in the cylinder head, and that, if the intermediate drive is installed, the splines of the exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and the inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) engage in the splines of the intermediate drive.

♦ At the same time, the front part of the bearings is lifted by distance -a-, as shown for bearing “X1” -item 2-.

♦ Tightening the bolts against the tension of the valve springs will bring the front three bearings into a position where they make contact.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts for camshaft bearings:

♦ Timing chain drive fully installed ⇒ page 132

♦ Timing chain removed from camshaft sprocket, or intermediate drive removed ⇒ page 130

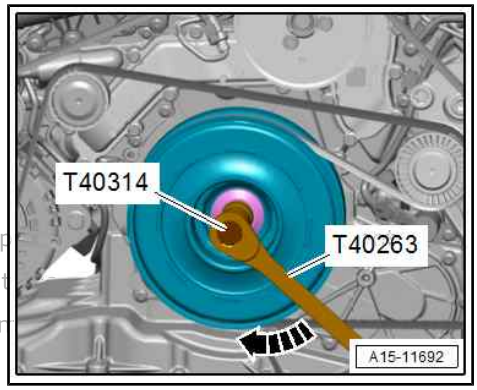
Checking valve timing (complete timing chain drive must be installed during check):

Caution

Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

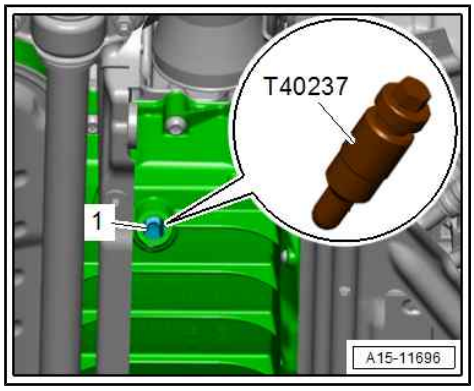
- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu



– Turn crankshaft two rotations until vibration damper is at “TDC” position again.

– While turning in this direction, lock crankshaft -1- with locking pin - T40237- . Tighten locking pin to 20 Nm.



Caution

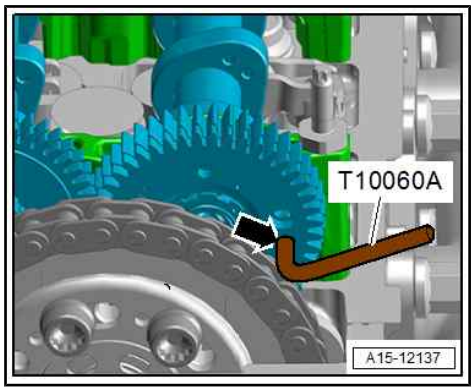
The crankshaft must be exactly in “TDC” position to ensure accurate valve timing adjustment.

- ***If crankshaft has been turned past “TDC” position, turn crankshaft two further rotations until it is again positioned just before “TDC”. Then turn further in the same direction and lock crankshaft with locking pin - T40237- .***

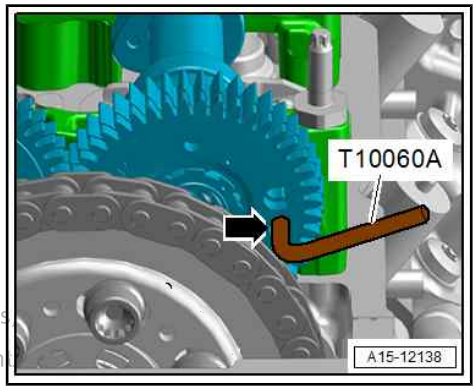
– Check that camshafts on both cylinder heads are positioned at “TDC”.

• It should be possible to lock camshafts with locking pins - T10060A- .

– Lock exhaust camshaft of cylinder bank 1 (right-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



– Lock inlet camshaft of cylinder bank 2 (left-side) at “TDC” by inserting locking pin - T10060A- in hole -arrow-.



Note

The timing adjustment is O.K. even if locking pin -T10060A- is difficult to insert or if a 3.5 mm ∅ drill bit can be inserted instead of locking pin - T10060A- (wrap insulating tape around the tip and sharp edges of the drill bit to protect against injury).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Remove locking pin - T40237- .

– Install cylinder head cover ⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing cylinder head cover”, page 121 .

– A4/A5: Install subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 15 ; Valve gear; Removing and installing camshaft .

Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on valve gear.

- ***The hydraulic tappets have to settle; wait for approx. 30 minutes after installing camshafts before starting engine.***
- ***Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is operated.***

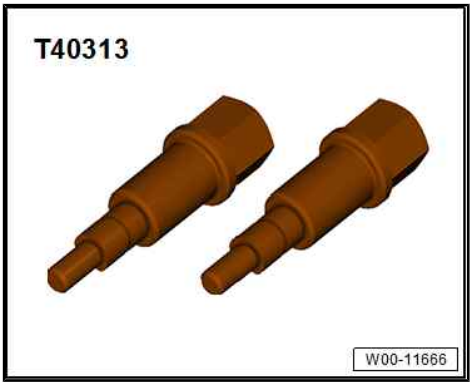
Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - valve gear”, page 128
- Plug for “TDC” marking ⇒ Item 19 (page 162)
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

4.4.2 Renewing camshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

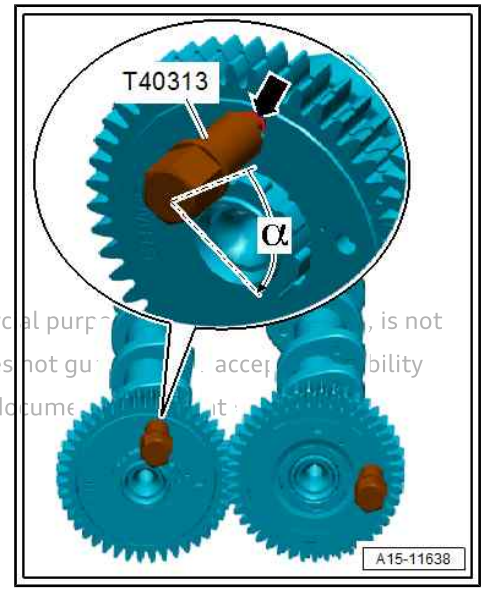
- Adjustment pin - T40313-



Removing

– Remove camshafts
⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 and place them on a clean surface.

– Lock backlash compensation assembly of inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) in place by inserting adjustment pin - T40313- into sprocket as far as groove -arrow- and turning it 90° clockwise.



Note

The backlash compensation assembly of the exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) and inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side) was locked in place with adjustment pins -T40313- during removal and must remain locked in place.

Copyright AUDI AG. Any commercial purp... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu... accep... bility with respect to the correctness of information in this docume... it ...

Caution

Warning! Risk of damage to engine.

- ***Check markings on bearing caps and bearing pedestals, as shown below.***
- ***Mark bearing caps and bearing pedestals if no markings have yet been made.***

– Remove cable ties from camshaft bearings.

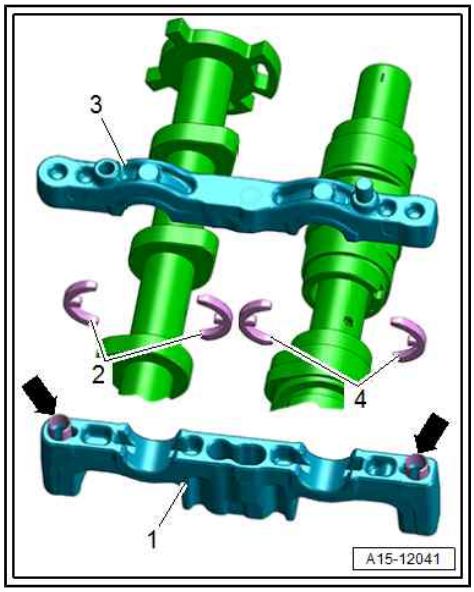
– Remove locking pin - T10060A- .

– Detach bearing caps -3- from bearing pedestals -1-.

– Remove camshafts and detach thrust bearings -2, 4-.

• Thrust bearings are only installed on mounting bracket “X2” ⇒ page 147 .

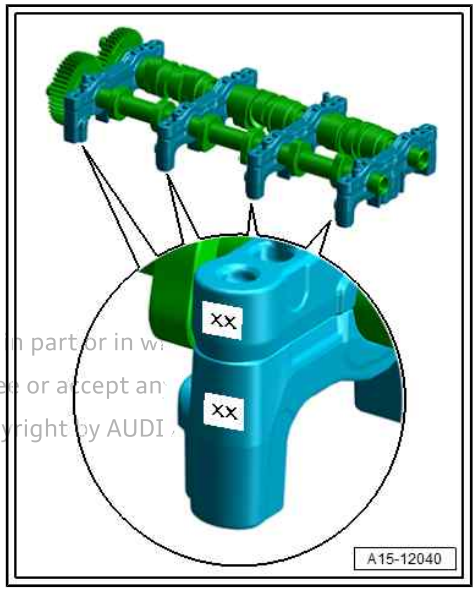
– Remove adjustment pin - T40313- from camshaft being renewed.



Installing

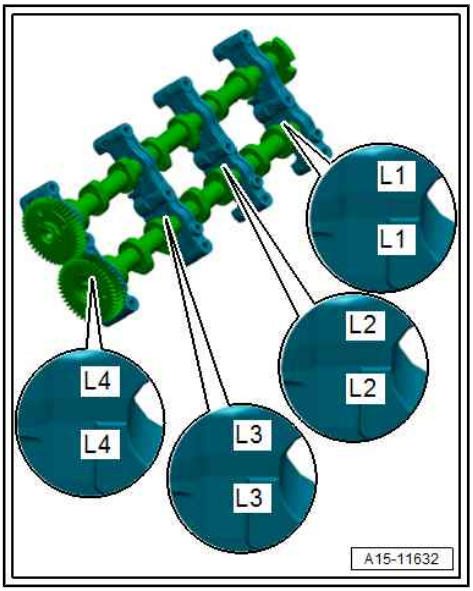
To prevent installation at the wrong locations, the camshaft bearing pedestals and bearing caps are marked:

- Backlash compensation assembly of camshaft sprockets locked in place with adjustment pin - T40313- (for re-installing used camshafts) / assembly aid (for installing new camshafts)
- Exhaust side markings: Markings on camshaft bearings face exhaust manifolds on left and right.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept an
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

- Rear markings: Markings on camshaft bearings face rearwards towards camshaft sprockets.



Allocation of camshaft bearings		
Cylinder bank 1 (right-side)	**Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)**	**Installation position**
R1/R1	L1/L1	Front
R2/R2	L2/L2	Front centre
R3/R3	L3/L3	Rear centre
R4/R4	L4/L4	Rear

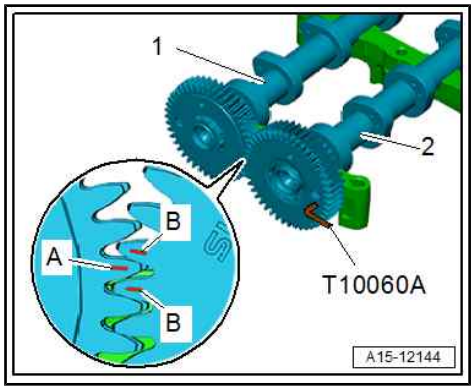
– Place bearing pedestals on a clean surface, paying attention to allocation ⇒ page 147 .

– Place camshafts onto bearing pedestals, paying attention to markings.

Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

- Marking -A- for inlet camshaft must be between the two markings -B- for exhaust camshaft, as shown in illustration.

– Lock exhaust camshaft at “TDC” by inserting locking pin -T10060A- in hole.



Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- Marking -A- for exhaust camshaft must be between the two markings -B- for inlet camshaft, as shown in illustration.

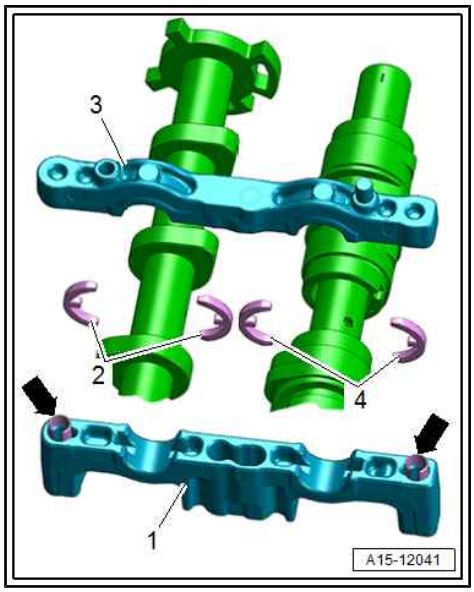
– Lock inlet camshaft at “TDC” by inserting locking pin -T10060A- in hole.

Both sides (continued):

– Bring thrust bearings -2, 4- into installation position on camshafts.

– Place bearing cap -3- onto bearing pedestal -1-, paying attention to allocation.

- Both dowel sleeves -arrows- must be inserted in holes in bearing pedestal “X2”.
- Dowel sleeves must engage in holes in bearing cap.



Note

New camshafts are supplied with an assembly aid -1- which is inserted in place of the adjustment pin -T40313- .

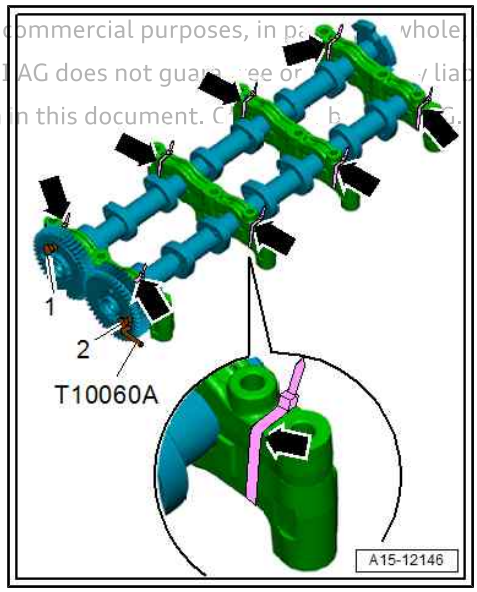
– Wrap one cable tie -arrows- on each side around bearing pedestal and bearing cap and secure.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The cable ties help to keep the camshafts and camshaft bearings straight when they are tightened.

– Remove assembly aid -1- from inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side)/exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).



WARNING

The components of the backlash compensation assembly are under spring tension. This can cause injury.

- ***Do NOT remove assembly aid -2- from exhaust camshaft for cylinder bank 1 (right-side) or inlet camshaft for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).***

– Install camshafts
⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

4.5 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals

⇒ “4.5.1 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head installed)”, page 149

⇒ “4.5.2 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head removed)”, page 152

4.5.1 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head installed)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Valve stem seal puller - 3364-

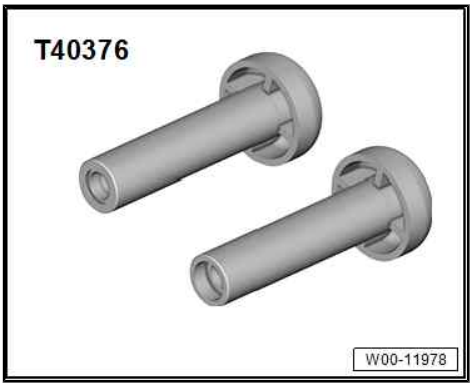


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Valve stem oil seal fitting tool - 3365- for inlet side, or (depending on version/manufacturer of valve stem oil seal)



- Valve stem seal fitting tool - T40376/1-



- Removal and installation device for valve cotters - VAS 5161 A- with guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- and sealing pin -VAS 5161/29-1-



- Assembly sleeve ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Remove all glow plugs ⇒ page 322 .

– Remove camshafts
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

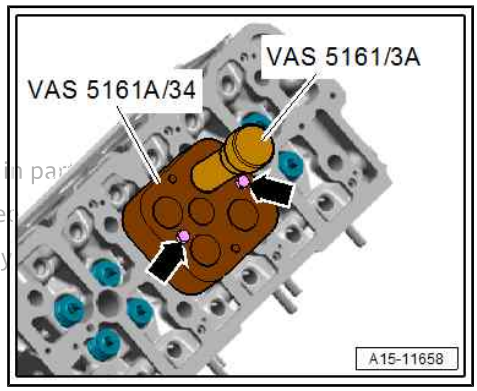
– Set piston of appropriate cylinder to “bottom dead centre”.

– Fit guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- onto cylinder head.

– Secure guide plate with screws -arrows-.

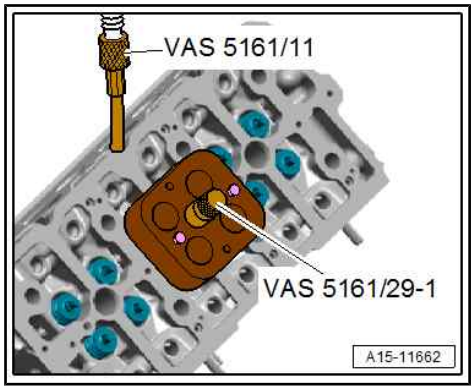
– Insert drift -VAS 5161/3A- into guide plate and use plastic-headed hammer to release sticking valve cotters.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in par
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

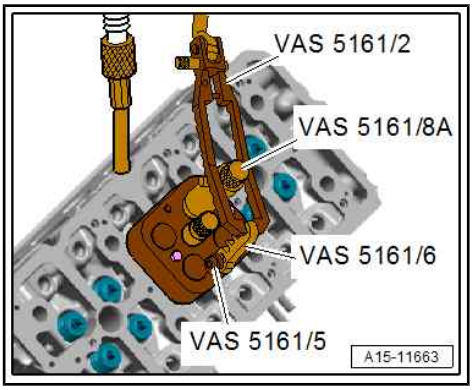


– Screw sealing pin -VAS 5161/29-1- into guide plate.

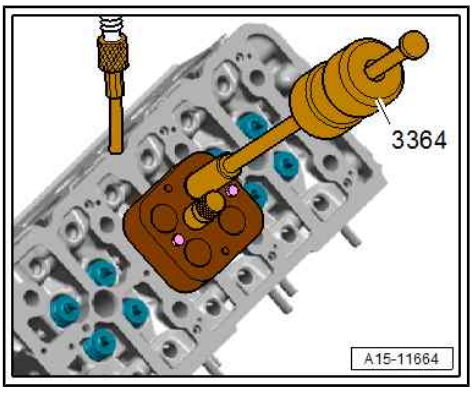
– Screw adapter -VAS 5161/11- hand-tight into corresponding glow plug thread.



– Screw snap-in device -VAS 5161/6- with engaging fork -VAS 5161/5- into guide plate.
– Insert assembly cartridge -VAS 5161/8A- in hole above valve spring that is to be removed.
– Connect adapter to compressed air line using a commercially available connection piece and apply constant air pressure.
• Minimum pressure: 6 bar
– Attach pressure fork -VAS 5161/2- to snap-in device and push assembly cartridge down.
– At the same time, turn knurled screw of assembly cartridge clockwise until tips engage in valve cotters.
– Move knurled screw back and forth slightly; the valve cotters are thus forced apart and taken up by the assembly cartridge.
– Release pressure fork.
– Take off assembly cartridge with knurled spacer ring.
– Detach valve spring with valve spring plate.

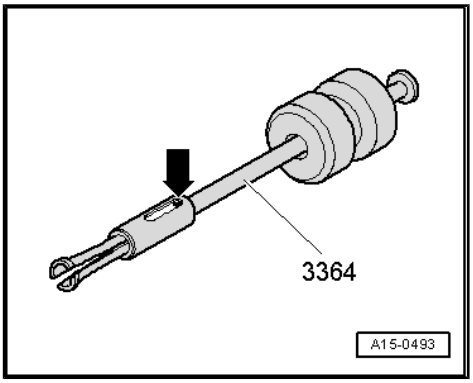


– Pull off valve stem oil seal with valve stem seal puller - 3364- .

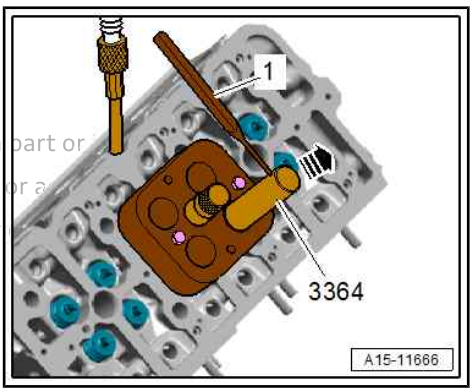


If the valve stem seal puller - 3364- cannot be used on some of the valve stem oil seals due to the confined space, proceed as follows:

– Knock out pin -arrow- of puller using a drift and remove impact extractor attachment.



– Apply bottom section of puller -3364- to valve stem oil seal.
– Secure puller with a punch or roll-pin drift -1-, as shown in illustration.
– Apply assembly lever to puller and pull out valve stem oil seal -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

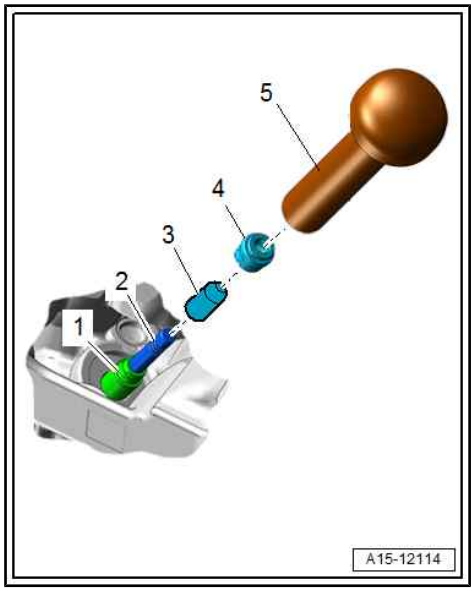
- To avoid damaging new valve stem oil seal -4- during installation, fit assembly sleeve -item 3- onto valve stem -2-.

– Lightly oil sealing lip of valve stem oil seal.

- Valve shaft seal fitting tool - 3365- or pusher - T40376/1- (depending on version/manufacturer of valve stem oil seal)

– Insert valve stem oil seal into valve shaft seal fitting tool - 3365- and use assembly sleeve to carefully press it onto valve guide -1- as far as stop.

– Remove assembly sleeve .

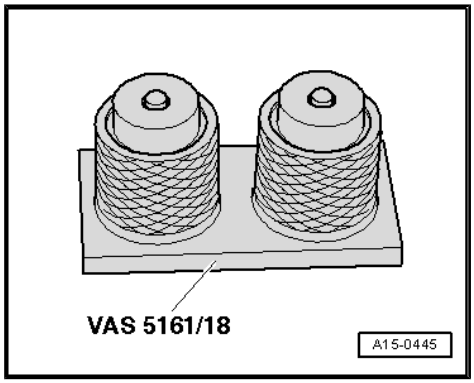


If valve cotters have been removed from assembly cartridge, they must first be inserted in insertion device -VAS 5161/18- .

- Larger diameter of valve cotters faces upwards.

– Insert valve spring and valve spring plate.

– Press assembly cartridge onto insertion device from above and pick up valve cotters.



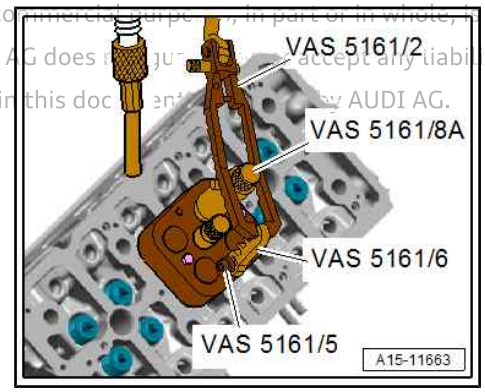
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

– Insert assembly cartridge in guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- again.

– Press down pressure fork and pull knurled screw upwards while turning screw in both directions - this will insert the valve cotters.

– Release pressure fork with knurled screw still in pulled position.

– Repeat procedure for each valve.



Assembling

Assembly is performed in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install camshafts
⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing camshaft”, page 136 .

– Install glow plugs ⇒ page 322 .

4.5.2 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head removed)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Valve stem seal puller - 3364-



- Valve stem oil seal fitting tool - 3365- , or (depending on version/manufacturer of valve shaft seal):



- Valve stem seal fitting tool - T40376/1-

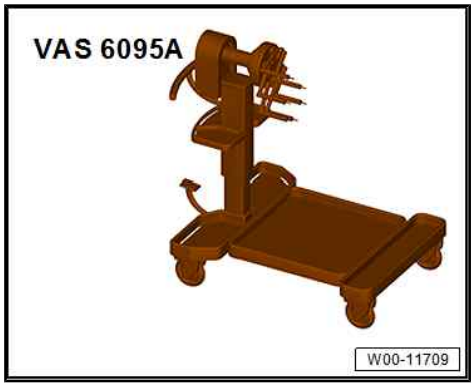


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

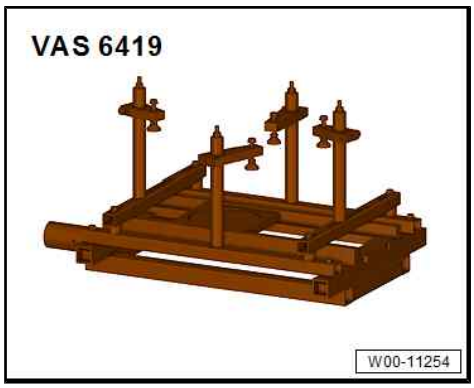
- Removal and installation device for valve cotters - VAS 5161 A- with guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- and sealing pin -VAS 5161/29-1-



♦ Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095A-



♦ Cylinder head tensioning device - VAS 6419-



♦ Assembly sleeve ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

– Insert cylinder head tensioning device - VAS 6419- into engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095A- .

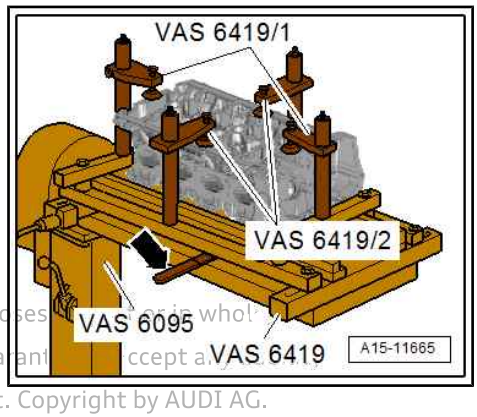
– Secure cylinder head in cylinder head tensioning device, as shown in illustration.

– Connect cylinder head tensioning device to compressed air supply.

– Using lever -arrow-, slide air pad under combustion chamber where valve stem oil seal is to be removed.

– Apply just enough compressed air to bring air pad into contact with valve heads.

– Mark fitting location of roller rocker fingers for re-installation and remove.

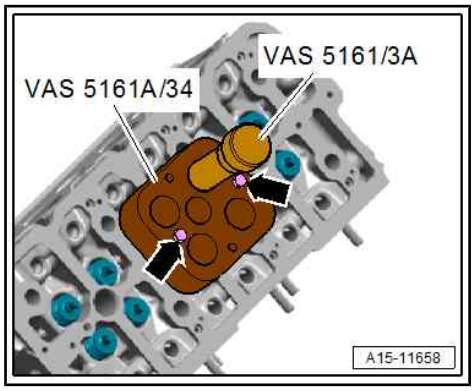


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

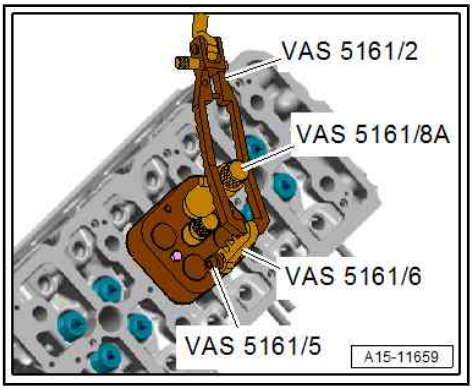
– Fit guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- onto cylinder head.

– Secure guide plate with screws -arrows-.

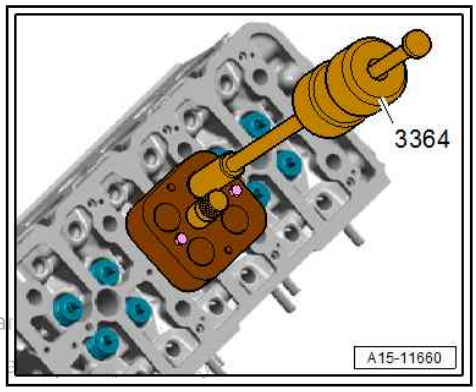
– Insert drift -VAS 5161/3A- into guide plate and use plastic-headed hammer to release sticking valve cotters.



– Screw snap-in device -VAS 5161/6- with engaging fork -VAS 5161/5- into guide plate.
– Insert assembly cartridge -VAS 5161/8A- in hole above valve spring that is to be removed.
– Attach pressure fork -VAS 5161/2- to snap-in device and push assembly cartridge down.
– At the same time, turn knurled screw of assembly cartridge clockwise until tips engage in valve cotters.
– Move knurled screw back and forth slightly; the valve cotters are thus forced apart and taken up by the assembly cartridge.
– Release pressure fork.
– Take off assembly cartridge with knurled spacer ring.
– Detach valve spring with valve spring plate.

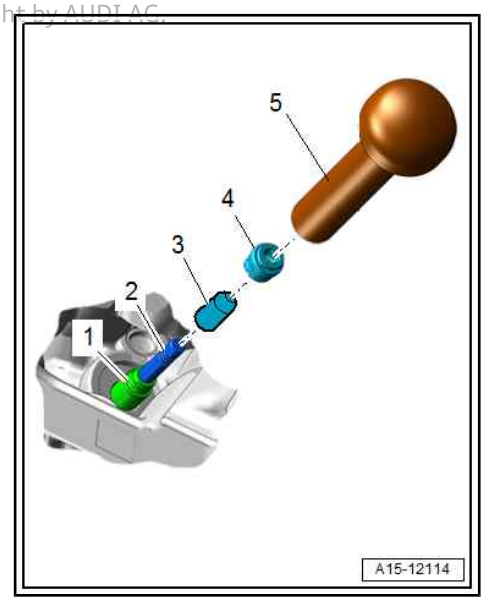


– Pull off valve stem oil seal with valve stem seal puller - 3364- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

• To avoid damaging new valve stem oil seal -4- during installation, fit assembly sleeve -item 3- onto valve stem -2-.
– Lightly oil sealing lip of valve stem oil seal.
• Use either valve shaft seal fitting tool - 3365- or valve shaft seal fitting tool - T40376/1- (depending on version/manufacturer of valve stem oil seal).
– Insert valve stem oil seal into valve shaft seal fitting tool -5- and use assembly sleeve to press it carefully onto valve guide -1- as far as stop.
– Remove assembly sleeve .

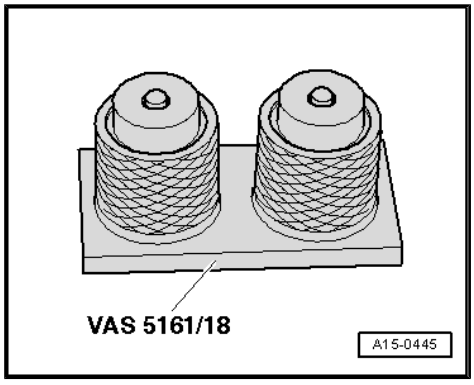


If valve cotters have been removed from assembly cartridge, they must first be inserted in insertion device -VAS 5161/18- .

- Larger diameter of valve cotters faces upwards.

– Insert valve spring and valve spring plate.

– Press assembly cartridge onto insertion device from above and pick up valve cotters.

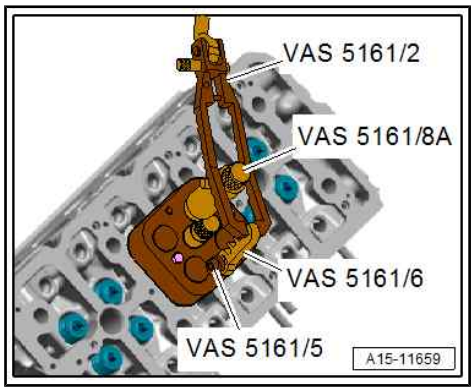


– Insert assembly cartridge in guide plate -VAS 5161 A/34- again.

– Press down pressure fork and pull knurled screw upwards while turning screw in both directions - this will insert the valve cotters.

– Release pressure fork with knurled screw still in pulled position.

– Repeat procedure for each valve.



Assembling

Assemble in reverse order.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Inlet and exhaust valves

⇒ “5.1 Machining valve seats”, page 157
⇒ “5.2 Checking valve guides”, page 157
⇒ “5.3 Checking valves”, page 158
⇒ “5.4 Valve dimensions”, page 158

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Machining valve seats

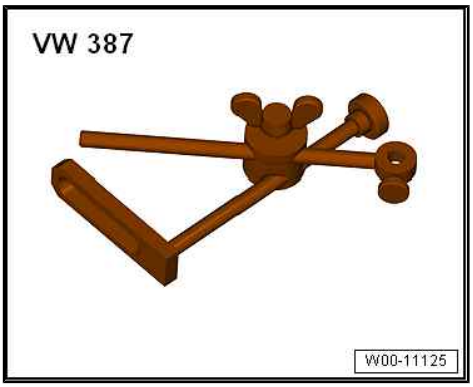
Note

Valve seats may not be machined due to the very small tolerances.

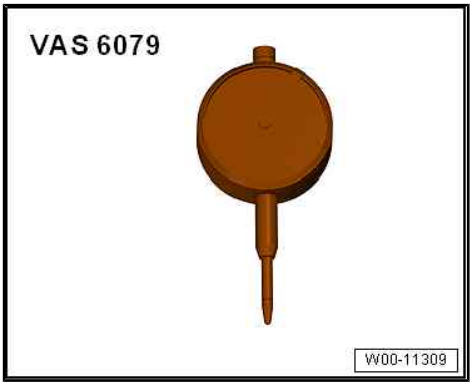
5.2 Checking valve guides

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



- Dial gauge - VAS 6079-

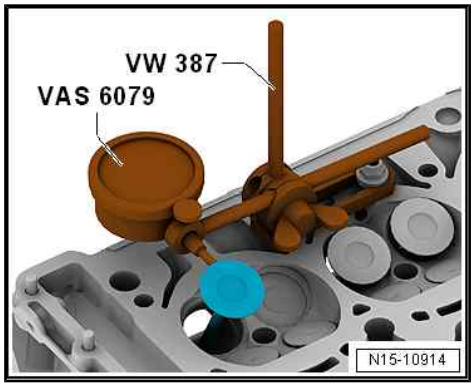


Procedure

Note

- *If the valve has to be renewed as part of a repair, use a new valve for the measurement.*
- *Only insert inlet valve into inlet valve guide and exhaust valve into exhaust valve guide, as the stem diameters are different.*

– Attach dial gauge - VAS 6079- with universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387- to cylinder head.
– Insert valve into guide.
• End of valve stem must be flush with valve guide.
– Measure the amount of sideways play.
• Wear limit: 1.0 mm.
– If the wear limit is exceeded, repeat the measurement with new valves.
– Renew cylinder head if wear limit is still exceeded.



Note

Valve guides cannot be renewed.

5.3 Checking valves

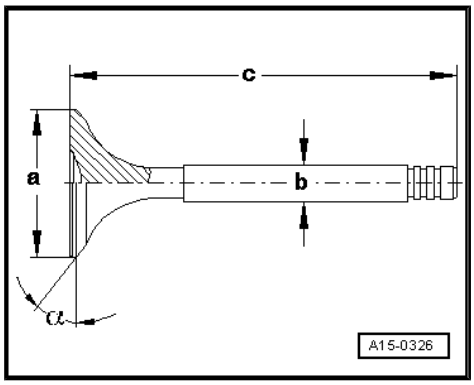
– Visually inspect for scoring on valve stems and valve seat surfaces.
– Renew valve if scoring is clearly visible.

5.4 Valve dimensions

Note

Inlet and exhaust valves must not be machined. Only grinding-in is permitted.

Dimension		Inlet valve	Exhaust valve
∅ a	mm	27.5 ± 0.1	25.5 ± 0.1
∅ b	mm	5.975 ± 0.007	5.965 ± 0.007
c	mm	99.3 ± 0.1	99.3 ± 0.1
α	∠°	45° 10'	45° 10'



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

17 – Lubrication

1 Sump/oil pump

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump”, page 159

⇒ “1.2 Engine oil”, page 163

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)”, page 163

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)”, page 165

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing oil pump”, page 167

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender G266 ”, page 169

1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump

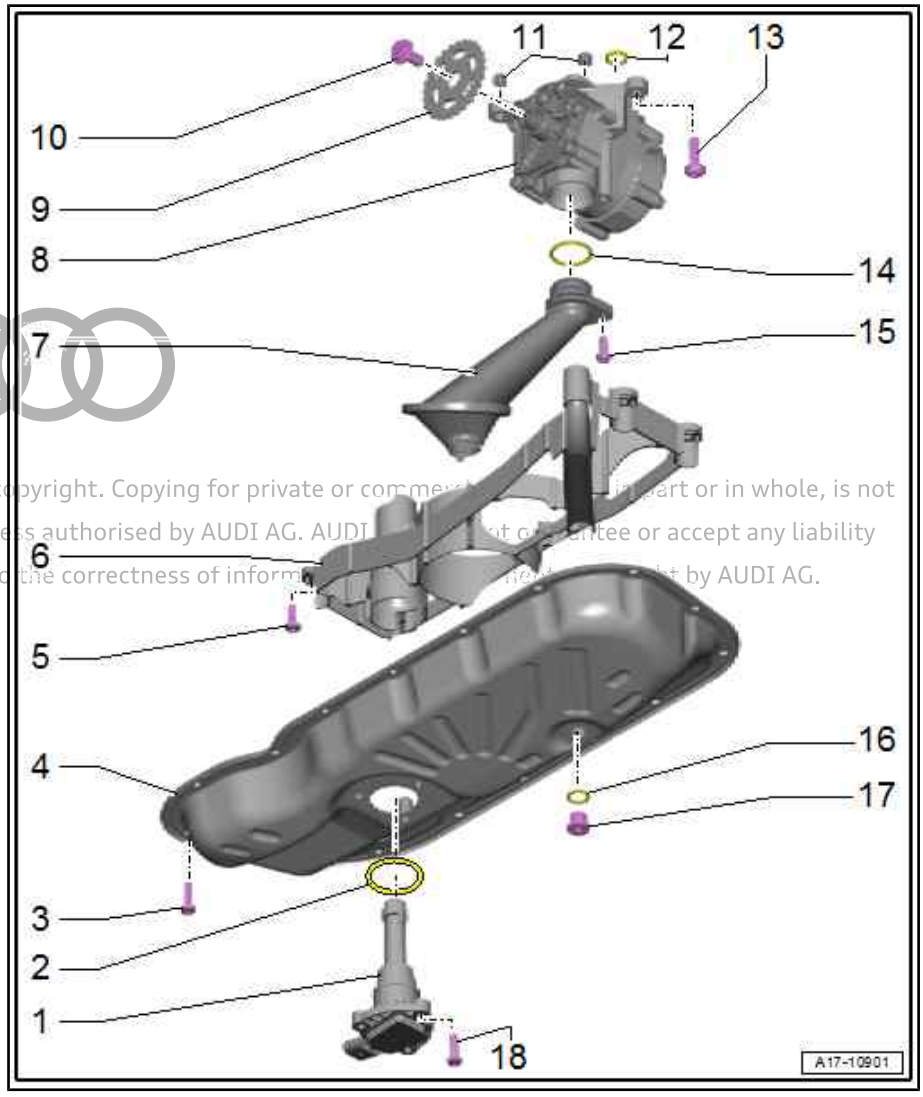
- Exploded view - sump (bottom section)/oil pump ⇒ page 159
- Exploded view - sump (top section) ⇒ page 161

Note

- *If large quantities of metal shavings or particles are found in the engine oil when repairing the engine, the oil passages must be cleaned carefully in order to prevent further damage occurring later. In addition, renew oil spray jets, engine oil cooler and oil filter.*
- *Oil spray jet for piston cooling ⇒ page 58 .*

Exploded view - sump (bottom section)/oil pump

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Oil level and oil temperature sender - G266-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

2 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

3 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 161

4 - Sump (bottom section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3 Nm +90°

6 - Baffle plate

7 - Suction pipe

8 - Oil pump
- ❑ With vacuum pump for brake servo
- ❑ Do not dismantle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

9 - Chain sprocket
- ❑ For oil pump

10 - Bolt
- ❑ To loosen, use counter-hold tool - T10172 A- to counterhold chain sprocket
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 30 Nm +45°

11 - Dowel sleeves
- ❑ 2x

12 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

13 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 161

14 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

15 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3 Nm +90°

16 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

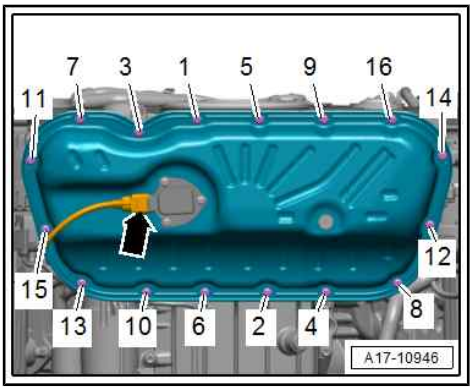
17 - Oil drain plug
- ❑ 30 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Bolt

❑ 9 Nm

Sump (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence



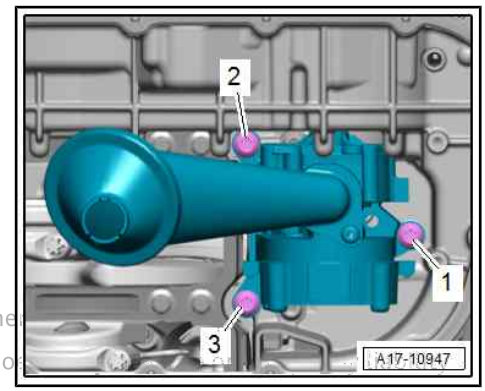
Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 16-	2 Nm
2.	-1 … 16-	3 Nm
3.	-1 … 16-	Turn 45° further

Oil pump with vacuum pump - tightening torque and sequence



Note

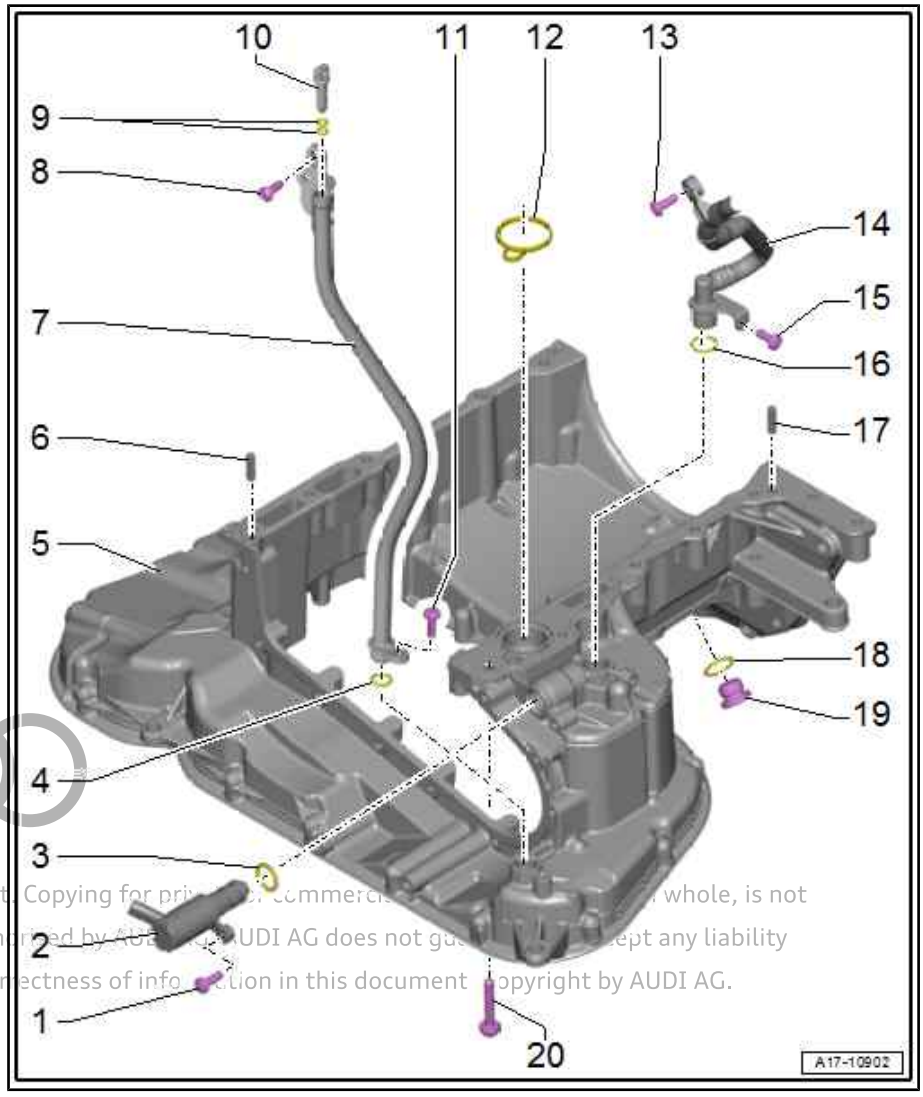
After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in 3 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 3-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-1 … 3-	8 Nm
3.	-1 … 3-	Turn 90° further

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exploded view - sump (top section)



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

2 - Valve for oil pressure control - N428-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 180

3 - O-ring
- ❑ Check for damage and renew if necessary

4 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Sump (top section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165

6 - Dowel sleeve

7 - Guide tube
- ❑ For oil dipstick

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

9 - O-rings
- ❑ Check for damage and renew if necessary

10 - Sealing plug

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

14 - Vacuum line
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Leading from vacuum pump

15 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

16 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

17 - Dowel sleeve

18 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

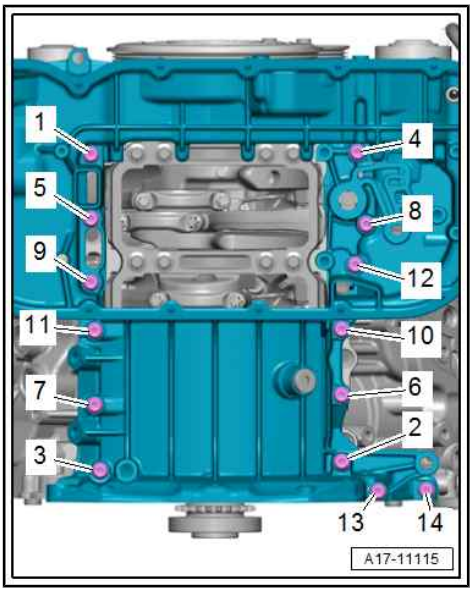
19 - Plug
- ❑ For “TDC” marking
- ❑ 25 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 163

Sump (top section) - tightening torque and sequence



Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 14-	2 Nm
2.	-1 … 14-	5 Nm
3.	-1 … 14-	Turn 180° further

1.2 Engine oil

♦ Draining and filling up engine oil, checking oil level, removing and installing oil filter element ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Engine oil

♦ Oil capacities, oil specifications and viscosity grades ⇒ Maintenance tables .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Electric drill with plastic brush

♦ Safety goggles

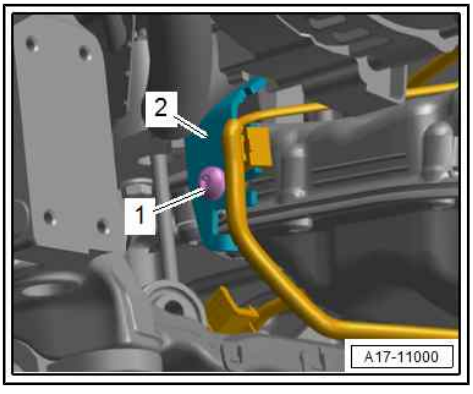
♦ Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Removing

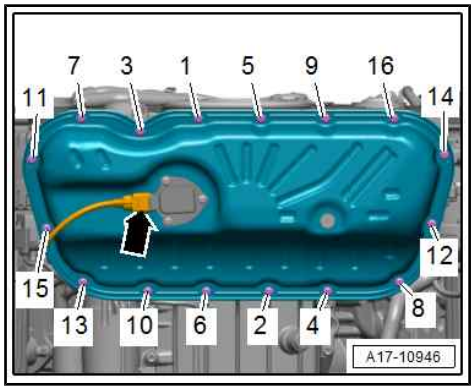
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing sump (bottom section) .

– Drain off engine oil ⇒ page 163 .

– If necessary, remove bolt -1- and press bracket -2- with electrical wiring harness to one side.



– Unplug electrical connector -arrow- at oil level and oil temperature sender - G266- (if not already unplugged during preliminary work).



Caution

Take care to keep components clean.

- *There will still be some oil in the sump (bottom section).*

– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -16 ... 1-.

– Carefully release sump (bottom section) from bonded joint and detach.

Installing

Caution

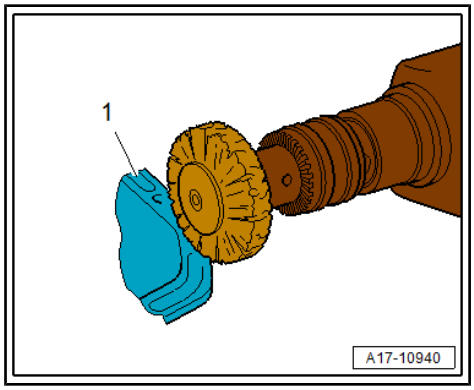
Protect lubrication system and bearings against contamination.

- *Cover exposed parts of the engine.*

WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- *Put on safety goggles.*



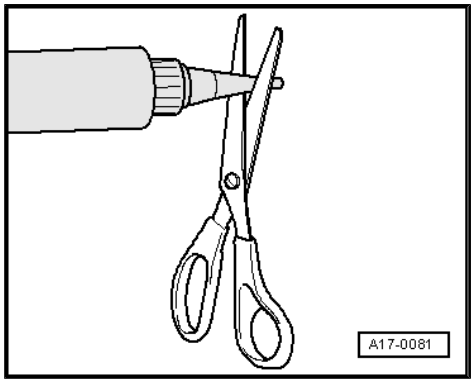
– Remove remaining sealant on bottom section -1- and top section of sump with a rotating plastic brush or similar.

– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

Note

Note expiry date of sealant.

– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 3 mm).

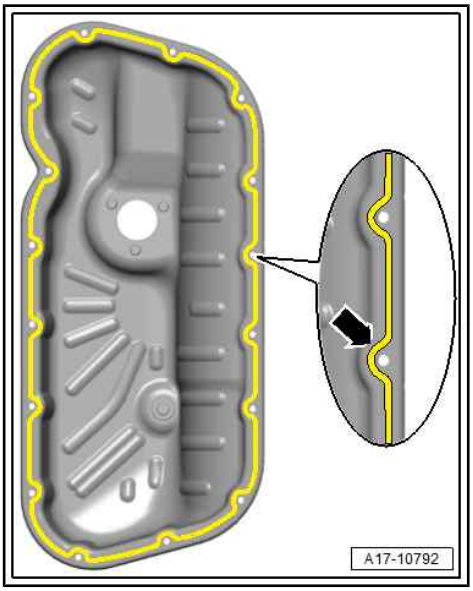


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ***The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.***



– Apply sealant bead -arrow- onto clean sealing surface of sump (bottom section) as shown in illustration.

• Width of sealant bead: 3.5 mm

Note

Install sump (bottom section) within 5 minutes of applying sealant.

– Carefully fit bottom section of sump onto top section but do not press sealant bead on yet.

• Sealant must not be allowed to get into threaded holes.

– First, screw all bolts in by hand and then tighten.

– Top up engine oil and check oil level ⇒ page 163 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing sump (bottom section)

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 161

1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Safety goggles
- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

• Engine removed and secured to engine and gearbox support ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 10 ; Removing and installing engine; Securing engine to engine and gearbox support .

• Engine oil drained ⇒ page 163 .

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing sump (top section) .

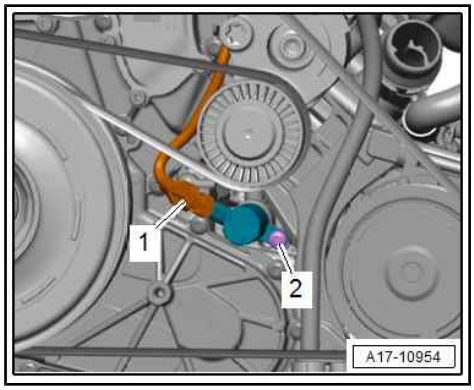
– Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ page 73 .

– Remove oil pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Remove bracket for alternator ⇒ page 29 .

– Remove bracket for air conditioner compressor ⇒ page 30 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- for valve for oil pressure control - N428- .



– Move electrical wiring clear.
– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -14 ... 1-.
– Carefully release sump (top section) from bonded joint, pry sump off dowel sleeves and detach.

Installing

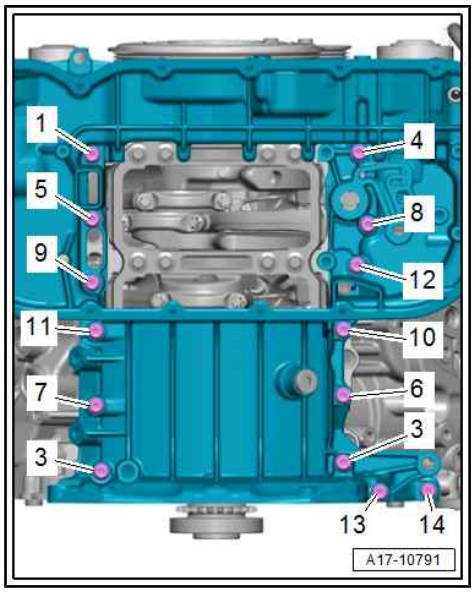
Note

Renew gaskets, seals and O-rings after removal.

Caution

Protect lubrication system against contamination.

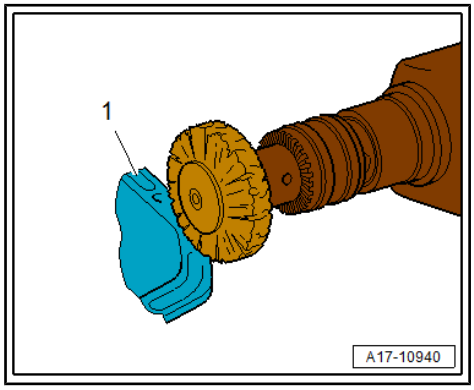
- ***Cover exposed parts of the engine.***



WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

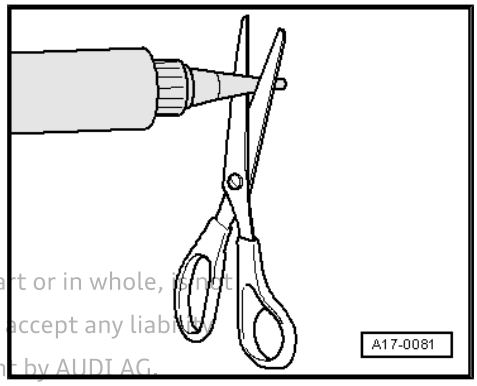


– Remove sealant residue from sump (top section) -1- and cylinder block using rotating plastic brush or similar.
– Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

Note

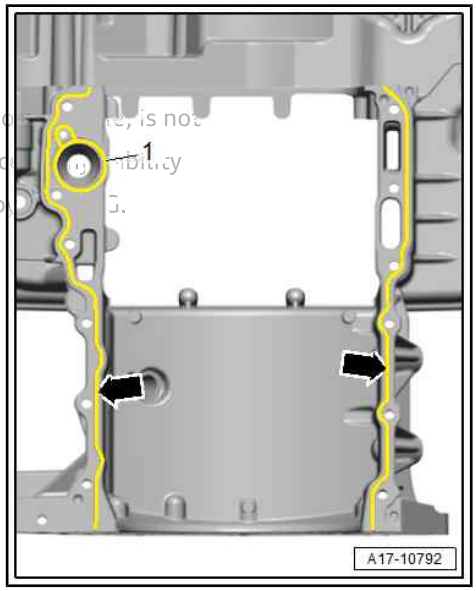
Note expiry date of sealant.

– Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle ∅ approx. 3 mm).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fit seal -1- in sump (top section).



Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ***The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

– Apply beads of sealant -arrows- onto clean sealing surface of sump (top section) as shown in illustration.

- The grooves on the sealing surfaces must be completely filled with sealant.
- The beads of sealant must project 3.5 mm above the sealing surface.

Note

Install sump (top section) within 5 minutes of applying sealant.

– Carefully fit sump (top section) onto cylinder block but do not press sealant bead on yet.

- Sealant must not be allowed to get into threaded holes.

– First, screw all bolts in by hand and then tighten.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install bracket for air conditioner compressor ⇒ page 30 .

– Install bracket for alternator ⇒ page 29 .

– Install oil pump ⇒ page 167 .

– Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ page 73 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing sump (top section)

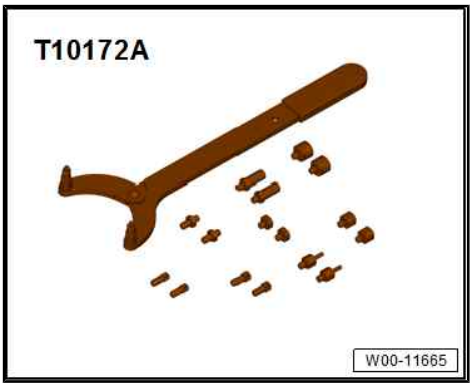
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (top section) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 163

1.5 Removing and installing oil pump

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Counterhold tool - T10172 A- with adapters -T10172/9-



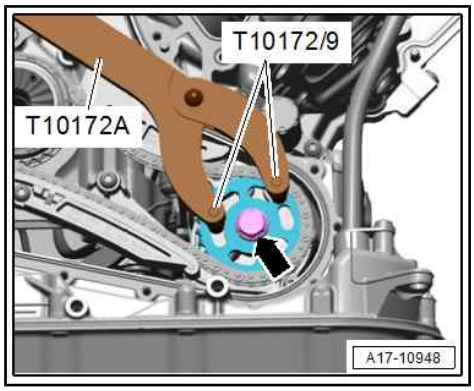
Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing oil pump .

– Remove sump (bottom section) ⇒ page 163 .

– Remove sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

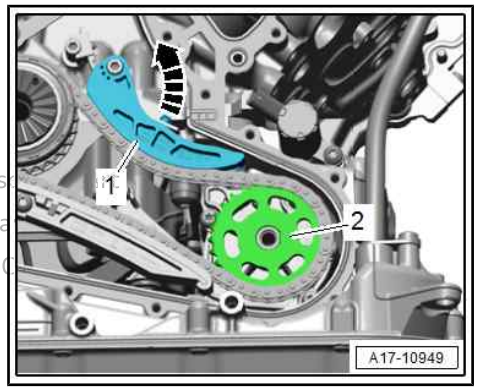
– Unscrew bolt -arrow-; to do so, counterhold chain sprocket for oil pump using counterhold tool - T10172 A- with adapter - T10172/9- .



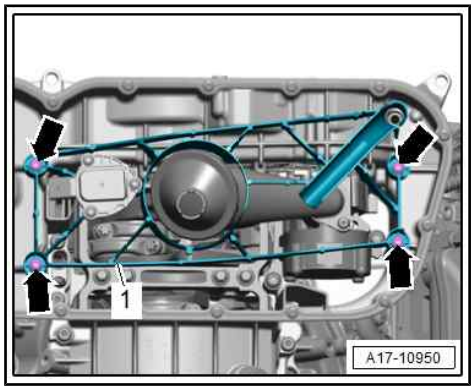
– Press tensioning rail -1- upwards -arrow- and detach chain sprocket -2-.

– Release tensioning rail.

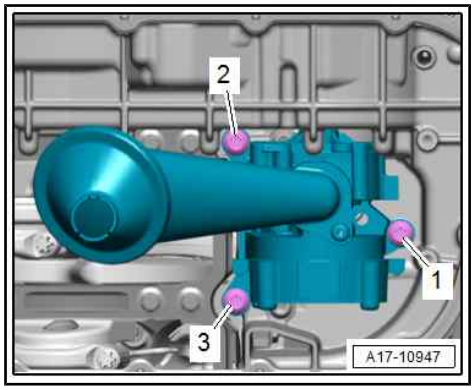
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove baffle plate -1-.



– Remove bolts -1, 2, 3- and detach oil pump.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

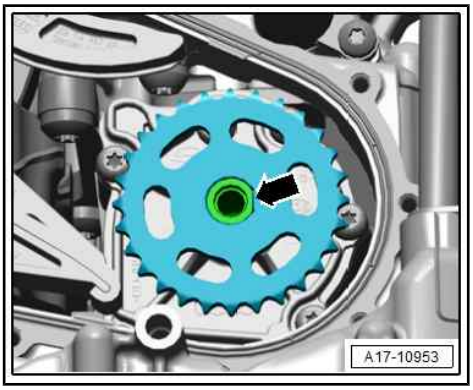
Note

Renew O-rings after removing.

– Check that the two dowel sleeves are fitted in the oil pump. Install missing dowel sleeves.

– Observe correct installation position of chain sprocket:

• Flat section on chain sprocket must align with flat section on oil pump -arrow-.



– Tighten bolt -arrow-; to do so, counterhold chain sprocket for oil pump using counterhold tool - T10172 A- with adapter - T10172/9- .

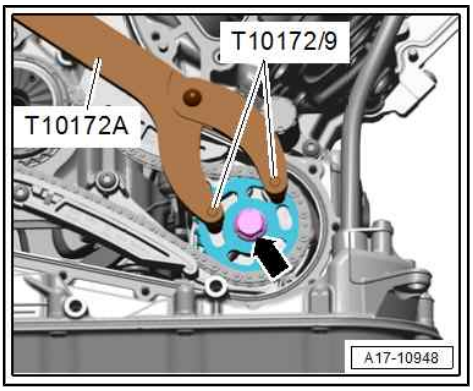
– Install sump (bottom section) ⇒ page 163 .

– Install sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Sump/oil pump; Removing and installing oil pump

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump”, page 159



1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender - G266-

Removing

– Drain off engine oil ⇒ page 163 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -1- and detach oil level and oil temperature sender - G266- -item 3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

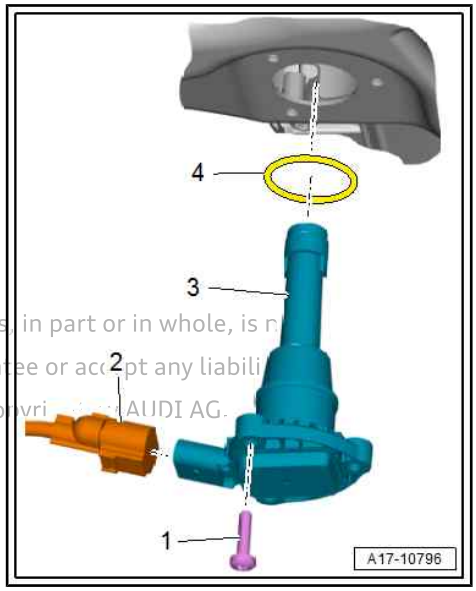
Renew seal -4- after removing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Top up engine oil and check oil level ⇒ page 163 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump”, page 159



2 Engine oil cooler

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - engine oil cooler”, page 170

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing engine oil cooler”, page 171

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing temperature regulator for engine oil cooler”, page 173

2.1 Exploded view - engine oil cooler

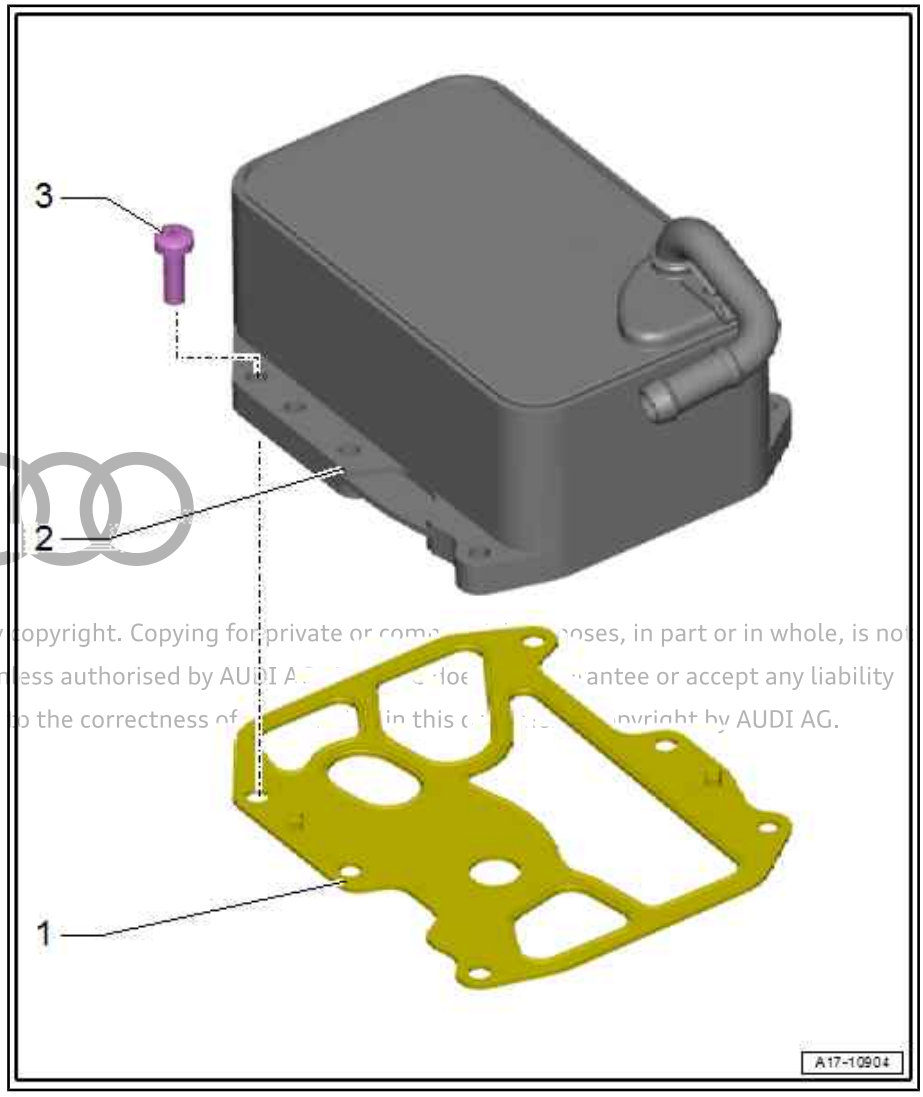
- Exploded view - engine oil cooler ⇒ page 170
- Exploded view - temperature regulator for engine oil cooler ⇒ page 171

Engine oil cooler

1 - Gasket
- ❑ For engine oil cooler
- ❑ Renew after removing

2 - Engine oil cooler
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ See note ⇒ page 159
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 171

3 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 171

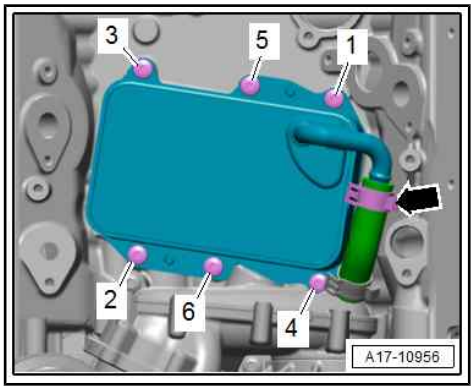


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Engine oil cooler - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown (illustration shows version 1).

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-1-	2 Nm
2.	-2-	9 Nm
3.	-1, 3, 4, 5, 6-	9 Nm



Exploded view - temperature regulator for engine oil cooler

1 - Bolt

❑ 9 Nm

2 - Cover

❑ For temperature regulator for engine oil cooler

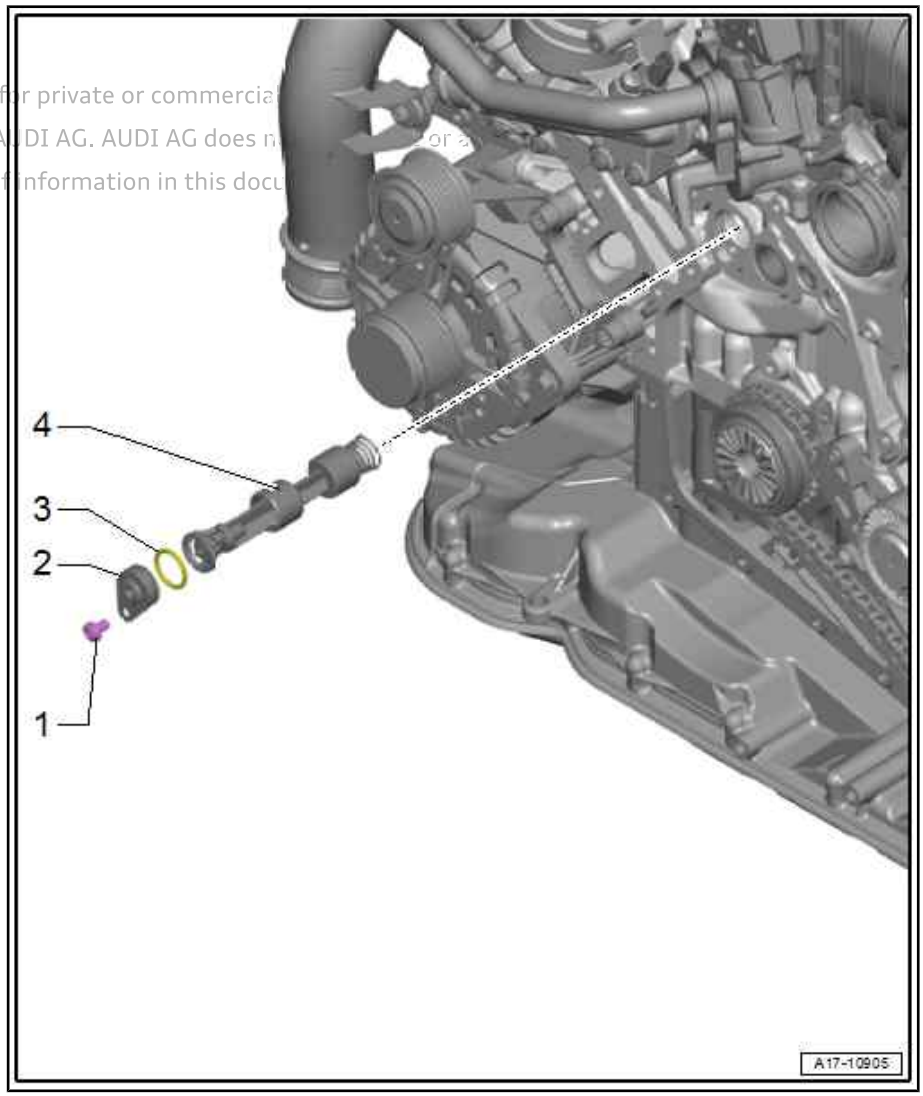
3 - O-ring

❑ Renew after removing

4 - Temperature regulator for engine oil cooler

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 173

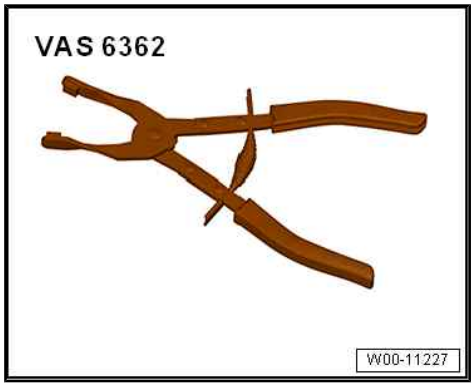
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu



2.2 Removing and installing engine oil cooler

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Removing

– Remove coolant pipe (top) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

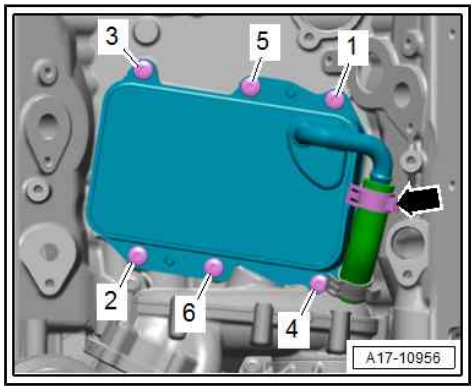
– Remove coolant shut-off valve ⇒ page 198 .

Version 1:

– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -6 ... 1-.

– Open hose clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose from engine oil cooler.

– Detach engine oil cooler.

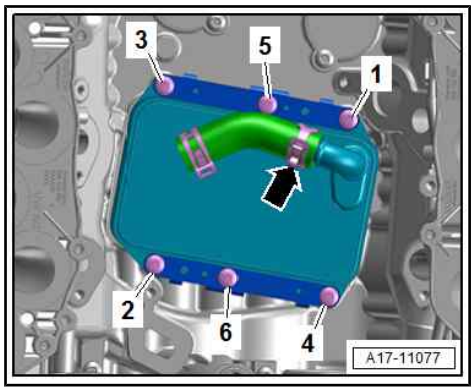


Version 2:

– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -6 ... 1-.

– Open hose clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hose from engine oil cooler.

– Detach engine oil cooler.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Renew gasket after removing.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install coolant shut-off valve ⇒ page 198 .

– Install coolant pipe (top) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

– Check oil level ⇒ page 163 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Engine oil cooler - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 171

2.3 Removing and installing temperature regulator for engine oil cooler

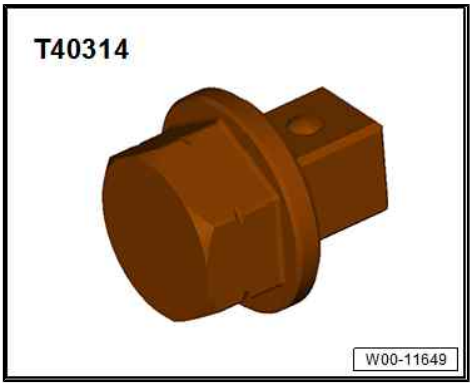
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Adapter - T40314-

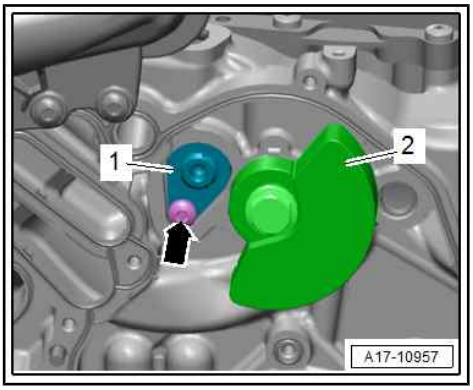


- M8 bolt

Removing

– Remove sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

– Remove bolt -arrow- for cover -1-.



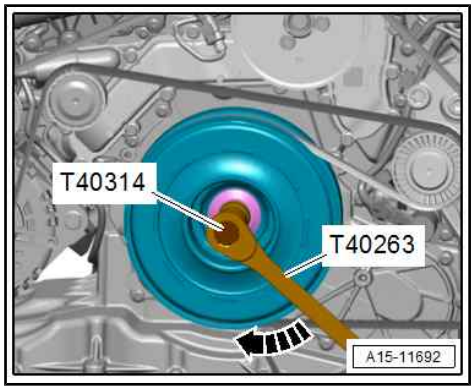
If the temperature regulator for engine oil cooler is covered by the balance weight -2- of the balance shaft, proceed as follows:

– Bring vibration damper into installation position and secure with bolt.

Caution

Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

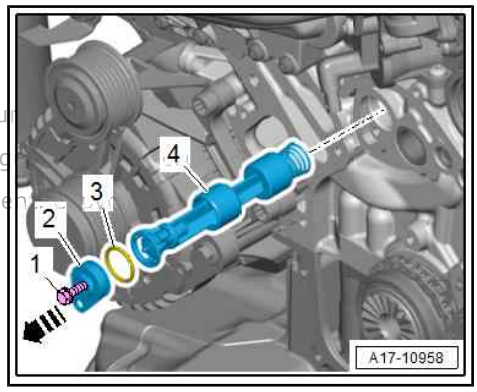
- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***



– Use wrench, 21 mm - T40263- and adapter - T40314- to turn crankshaft until temperature regulator for engine oil cooler is accessible (illustration shows vehicle with alternator).

– To remove cover -2-, screw an M8 bolt -item 1- into thread in cover and pull out cover by lifting bolt -arrow-.

– Pull out temperature regulator -4- for engine oil cooler.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew O-ring -3- after removal.

– Install sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ page 33 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - engine oil cooler”, page 170

3 Crankcase breather

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system”, page 175

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing oil separator”, page 176

3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 10 Nm

2 - Cylinder head cover
- ❑ Illustration shows aluminium version

3 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - Oil separator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 176

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 10 Nm

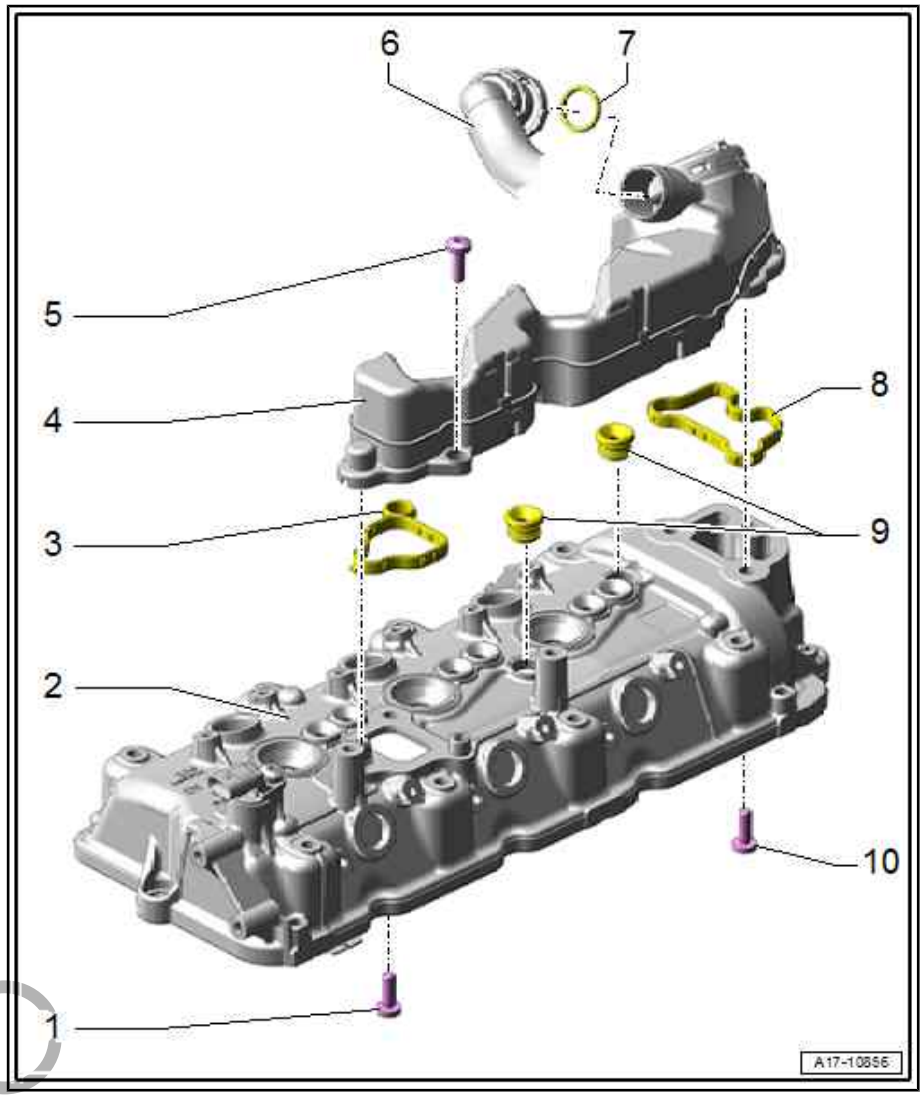
6 - Hose
- ❑ For crankcase breather
- ❑ To hose connection

7 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

8 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Seals
- ❑ Renew after removing

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 10 Nm



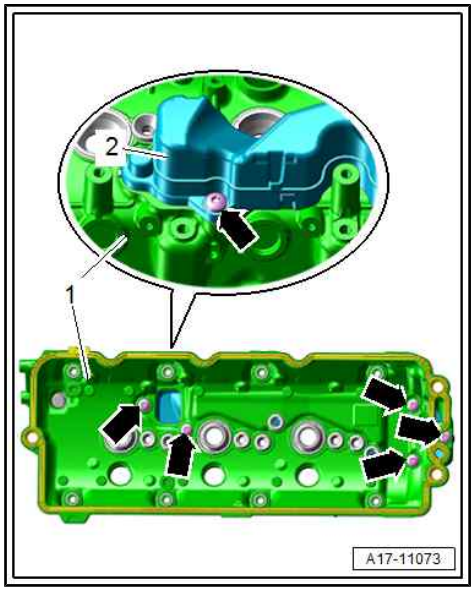
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing oil separator

Removing

– Remove cylinder head cover (right-side) ⇒ page 121 .

– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach oil separator -2- from cylinder head cover -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew gaskets/seals after removing.

– Install cylinder head cover (right-side) ⇒ page 121 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system”, page 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Oil filter/oil pressure switches

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - oil filter”, page 177

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing oil filter housing”, page 178

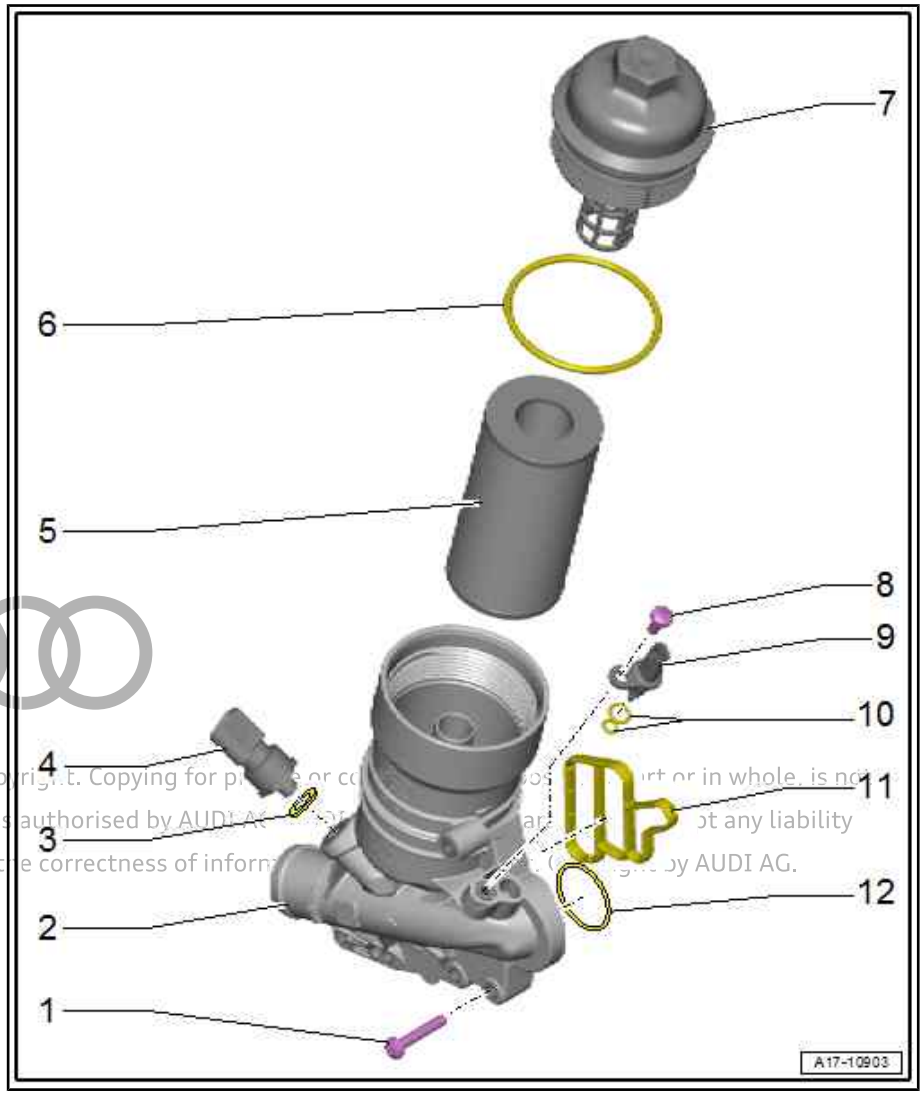
⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing oil pressure sender G10 ”, page 179

⇒ “4.4 Checking oil pressure”, page 180

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428 ”, page 180

⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 G664 ”, page 181

4.1 Exploded view - oil filter



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 178

2 - Oil filter housing

- ❑ Different versions available ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178
- ❑ Renew after removing

3 - Seal

- ❑ Permanently attached to oil pressure sender; not available as a replacement part

4 - Oil pressure sender - G10-

- ❑ Checking ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 179
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3 Nm +90°

5 - Oil filter element

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

6 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

7 - Sealing cap

- ❑ With oil filter bypass valve
- ❑ 25 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Sealing plug or connection

- ❑ Vehicles without electric compressor: sealing plug
- ❑ Vehicles with electric compressor: connection ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - O-rings

- ❑ Renew after removing

11 - Gasket

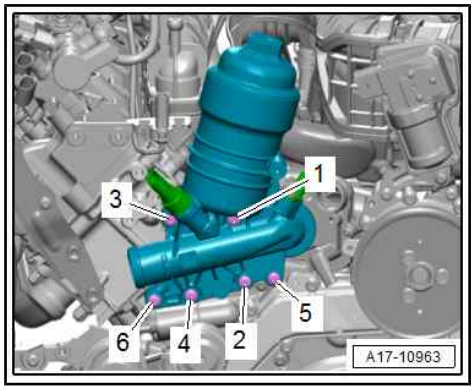
- ❑ Renew after removing

12 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

Oil filter housing - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts in the sequence -1 ... 6- to 9 Nm.



4.2 Removing and installing oil filter housing

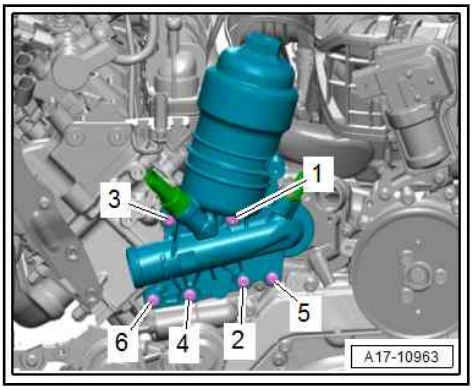
Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches; Removing and installing oil filter housing .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slacken and remove bolts in the sequence: -6 ... 1-.

– Press lines slightly towards front and detach oil filter housing.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Renew gasket and O-ring after removal.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Install coolant pipe (front) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

– Install oil filter element ⇒ page 163 .

Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fill up with coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches; Removing and installing oil filter housing

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Oil filter housing - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 178

4.3 Removing and installing oil pressure sender - G10-

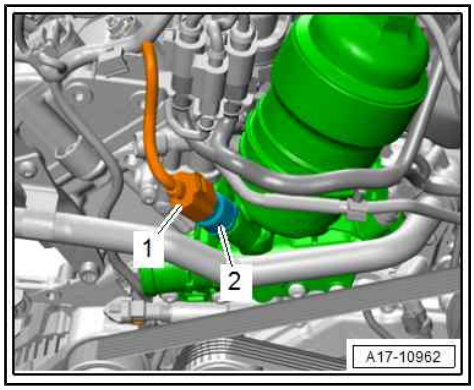
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Socket (24 mm) - T40363- (not illustrated)

Procedure

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches ; Removing and installing oil pressure sender - G10- .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping engine oil.
– Remove oil pressure sender - G10- -item 2-.
– Renew seal after removing.
– Insert new oil pressure sender - G10- into cylinder head immediately to avoid loss of engine oil.



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check oil level ⇒ page 163 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches ; Removing and installing oil pressure sender - G10-

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - oil filter”, page 177

4.4 Checking oil pressure

When checking oil pressure, refer to ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .
– Select and start `Diagnosis`.
– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

◆ `Drive train` (display depends on model)
◆ `Select engine code and engine` (display depends on model)
◆ `0001 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems` or `Systems with diagnostic capability`
◆ `0001 - Engine electronics`
◆ `0001 - Engine electronics, functions`
◆ `0001 - Subsystems, background conditions`
◆ `Oil pressure check`

– Start selected program and follow instructions shown on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

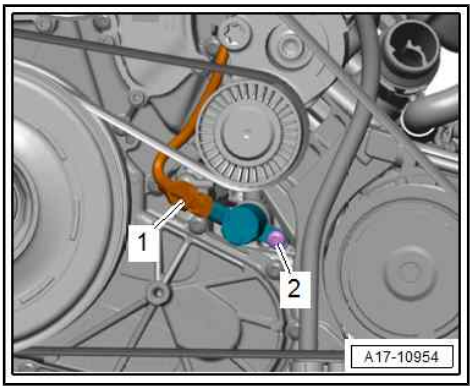
4.5 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control - N428-

Procedure

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches; Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control - N428- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping engine oil.
– Unscrew bolt -2- and remove valve for oil pressure control - N428- . (Illustration shows vehicle with alternator.)
– Renew O-ring after removal.
– To avoid loss of engine oil, insert new valve for oil pressure control - N428- immediately.



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check oil level ⇒ page 163 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches; Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control - N428-

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump”, page 159
◆ ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

4.6 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “4.6.1 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 G664 - vehicles with alternator”, page 181

⇒ “4.6.2 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 G664 - vehicles with starter-alternator”, page 182

⇒ “4.6.3 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 G664 - vehicles with electric compressor”, page 183

4.6.1 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664- - vehicles with alternator

Procedure

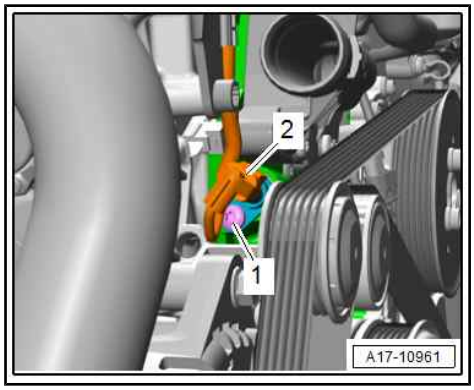
– Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

Caution

Oil will escape through mounting hole for oil temperature sender.

- ***Lay a cloth under the mounting hole to catch escaping engine oil or close the mounting hole using a clean plug from the engine bung set - VAS 6122- .***



– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove oil temperature sender 2 - G664- .

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew O-ring after removal.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 21
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

4.6.2 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664- - vehicles with starter-alternator

Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches ; Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664- .

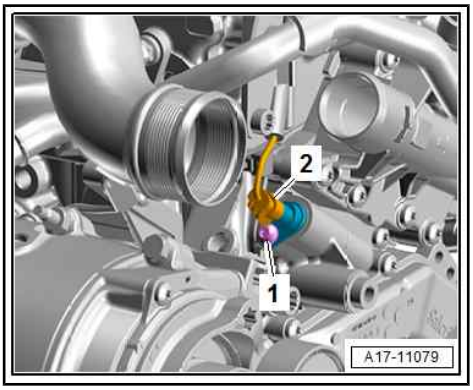
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

Caution

Oil will escape through mounting hole for oil temperature sender.

- *Lay a cloth under the mounting hole to catch escaping engine oil or close the mounting hole using a clean plug from the engine bung set - VAS 6122- .*



– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove oil temperature sender 2 - G664- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew O-ring after removal.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches ; Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)”, page 33
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

4.6.3 Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664- - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 17 ; Oil filter/oil pressure switches; Removing and installing oil temperature sender 2 - G664- .

19 – Cooling

1 Cooling system/coolant

⇒ “1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses”, page 184

⇒ “1.2 Checking cooling system for leaks”, page 184

⇒ “1.3 Draining and filling cooling system”, page 187

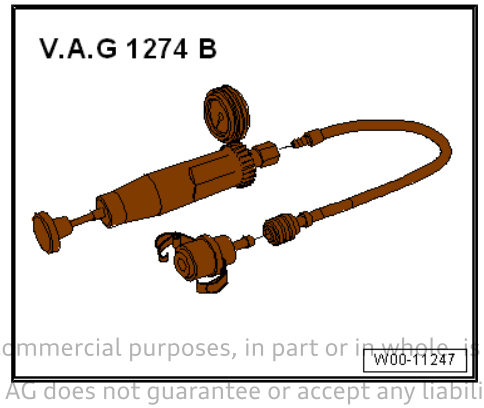
1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail); Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Connection diagram - coolant hoses .

1.2 Checking cooling system for leaks

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Cooling system tester - V.A.G 1274 B-

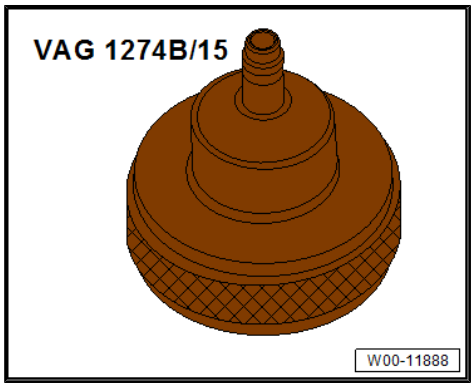


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

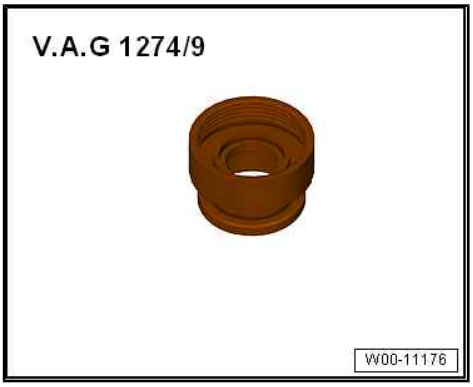
- Adapter for cooling system tester - V.A.G 1274/8-



- Cooling system tester adapter - V.A.G 1274B/15- for filler cap (version 1)



- Cooling system tester adapter - V.A.G 1274/9- for filler cap (version 2)



- Safety goggles
- Protective gloves

Procedure

- Engine must be warm.

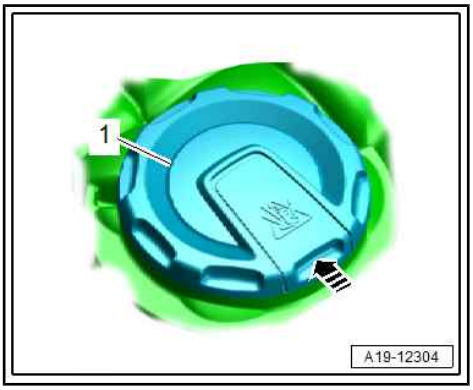
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Checking cooling system for leaks .

WARNING

Risk of scalding as hot coolant can escape.

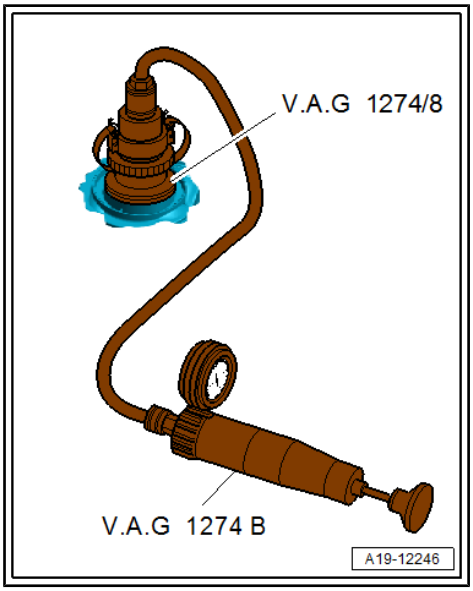
- ***Observe safety precautions ⇒ page 3 .***

– Release fastener -arrow- (if necessary) and open filler cap -1- on coolant expansion tank.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fit cooling system tester - V.A.G 1274 B- with adapter - V.A.G 1274/8- onto coolant expansion tank.
– Using hand pump on cooling system tester, build up a pressure of approx. 1.0 bar.
• The pressure should not drop more than 0.2 bar within 10 minutes.
– If the pressure drops more than 0.2 bar, locate leak and eliminate fault.



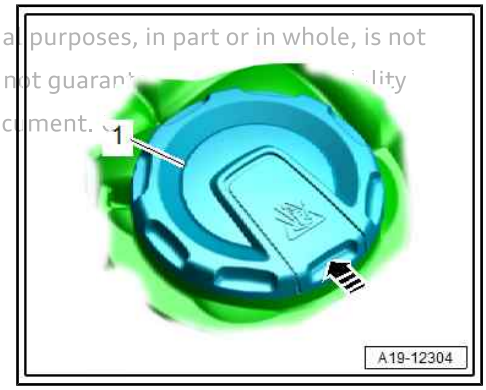
Note

The drop in pressure of 0.2 bar within 10 minutes is caused by the decrease in coolant temperature. The colder the engine is, the less the pressure will fall. If necessary, check again when the engine is cold.

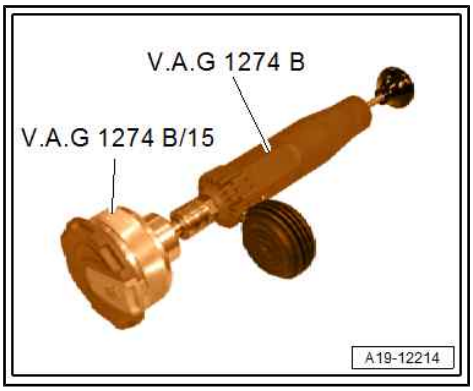
Checking pressure relief valve in filler cap

Filler cap (version 1):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



– Fit cooling system tester - V.A.G 1274 B- with adapter - V.A.G 1274 B/15- onto filler cap.
– Using hand pump on cooling system tester, build up a pressure of approx. 2 bar.



Blue filler cap

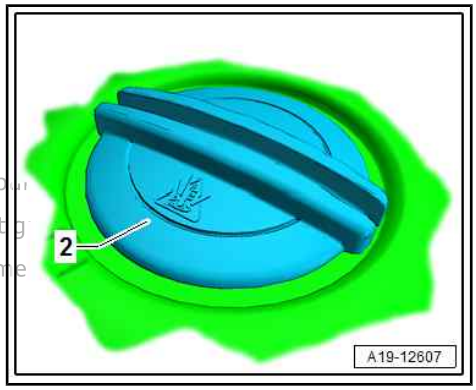
• The pressure must be reduced to 1.6 ... 1.4 bar and kept at this level.
– Renew filler cap if pressure relief valve does not react as described.

Black filler cap

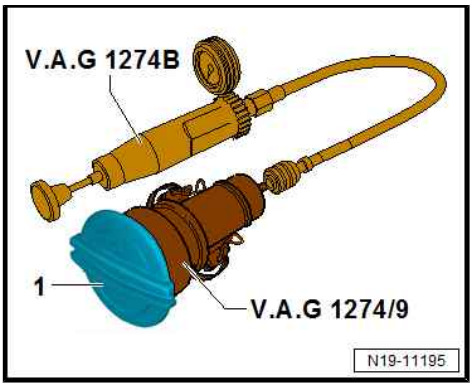
• The pressure must be reduced to 1.8 ... 1.6 bar and kept at this level.
– Renew filler cap if pressure relief valve does not react as described.

Filler cap (version 2):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p...
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g...
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume...



– Fit cooling system tester - V.A.G 1274 B- with adapter - V.A.G 1274/9- onto filler cap.
– Build up pressure with hand pump on cooling system tester.



Blue filler cap

- The pressure relief valve should open at a pressure of 1.4 ... 1.6 bar.

– Renew filler cap if pressure relief valve does not react as described.

Black filler cap:

- The pressure relief valve should open at a pressure of 1.6 ... 1.8 bar.

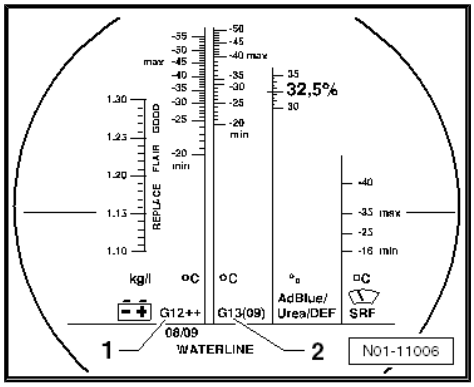
– Renew filler cap if pressure relief valve does not react as described.

1.3 Draining and filling cooling system

Coolant specifications

Caution

To ensure optimal corrosion protection, only distilled water may be mixed with coolant additives.



Note

- *The effectiveness of the coolant is greatly influenced by the quality of the water with which it is mixed. Because water may contain different substances depending on the country or even the region, the water quality to be used for cooling systems has been specified. Distilled water meets all the requirements and is therefore recommended for use when topping up or filling up with coolant.*
- *Use only coolant additives listed in the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) . If you use other coolant additives, this can significantly impair in particular the corrosion protection effect. The resulting damage could lead to loss of coolant and consequently to serious damage to the power unit.*
- *Coolant with the recommended mixture ratio prevents frost and corrosion damage and stops scaling. At the same time it raises the boiling point of the fluid in the system. For this reason the cooling system must be filled all year round with the correct coolant additive.*
- *Because of its high boiling point, the coolant improves power unit reliability under heavy loads, particularly in countries with tropical climates.*
- *The refractometer - T10007A- MUST be used to determine the current level of frost protection.*
- *The mixture must guarantee frost protection down to at least -25 °C (in countries with arctic climate: down to -36 °C). The amount of antifreeze should only be increased if greater frost protection is required in very cold climates. This must only be down to -48 °C, however, as otherwise the cooling efficiency of the coolant is impaired.*
- *The coolant concentration must not be reduced by adding water even in warmer seasons and in warmer countries. Frost protection must be provided to at least -25 °C.*
- *Read off the level of frost protection on the scale for the relevant coolant additive.*
- *The temperature indicated on the refractometer - T10007A- corresponds to the temperature at which the first ice crystals can form in the coolant.*
- *Do not reuse coolant.*
- *Only use water/coolant additive as a lubricant for coolant hoses.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Draining and filling cooling system

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

2 Coolant pump/thermostat assembly

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump”, page 189

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - electric coolant pump”, page 190

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - thermostat”, page 190

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - coolant temperature senders”, page 193

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing electric coolant pump”, page 193

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing coolant pump”, page 193

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing thermostat”, page 196

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing thermostat housing”, page 196

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing coolant temperature sender G62 ”, page 196

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694 ”, page 197

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing coolant valves”, page 198

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Aluminium or steel bolts, depending on version
- ❑ Renew aluminium bolts after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 190

2 - Bolt

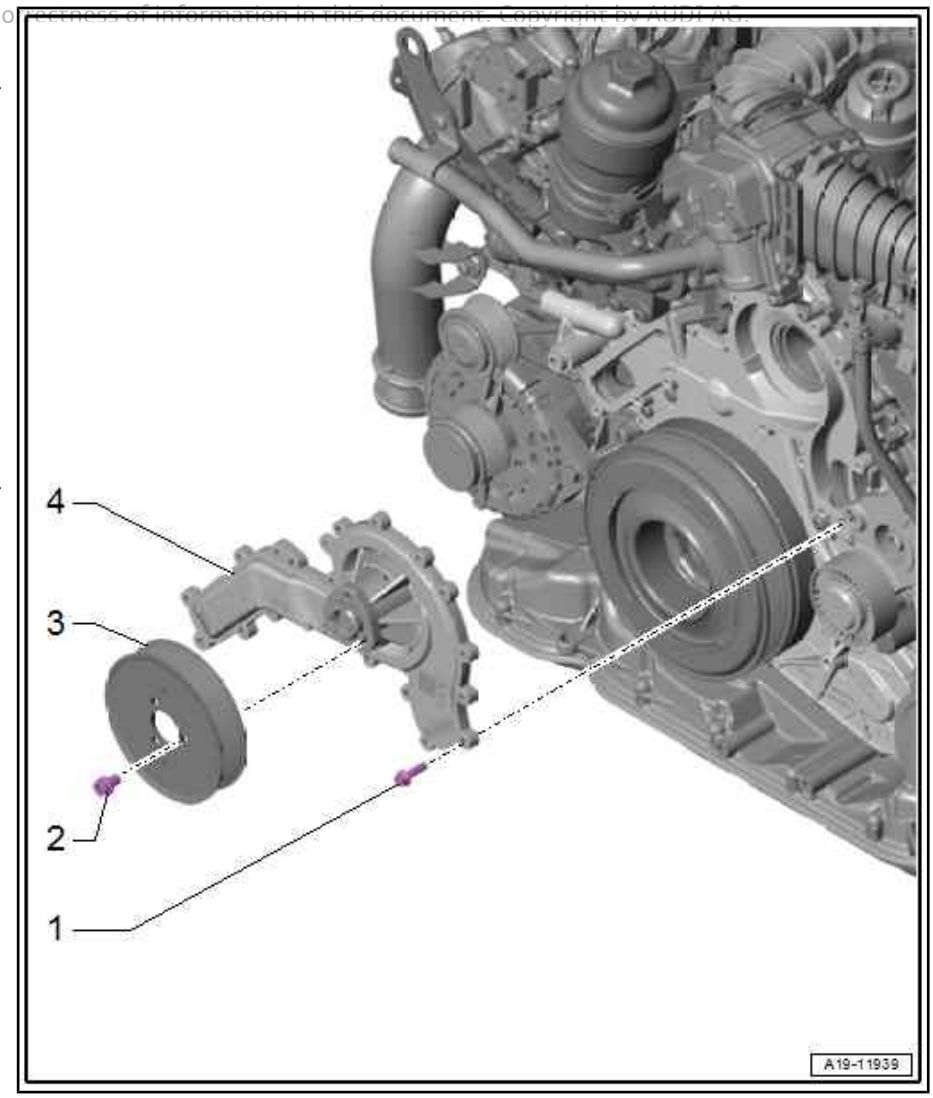
- ❑ 23 Nm

3 - Poly V-belt pulley for coolant pump

- ❑ Installation position: marking “vorne” (front) faces in direction of travel

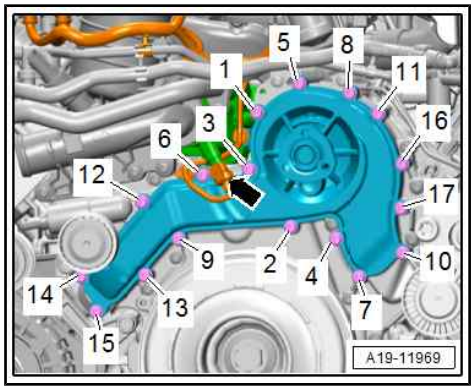
4 - Coolant pump

- ❑ It is only permissible to re-install the coolant pump if the gasket is still secured to the housing in all areas; check this with your hand
- ❑ Removing and installing



⇒ page 193

Coolant pump - tightening torque and sequence



A - Steel bolts:

– Tighten steel bolts in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 17-	9 Nm

B - Aluminium bolts:

Note

After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

– Tighten aluminium bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 … 17-	3 Nm
2.	-1 … 17-	Turn 90° further

2.2 Exploded view - electric coolant pump

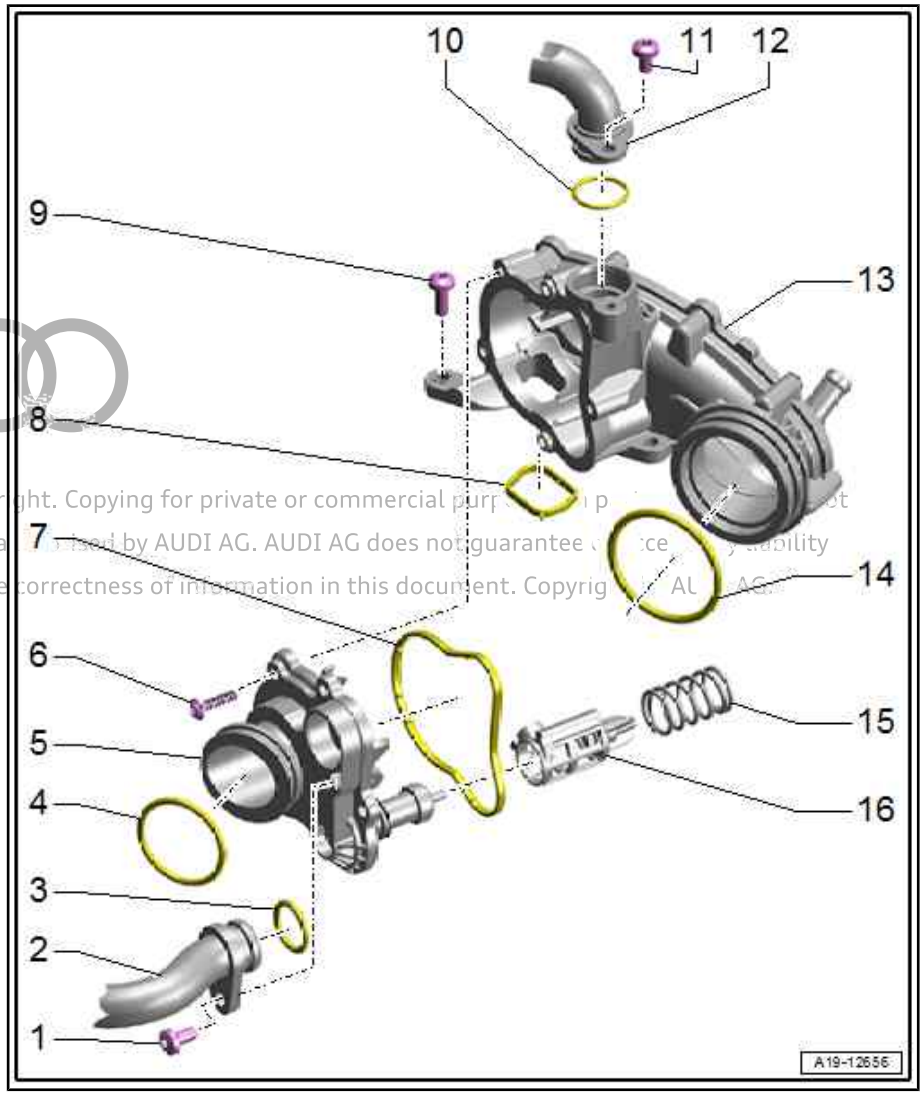
All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Exploded view - electric coolant pump .

2.3 Exploded view - thermostat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Exploded view - thermostat ⇒ page 190
- Exploded view - coolant shut-off valve ⇒ page 192

Exploded view - thermostat



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

2 - Coolant pipe (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

3 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Thermostat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 5.5 Nm

7 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

8 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

12 - Coolant pipe (top right)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

13 - Thermostat housing

- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

14 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

15 - Compression spring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing thermostat”, page 196

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Valve

- ❑ For coolant flap
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing thermostat”, page 196

Exploded view - coolant shut-off valve

1 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Coolant connection

4 - Coolant hose

5 - Bolt

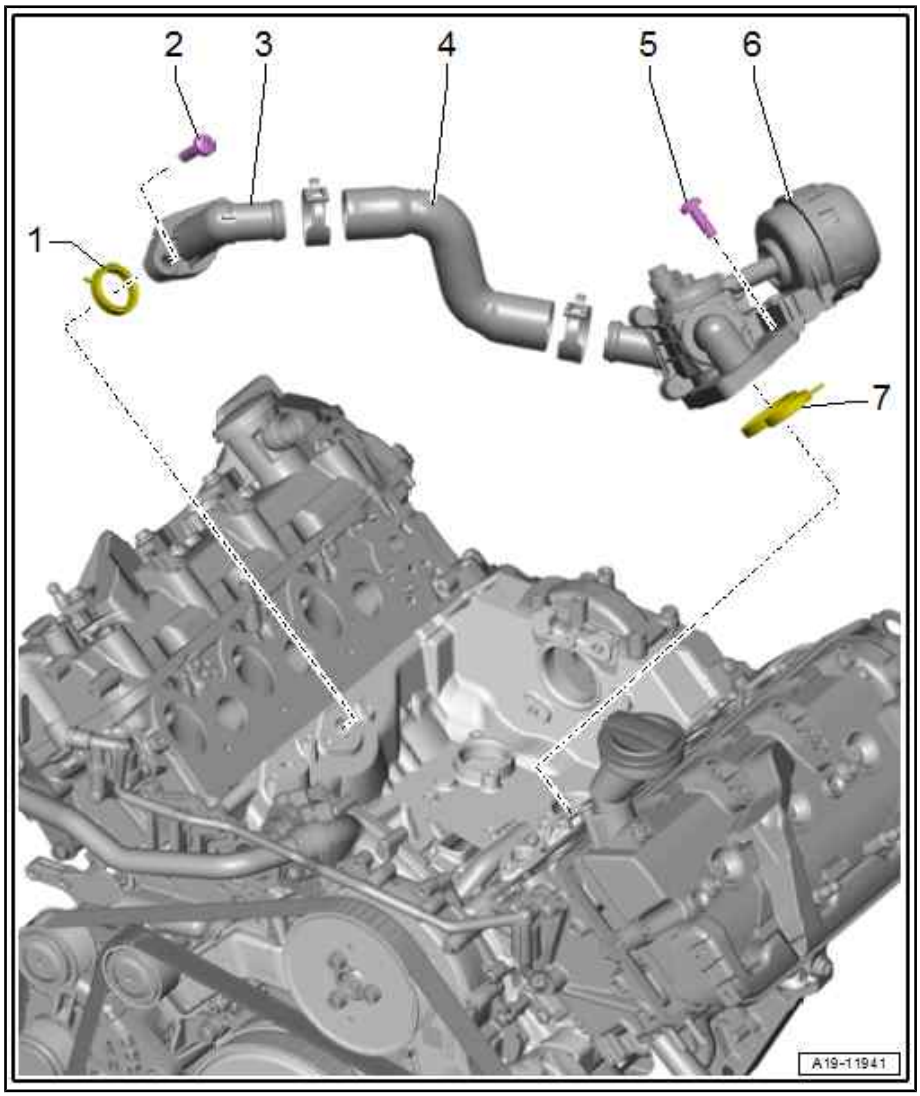
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Coolant shut-off valve

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198

7 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Exploded view - coolant temperature senders

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

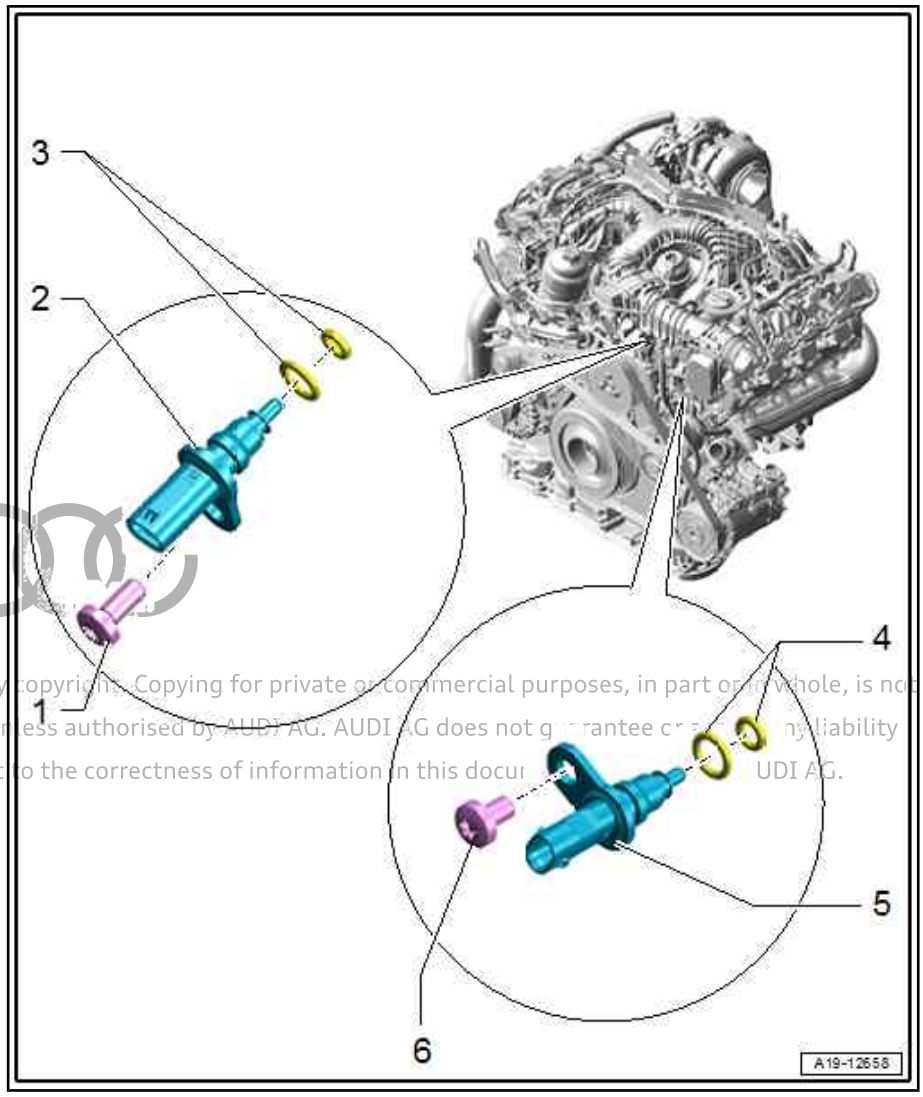
2 - Coolant temperature sender - G62-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

3 - O-rings
- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - O-rings
- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 197

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

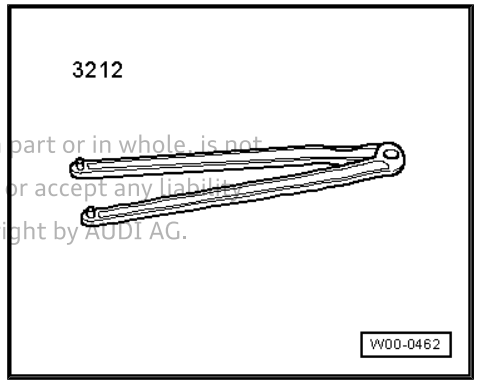
2.5 Removing and installing electric coolant pump

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing electric coolant pump .

2.6 Removing and installing coolant pump

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pin wrench - 3212-

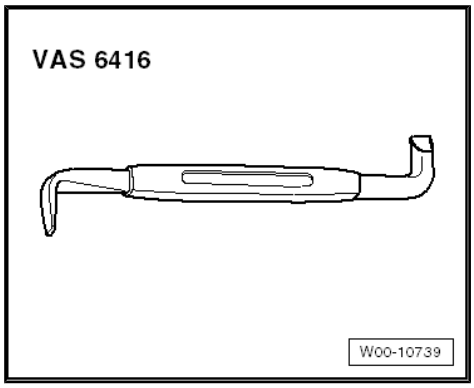


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Coolant collecting system - VAS 5014- or drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-



- Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



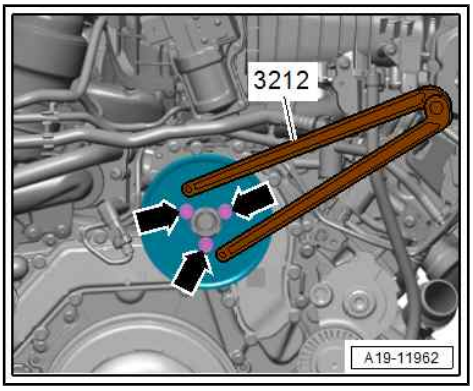
- Socket Torx T30 - T10405-



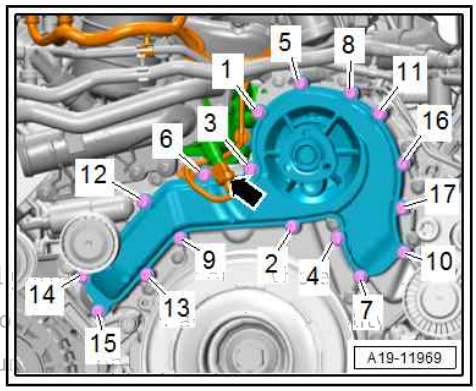
Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing coolant pump .

– Drain coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .
– Remove poly V-belt from coolant pump pulley ⇒ page 22 .
– Remove bolts for coolant pump pulley -arrows- (counterhold with pin wrench - 3212-).

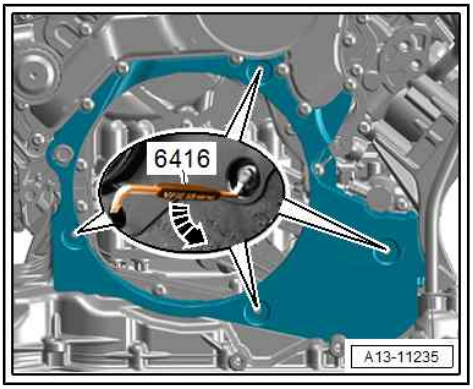


– Place collector tank from coolant collecting system -VAS 5014- or drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208- underneath.
– Loosen bolts in the sequence -17 ... 1-.
– Remove bolts and detach coolant pump.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– If necessary, remove spreader rivets -arrow- using angle driver for cross-head screws - VAS 6416- , detach noise insulation and press it to one side.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.*
- *Do not reuse coolant.*

– Clean sealing surface.
– Install poly V-belt ⇒ page 22 .
– Fill up with coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing coolant pump .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ““Coolant pump - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 190
- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump”, page 189

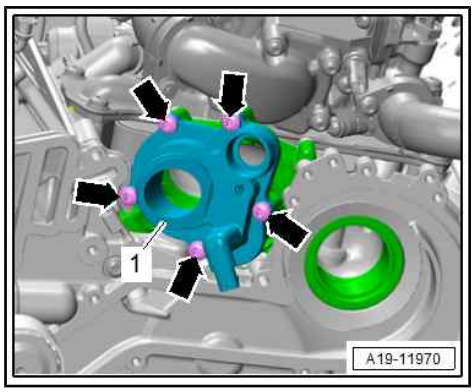
2.7 Removing and installing thermostat

Removing

– Remove oil filter housing ⇒ page 178 .

– Remove coolant pump ⇒ page 193 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach thermostat -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew gasket and O-ring after removal.

– Install coolant pump ⇒ page 193 .

– Install oil filter housing ⇒ page 178 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump”, page 189

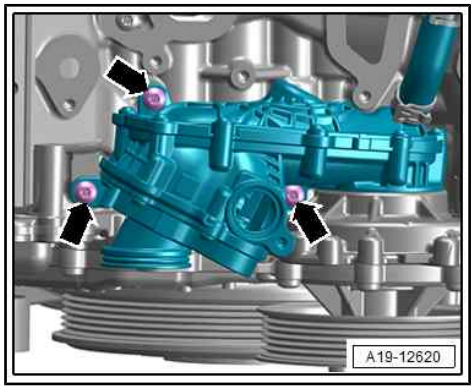
2.8 Removing and installing thermostat housing

Removing

– Remove engine oil cooler ⇒ page 171 .

– Remove oil filter housing ⇒ page 178 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows-, pull thermostat housing towards rear and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

♦ *Renew gasket and O-rings after removal.*

♦ *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Install oil filter housing ⇒ page 178 .

– Install engine oil cooler ⇒ page 171 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - thermostat”, page 190

♦ ⇒ Fig. ““Engine oil cooler - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 171

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing coolant temperature sender - G62-

Procedure

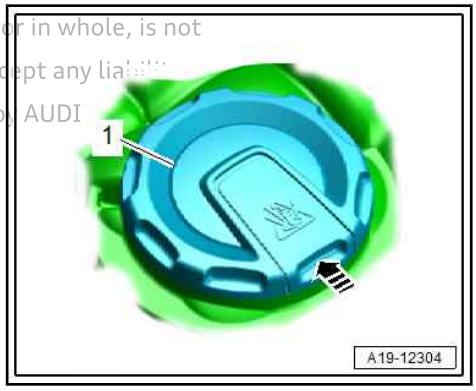
• Engine cold.

– Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr.

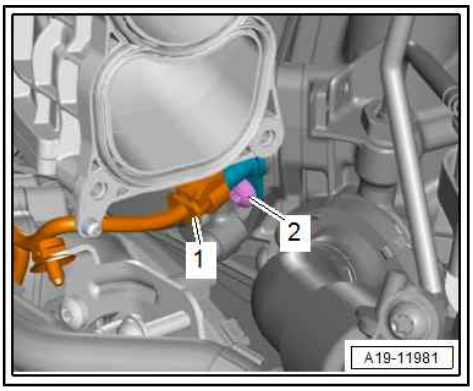
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing coolant temperature sender - G62- .

– Release fastener -arrow- (if necessary) and open filler cap -1- on coolant expansion tank.
– Remove intake manifold flap motor - V157- ⇒ page 234 .



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Unscrew bolt -2- and pull off coolant temperature sender - G62- .
– Renew O-rings after removing.
– To avoid loss of coolant, insert new coolant temperature sender - G62- immediately.



Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install intake manifold flap motor - V157- ⇒ page 234 .
– Check coolant level ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .
– Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing coolant temperature sender - G62- .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system”, page 312

2.10 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694-

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694 - vehicles without electric compressor”, page 197

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694 - vehicles with electric compressor”, page 198

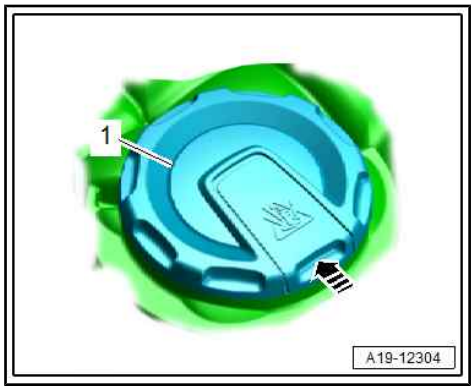
2.10.1 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- - vehicles without electric compressor

Procedure

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- .

- Engine cold.

– Release fastener -arrow- (if necessary) and open filler cap -1- on coolant expansion tank.



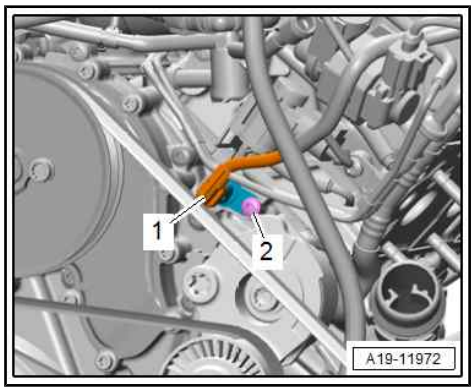
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- .

– Renew O-rings after removing.

– To avoid loss of coolant, insert new temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- immediately.



Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Check coolant level ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - coolant temperature senders”, page 193

2.10.2 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing coolant valves

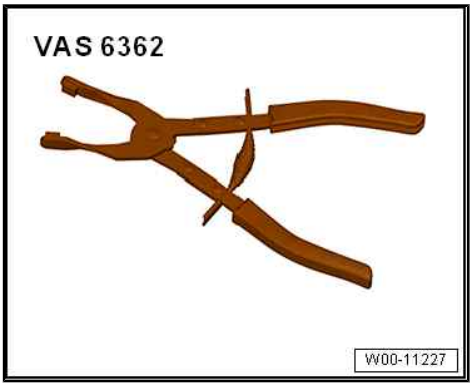
⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing coolant shut-off valve”, page 198

⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing electric coolant valves”, page 199

2.11.1 Removing and installing coolant shut-off valve

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



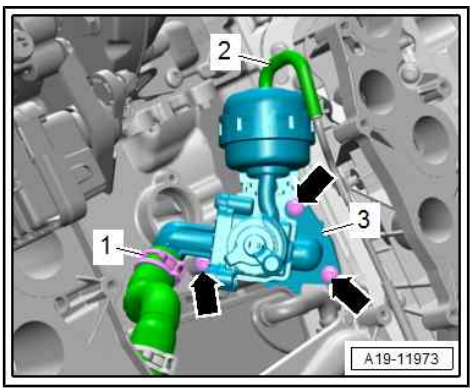
Removing

– Remove exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front) ⇒ page 314 .

– Disconnect vacuum hose -2-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach shut-off valve -3-.

– Release hose clip -1- and detach coolant hose.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

♦ *Renew gasket after removing.*

♦ *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Install exhaust gas recirculation cooler ⇒ page 314 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - thermostat", page 190

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11.2 Removing and installing electric coolant valves

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pump/thermostat assembly; Removing and installing coolant valves .

3 Coolant pipes

All procedures and components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Radiator/radiator fans

All procedures and components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

21 – Turbocharging/supercharging

1 Turbocharger

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger”, page 202

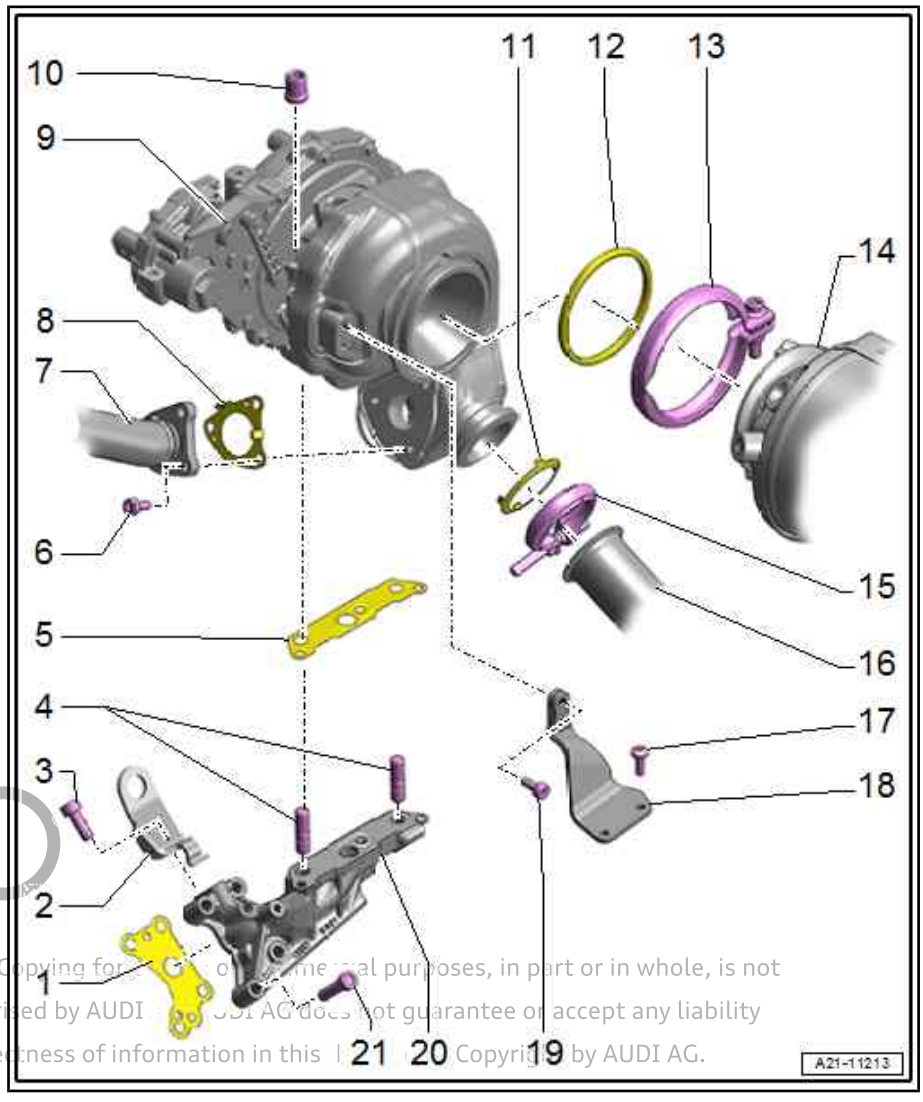
⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing turbocharger”, page 206

1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger

♦ Exploded view - turbocharger, part I ⇒ page 202

♦ Exploded view - turbocharger, part II ⇒ page 203

Exploded view - turbocharger, part I



1 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

2 - Engine lifting eye

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 23 Nm

4 - Studs
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Must always be renewed if nuts are loosened
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 205

5 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

7 - Pipe
- ❑ For exhaust gas recirculation

8 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Turbocharger
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 206
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

10 - Nut
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat thread with high-temperature paste ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 205

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

12 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

13 - Screw-type clip

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 8 (page 293)

14 - Emission control module

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 292

15 - Screw-type clip

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

16 - Exhaust manifold

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 206

18 - Bracket

- ❑ For turbocharger

19 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 205

20 - Bracket

- ❑ For turbocharger

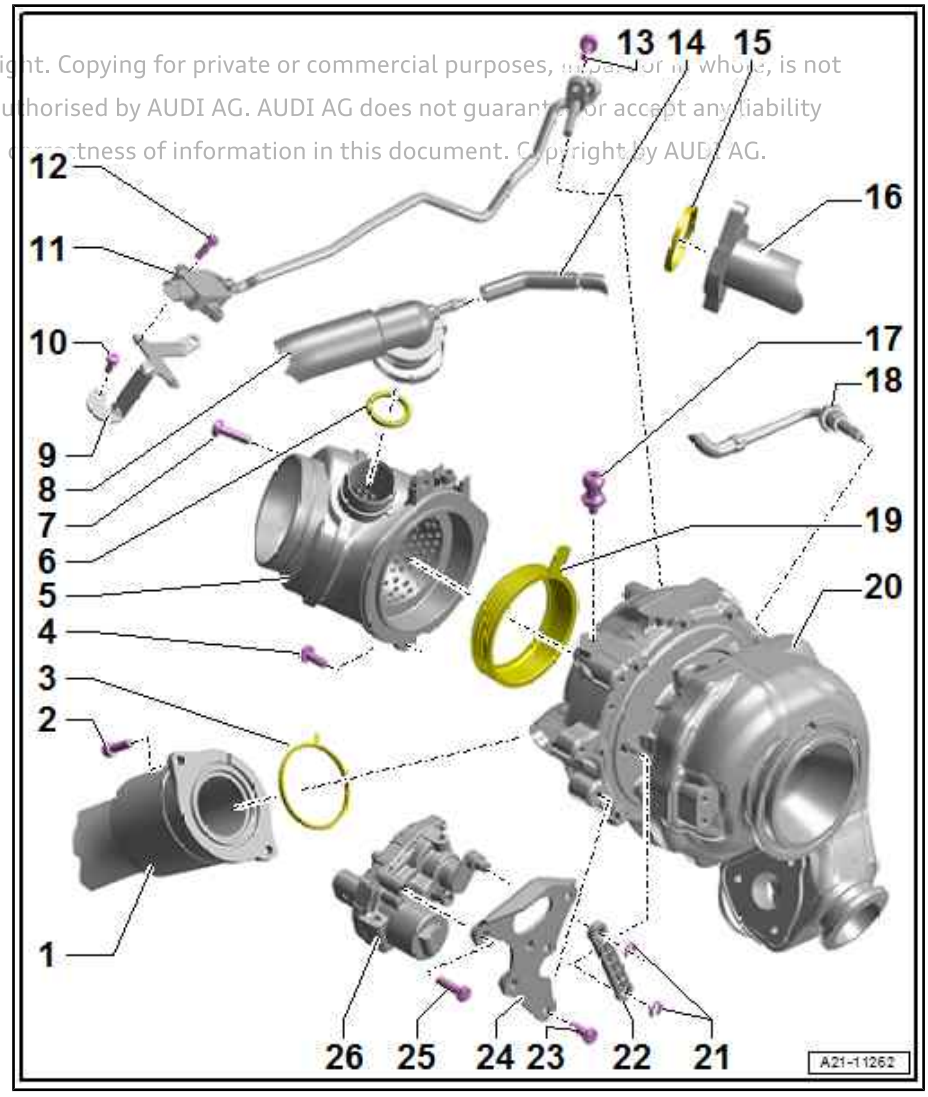
21 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 206

Exploded view - turbocharger, part II

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Air pipe

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Exploded view - charge air system

3 - Seal

- ❑ Renew if damaged

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Resonator

6 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation system; Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system

8 - Hose

- ❑ For crankcase breather

9 - Bracket

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

Aluminium cylinder head cover

- ❑ 4 Nm

Plastic cylinder head cover

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

11 - Sender 1 for turbocharger speed - G688-

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Turbocharger; Removing and installing sender 1 for turbocharger speed - G688-

12 - Bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ 5 Nm

13 - Bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ 5.5 Nm

14 - Vacuum hose

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

15 - Seal

- ❑ Renew if damaged

16 - Pipe

- ❑ For exhaust gas recirculation

17 - Ball stud

- ❑ For engine cover panel
- ❑ 5 Nm

18 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 304

19 - Seal

- ❑ Renew if damaged

20 - Turbocharger

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 206
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

21 - Securing clips

- ❑ For operating rod

22 - Operating rod

23 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

24 - Bracket

25 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

26 - Control unit for turbocharger 1 - J724-

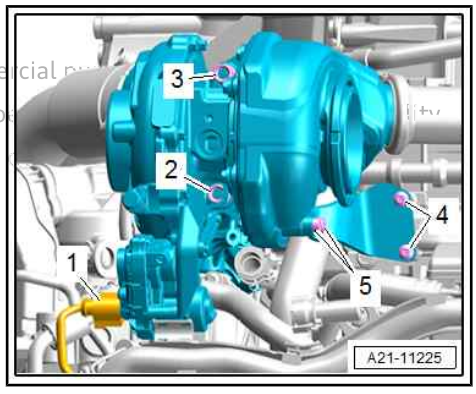
- ❑ Not supplied separately

Turbocharger - tightening torque and sequence

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

Note

Renew studs and nuts after removing.



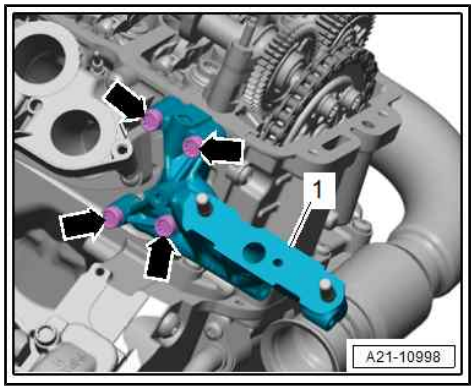
– Tighten bolts and nuts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts/nuts	Torque for tightening/tightening further
1.	Studs for nuts -2, 3-	14 Nm
2.	-2, 3-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
3.	-2, 3-	12 Nm
4.	-2, 3-	50 Nm
5.	-2, 3-	Turn 90° further
6.	-4, 5-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
7.	-4-	9 Nm
8.	-5-	9 Nm

Bracket -1- for turbocharger - tightening torque

– Tighten bolts in stages as follows:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-arrows-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-arrows-	15 Nm
3.	-arrows-	28 Nm 25 Nm when using insert tool XZN 10 -V.A.G 1331/15-



1.2 Removing and installing turbocharger

Caution

If the turbocharger has suffered mechanical damage (e.g. damaged compressor wheel), it is not sufficient merely to fit a new turbocharger. The following work must be performed in order to avoid further damage:

- *Check air cleaner housing, air filter element and air hoses for dirt and foreign particles.*
- *Check the entire charge air system (including the charge air cooler) for foreign matter.*
- *If foreign matter is found in the charge air system, clean all relevant ducts and hoses and renew charge air cooler if necessary.*

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

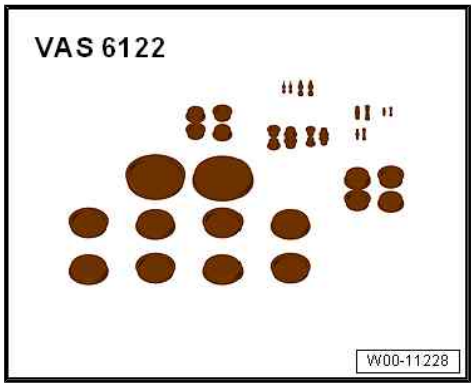
- *Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .*

Note:

Mechanical faults on the turbocharger can be caused by foreign matter from the exhaust manifold.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Turbocharger; Removing and installing turbocharger .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles without electric compressor:

– Remove coolant pipe (rear) for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

– Remove coolant pipe (top front) for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

Vehicles with electric compressor:

– Remove coolant pipe “1” for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

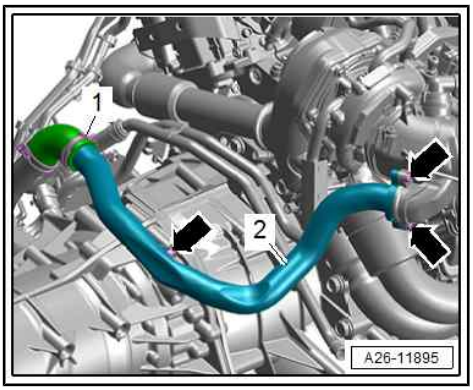
– Remove coolant pipe “3” for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exhaust gas recirculation pipe - version 1:

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

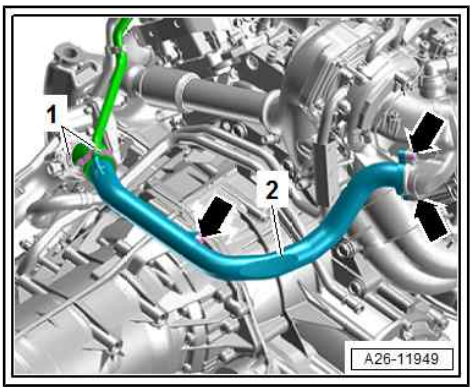
– Release hose clip -1- and detach exhaust gas recirculation pipe -2-.



Exhaust gas recirculation pipe - version 2:

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Release screw-type clips -1- and detach exhaust gas recirculation pipe -2-.

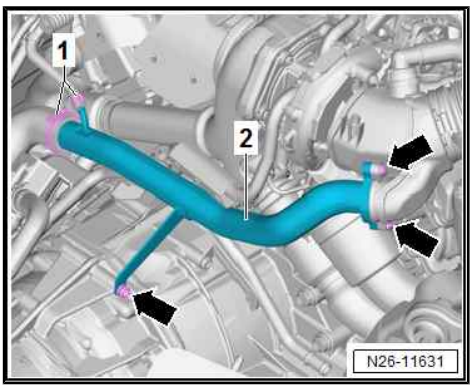


Exhaust gas recirculation pipe - version 3:

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

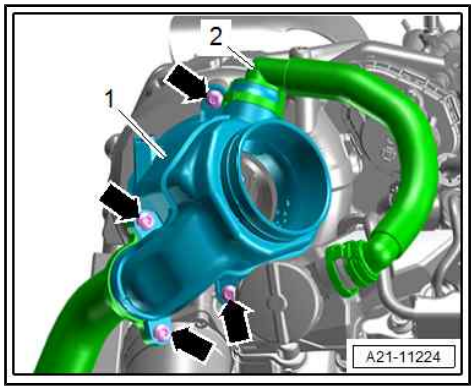
– Release hose clips -1- and disconnect exhaust gas recirculation hose.

– Detach exhaust gas recirculation pipe -2-.

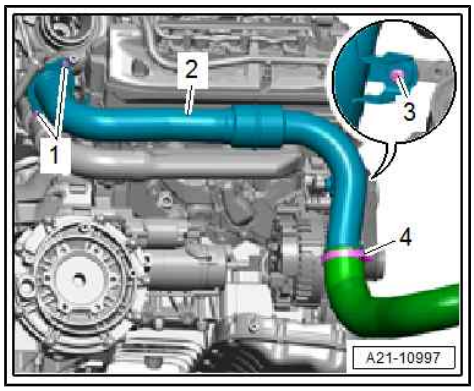


All versions (continued):

– If still fitted, disconnect crankcase breather hose -2- from resonator -1- (press release tabs on both sides to do so).

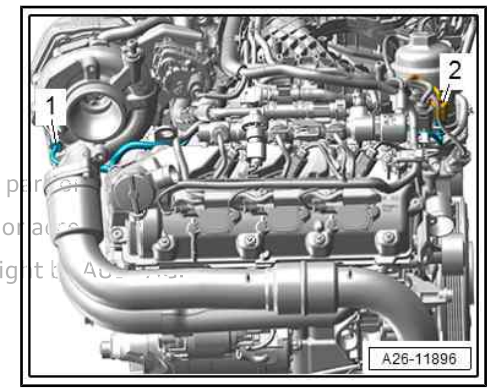


– Remove bolts -1- and pull air pipe -2- off turbocharger (leave in installation position). (Different versions depending on model.)

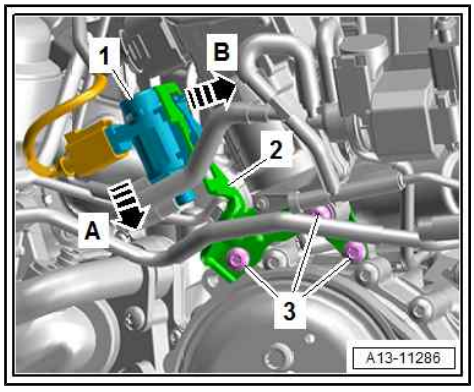


– Unscrew exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235- .

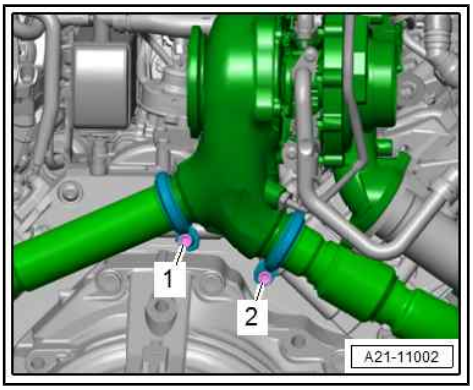
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig



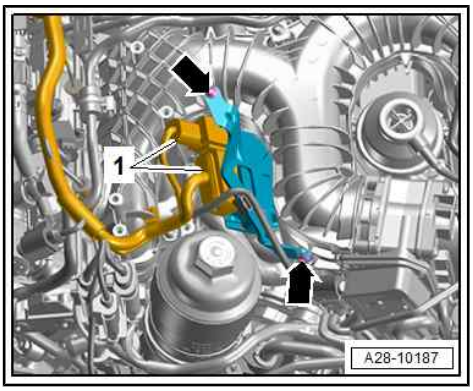
– If necessary, release catch -arrow B-, detach exhaust gas recirculation cooler changeover valve - N345- -item 1- from bracket -2- -arrow A- and press to one side.



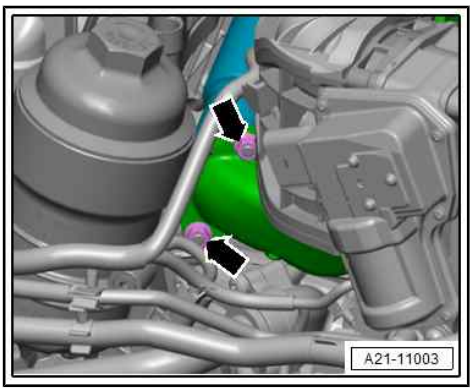
– Release clips -1, 2- and slide them onto exhaust manifold/turbocharger.



– Remove bolts -arrows- and move automatic glow period control unit - J179- to one side together with bracket.

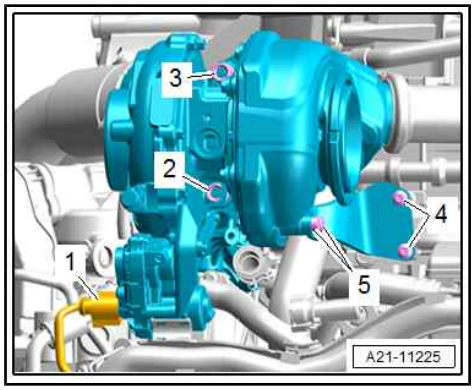


– Remove bolts -arrows- for exhaust gas recirculation pipe.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- for turbocharger 1 control unit - J724- .
– Slacken bolts -5- and remove bolts -4-.
– Press operating rod for turbocharger 1 control unit - J724- upwards and remove nuts -2, 3-.
– Remove turbocharger.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Renew seals, nuts and O-ring after removal.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *Fill turbocharger with engine oil at connection for oil supply line.*
- *After installing the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle for approx. 1 minute without pressing the accelerator to ensure that the turbocharger is supplied with oil.*

– Install coolant pipes ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Turbocharger; Removing and installing turbocharger .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger”, page 202
- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system”, page 312

2 Charge air system

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - charge air system”, page 211

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system”, page 211

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing charge air cooler”, page 212

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing charge pressure sender G31 ”, page 212

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing charge air temperature sender”, page 213

⇒ “2.6 Checking charge air system for leaks”, page 213

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - charge air system

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Exploded view - charge air system .

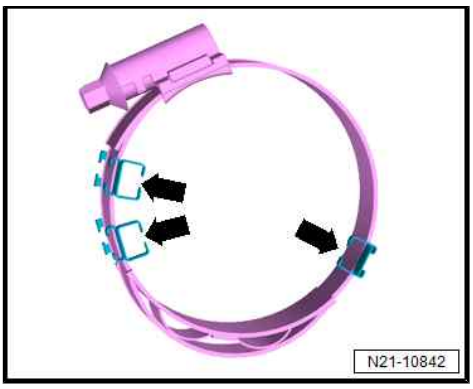
2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system

Note

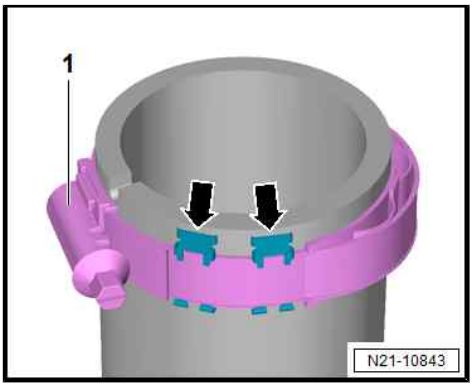
- *Hose connections and air pipes/hoses must be free of oil and grease prior to fitting.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *If using used hose clips to secure the air hoses at their connections, spray rust remover onto the worm threads before installing.*

Hose clips on pressure side are fitted with retaining hooks -arrows-.

- To disconnect air hose, hose clip must be loosened far enough.
- Hose clips which have been loosened can be re-used.



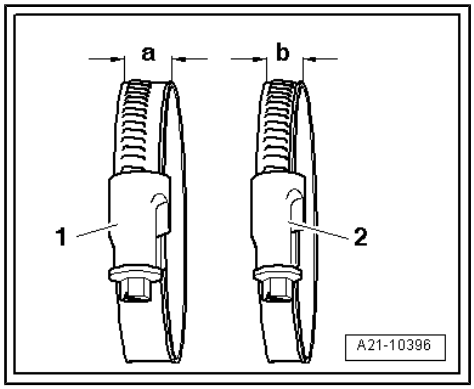
- Hose clip -1- with retaining hooks -arrows- must not be pulled off air hose.
- If a hose clip with retaining hooks is pulled off air hose, air hose must be renewed.
- New air hoses are supplied with hose clip fitted.



Tightening torque for

1 - Hose clip with width -a- = 12 mm: 5.5 Nm

2 - Hose clip with width -b- = 9 mm: 3.4 Nm



2.3 Removing and installing charge air cooler

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Removing and installing charge air cooler .

2.4 Removing and installing charge pressure sender - G31-

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing charge pressure sender G31 - vehicles without electric compressor”, page 212

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing charge pressure sender G31 - vehicles with electric compressor”, page 212

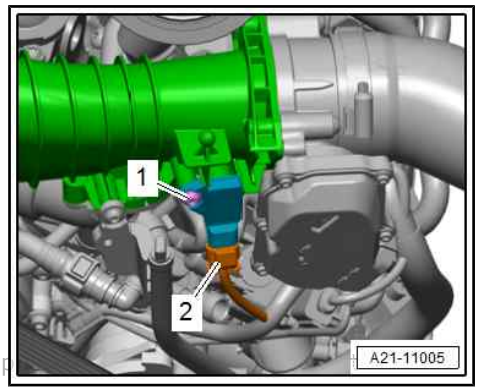
2.4.1 Removing and installing charge pressure sender - G31- - vehicles without electric compressor

Removing

– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove charge pressure sender - G31- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold”, page 222

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.2 Removing and installing charge pressure sender - G31- - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Removing and installing charge pressure sender - G31- .

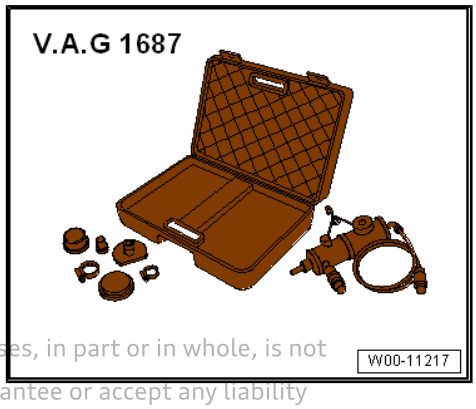
2.5 Removing and installing charge air temperature sender

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Removing and installing charge air temperature sender .

2.6 Checking charge air system for leaks

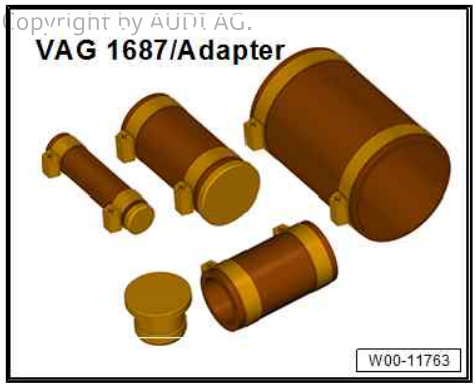
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester
- Charge air system tester - V.A.G 1687-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Adapters -V.A.G 1687/3-, -V.A.G 1687/10-, -V.A.G 1687/15-, -V.A.G 1687/18-2-



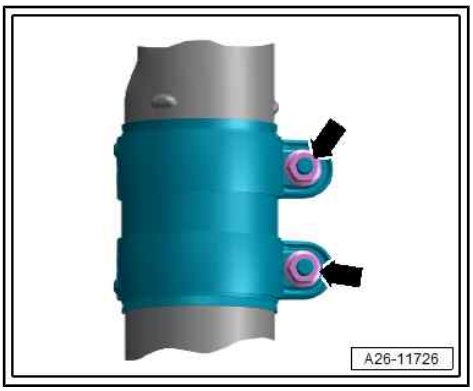
- Ultrasonic tester - V.A.G 1842-
- Leak detection spray (commercially available)

Procedure

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .

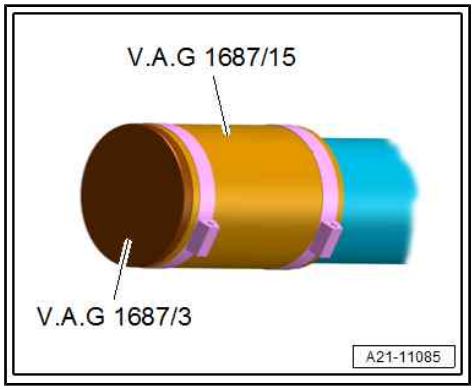
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Checking charge air system for leaks .

– Loosen bolted connections -arrows- and push clamp towards rear.
– Lower front exhaust pipe/trap catalytic converter slightly and detach clamp.
– Tie up front exhaust pipe/trap catalytic converter.



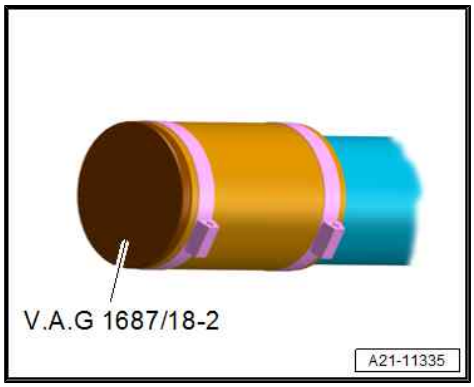
Version 1:

– Seal off front exhaust pipe/trap catalytic converter with adapters -V.A.G 1687/3- and -V.A.G 1687/15- .



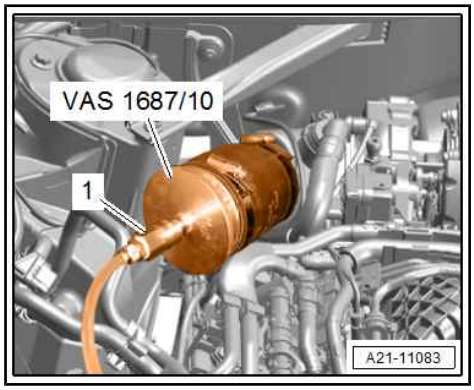
Version 2:

– Seal off trap catalytic converter with adapter -V.A.G 1687/18-2- .



Continued:

– Connect adapter -V.A.G 1687/10- to turbocharger.
– Connect hose -1- of charge air system tester -V.A.G 1687- to adapter.



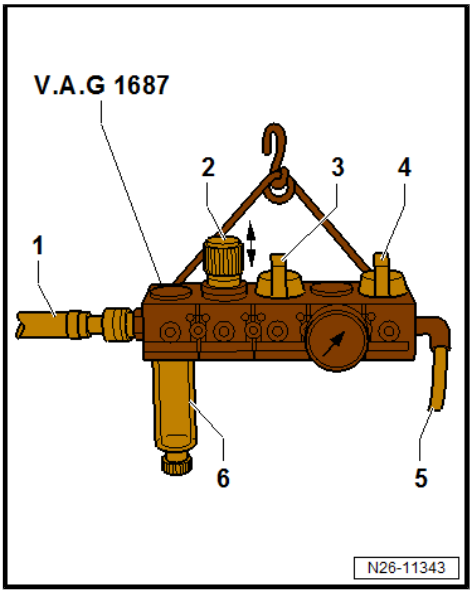
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Prepare charge air system tester - V.A.G 1687- as follows:

– Unscrew pressure control valve -2- completely and close valves -3- and -4-.

• Make sure knob is pulled out before turning pressure control valve -2-.

– Using a commercially available connection piece, connect charge air system tester - V.A.G 1687- to compressed air -1-.



Note

If there is water in sight glass, remove drain plug -6- and drain water.

– Open valve -3-.

Caution

Risk of damage if pressure is set too high.

- ***The pressure must not exceed 0.2 bar.***

– Adjust pressure to 0.2 bar via pressure control valve -2-.

– Open valve -4- and wait until test system is pressurised. If necessary, adjust pressure to 0.2 bar again.

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis`.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

- `Drive train` (display depends on model)
- `Select engine code and engine` (display depends on model)
- `0001 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems` or `Systems with diagnostic capability`
- `0001 - Engine electronics J623`
- `0001 - Subsystems, background conditions`
- `0001 - Check charge air system for leaks`
- `Carry out test`

– Check charge air system for audible leaks or leaks that can be felt with the hand; apply commercially available leak detection spray or use ultrasonic tester - V.A.G 1842- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *A small amount of air escapes through the valves and enters the engine. Therefore it is not possible to perform a pressure retention test.*
- *For operation of ultrasonic tester -V.A.G 1842- , refer to ⇒ Operating instructions .*
- *Release pressure in test circuit by detaching hose coupling from adapter before removing adapter.*

Assembling

Assembly is performed in reverse sequence; note the following:

Note

- *Renew seal and O-rings after removal.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Install engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Checking charge air system for leaks .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system”, page 211
- ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

23 – Mixture preparation - injection

1 Injection system

⇒ "1.1 Overview - fuel system", page 217

⇒ "1.2 Overview of fitting locations - injection system", page 217

⇒ "1.3 Filling and bleeding fuel system", page 217

⇒ "1.4 Checking fuel system for leaks", page 218

1.1 Overview - fuel system

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injection system; Overview - fuel system .

1.2 Overview of fitting locations - injection system

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injection system; Overview of fitting locations - injection system .

1.3 Filling and bleeding fuel system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

If components of the fuel system between the fuel tank and the high-pressure pump are removed or renewed, the fuel system must be bled.

> **Caution**
>
> *Running when dry causes irreparable damage to fuel pump.*
>
> - *Never allow fuel pump to run while it is empty.*

Proceed as follows to fill high-pressure pump with fuel.

- Check fuel gauge in instrument cluster; fuel gauge needle must indicate that fuel is above reserve level.

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis`.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

- `Drive train` (display depends on model)
- `Select engine code and engine` (display depends on model)
- `0001 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems` or `Systems with diagnostic capability`
- `0001 - Engine electronics J623`
- `0001 - Engine electronics, functions`
- `0001 - Activate fuel pump`

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Carry out test
- ♦ Select 120 seconds.
- – The fuel pump must run for 120 seconds to ensure that the fuel system is filled sufficiently with fuel.
- – Start engine after filling fuel system.
- – Run engine at moderate speed for several minutes and then switch off.
- – Check fuel system for leaks.
- – Erase entry in event memory.
- – Road-test vehicle and accelerate with full throttle at least once.
- – Then check high-pressure system again for leaks.

1.4 Checking fuel system for leaks

Procedure

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- – Allow engine to run for several minutes at moderate rpm.
- – Switch off ignition.
- – Check complete fuel system for leaks.
- – If leaks are found although the connections have been tightened to the correct torque, the relevant component must be renewed.
- – Road-test vehicle and accelerate with full throttle at least once.
- – Finally, check high-pressure system again for leaks.

2 Vacuum system

⇒ “2.1 Connection diagram - vacuum system”, page 219

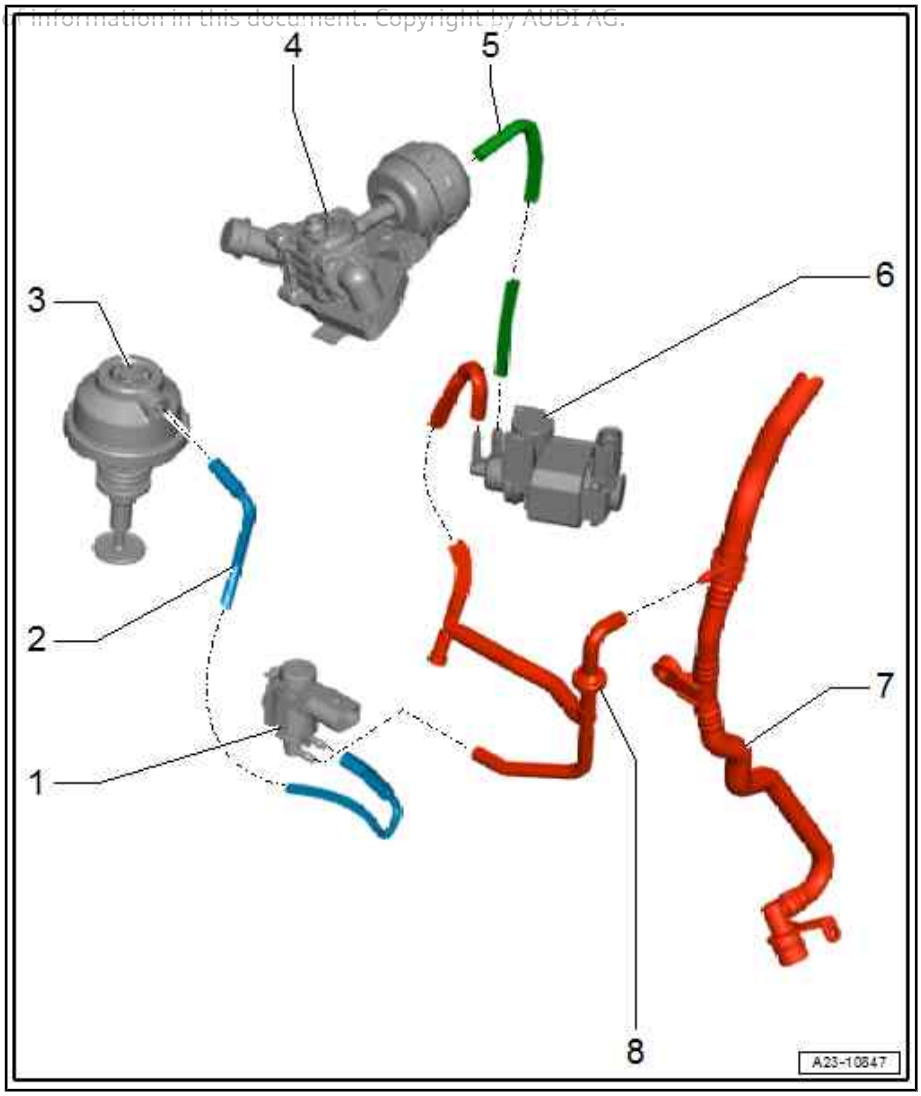
⇒ “2.2 Checking vacuum system”, page 219

2.1 Connection diagram - vacuum system

Note

Vacuum hoses in vehicle are not coloured.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Exhaust gas recirculation cooler change-over valve - N345-

2 - Vacuum hose

- From exhaust gas recirculation cooler change-over valve - N345- to vacuum unit at exhaust gas recirculation cooler

3 - Vacuum unit

- At exhaust gas recirculation cooler

4 - Vacuum unit

- At coolant shut-off valve

5 - Vacuum line

- From coolant valve for cylinder head - N489- to vacuum unit at coolant shut-off valve

6 - Coolant valve for cylinder head - N489-

7 - Vacuum supply hose

- With non-return valve
- Leading from vacuum pump to brake servo
- Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

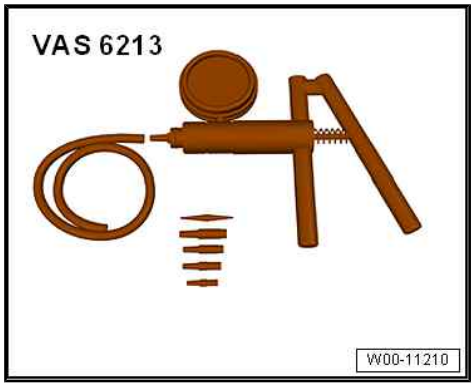
8 - Vacuum supply hose

- With non-return valve
- To coolant valve for cylinder head - N489- and exhaust gas recirculation cooler change-over valve - N345-

2.2 Checking vacuum system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213-



Procedure

– Check all vacuum lines in the complete vacuum system for:

- Cracks
- Traces of animal bites
- Kinked or crushed lines
- Porous or leaking lines

– Check vacuum line to solenoid valve and from solenoid valve to corresponding component.

– If a fault is stored in the event memory, check the vacuum lines leading to the relevant component and also check the remaining vacuum lines in the system.

– If it is not possible to build up a vacuum with the hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- or if the vacuum pressure drops again immediately, check the hand vacuum pump and connecting hoses for leaks.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Air cleaner

All procedures and components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Intake manifold

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold”, page 222

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)”, page 228

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)”, page 232

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 ”, page 234

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338 ”, page 236

4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold

⇒ “4.1.1 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles without electric compressor”, page 222

⇒ “4.1.2 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles with electric compressor”, page 225

4.1.1 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles without electric compressor

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

2 - Pipe
- ❑ For exhaust gas recirculation

3 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

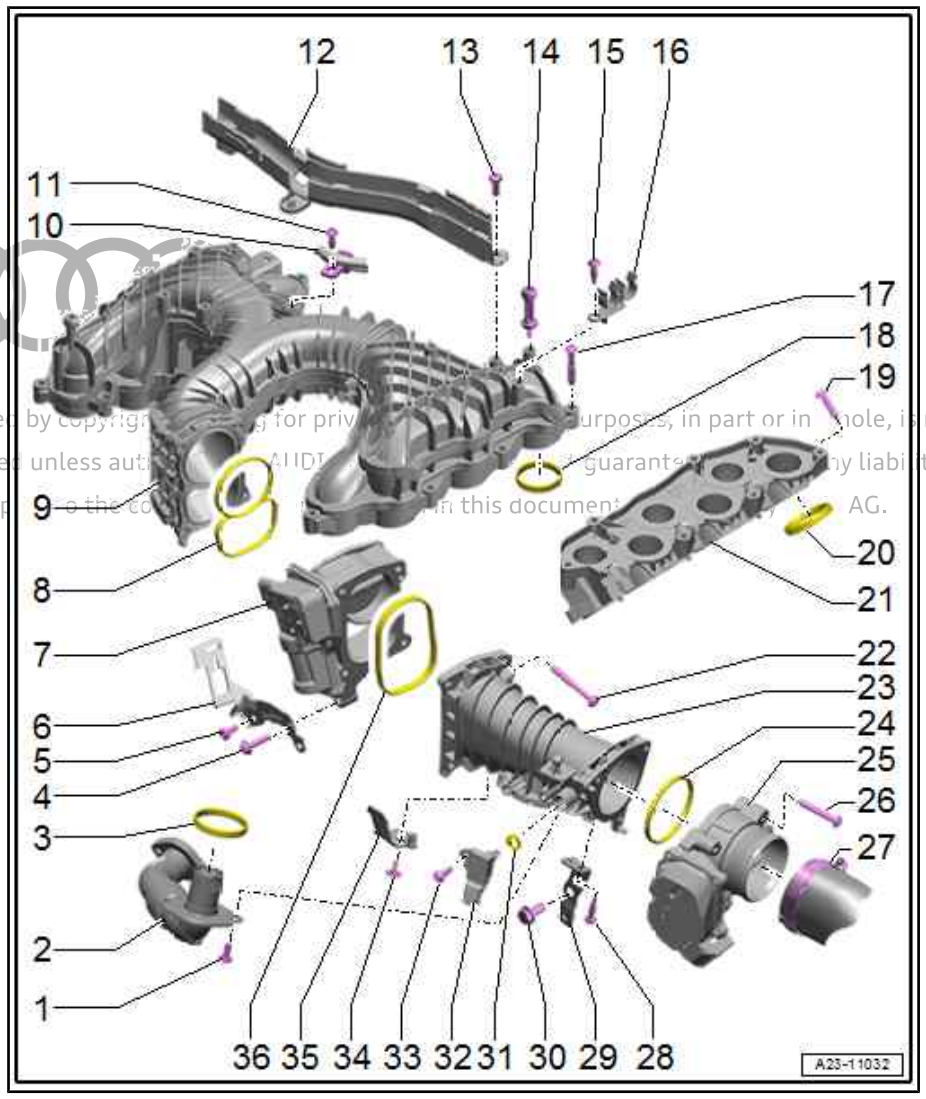
5 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bracket
- ❑ For air pipe and exhaust gas recirculation cooler change-over valve - N345-

7 - Intake manifold flap motor - V157-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 ”, page 234

8 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Intake manifold (top section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)”, page 228



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - High-pressure pipe

- ❑ With retaining clamp

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

12 - Retainer

- ❑ For electrical wiring harness

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

14 - Ball stud

- ❑ For engine cover panel
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 4 Nm

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

16 - Retainer

- ❑ For coolant hoses

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 224

18 - Seal

- ❑ 16x
- ❑ Available in different sizes
- ❑ Renew after removing

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Seal

- ❑ 16x
- ❑ Available in different sizes
- ❑ Renew after removing

21 - Intake manifold (bottom section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)”, page 232

22 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

23 - Air pipe

24 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

25 - Throttle valve module - J338- / throttle valve module - GX3-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338 ”, page 236

26 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

27 - Air hose

- ❑ With screw-type clip
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system”, page 211

28 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 6 Nm

29 - Retainer

- ❑ For air pipe

30 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

31 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

32 - Charge pressure sender - G31-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

33 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

34 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

35 - Retainer

- ❑ For coolant valve for cylinder head - N489-

36 - Gasket

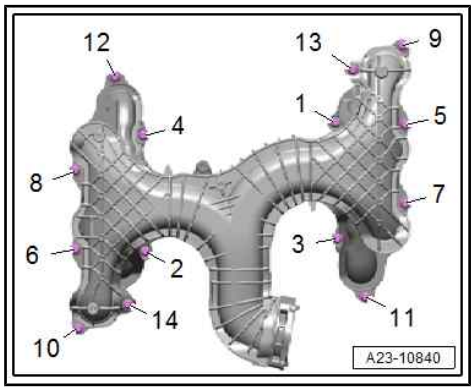
- ❑ Renew after removing

Intake manifold (top section) onto intake manifold (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence

A - Intake manifold (top section) onto old intake manifold (bottom section)

– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 14-	Fit and screw in bolts by hand so that they are screwed into old thread.
2.	-1 … 14-	10 Nm

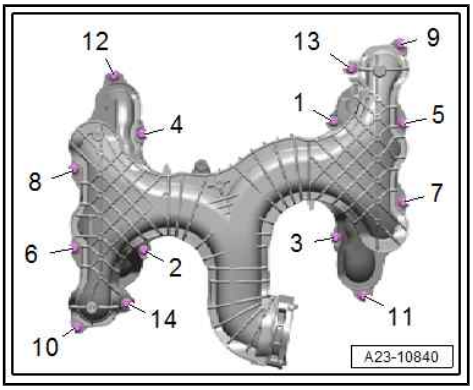


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

B - Intake manifold (top section) onto new intake manifold (bottom section)

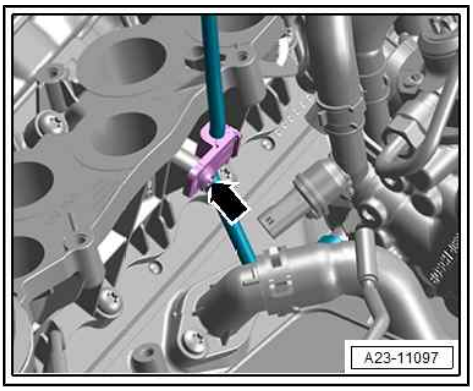
– Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-1 … 4-	10 Nm
2.	-5 … 14-	14 Nm
3.	-1 … 4-	14 Nm



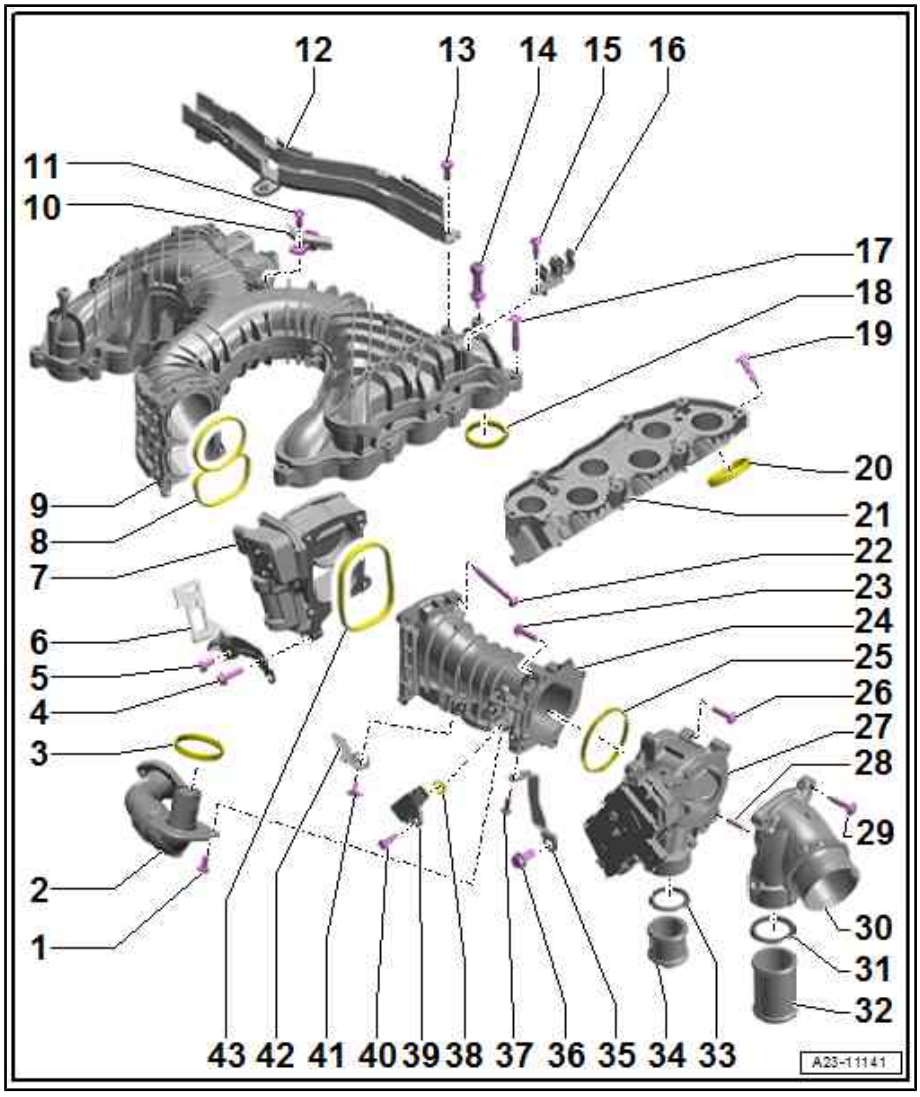
Retaining clamp for high-pressure pipe - tightening torque

- Thread-forming
- Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque.
- 7.5 Nm



4.1.2 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles with electric compressor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

2 - Pipe
- ❑ For exhaust gas recirculation

3 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bracket
- ❑ For air pipe and exhaust gas recirculation cooler change-over valve - N345-

7 - Intake manifold flap motor - V157-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 ”, page 234

8 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Intake manifold (top section)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

10 - High-pressure pipe
- ❑ With retaining clamp

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

12 - Retainer
- ❑ For electrical wiring harness

13 - Bolt
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

14 - Ball stud
- ❑ For engine cover panel
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 4 Nm

15 - Bolt
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Retainer

- ❑ For coolant hoses

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 224

18 - Seal

- ❑ 16x
- ❑ Available in different sizes
- ❑ Renew after removing

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Seal

- ❑ 16x
- ❑ Available in different sizes
- ❑ Renew after removing

21 - Intake manifold (bottom section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232

22 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

23 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

24 - Air pipe

25 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

26 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

27 - Throttle valve module - J338-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 236
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

28 - Dowel pin

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

29 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

30 - Connection

31 - Not fitted

32 - Connection

33 - Not fitted

34 - Connection

35 - Bracket

- ❑ For air pipe

36 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

37 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming

- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 6 Nm

38 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

39 - Charge pressure sender - G31-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

40 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

41 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

42 - Retainer

- ❑ For coolant valve for cylinder head - N489-

43 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)

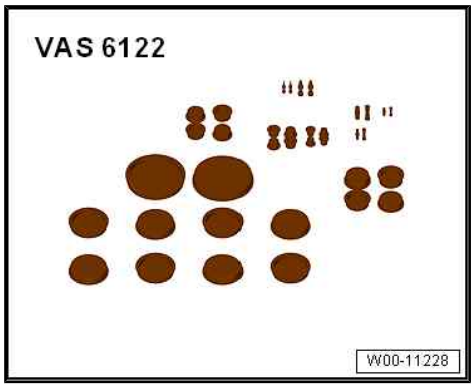
⇒ “4.2.1 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) - vehicles without electric compressor”, page 228

⇒ “4.2.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) - vehicles with electric compressor”, page 232

4.2.1 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) - vehicles without electric compressor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



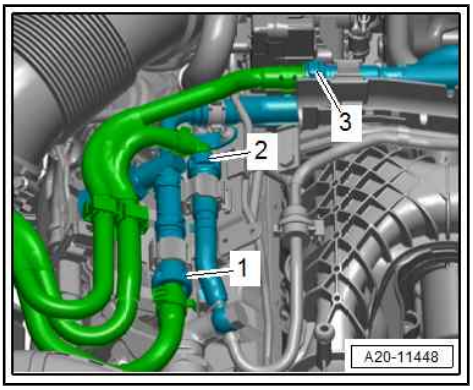
Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) .

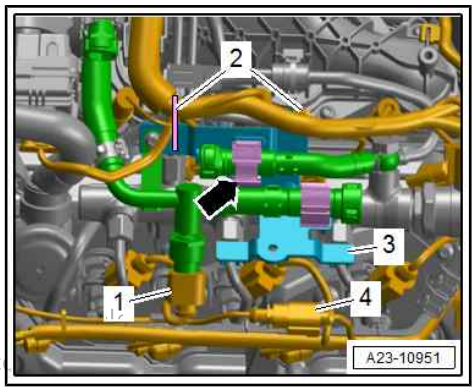
– Remove throttle valve module - J338- ⇒ page 236 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disconnect fuel hoses -1, 2, 3- ⇒ Fuel supply system; Rep. gr. 20 ; Plug-in connectors; Disconnecting plug-in connectors .

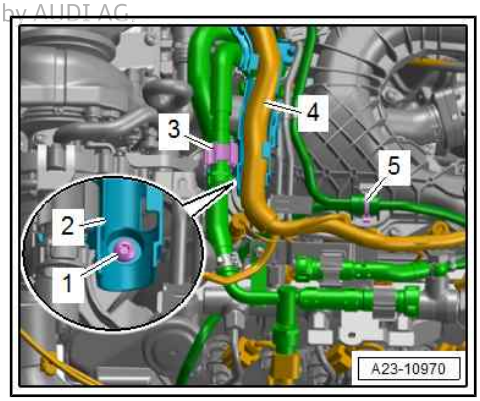


– Unplug electrical connector -1- for fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- .
– If installed, move electrical connector -4- for exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- clear.
– Move electrical wiring harnesses -2- and fuel hose -arrow- clear at bracket -3-.
– Unclip bracket from high-pressure lines and push to one side.
– Unplug electrical connectors on glow plugs.

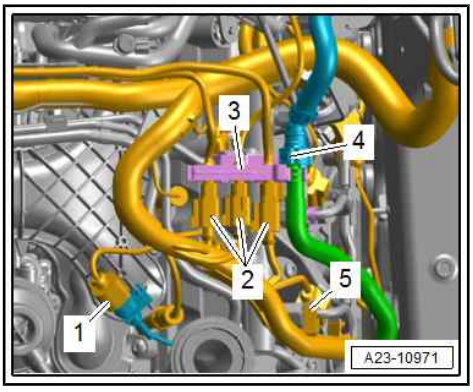


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

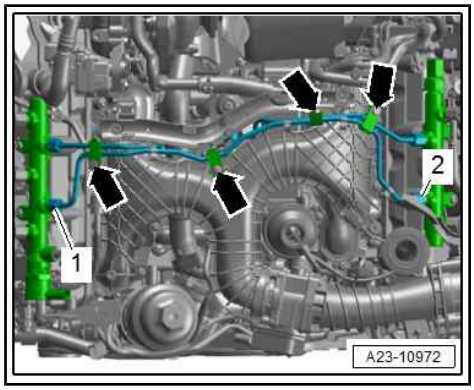
– Move fuel hose -3- clear.
– Move electrical wiring harness -4- clear at wiring duct -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- (left and right) and detach wiring duct.
– Move fuel return hose -5- clear at intake manifold and high-pressure pipe.



– If fitted, disconnect vacuum hose -4- and move hose clear at bracket.
– Detach electrical connectors -1 and 2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wiring clear.
– Unclip bracket -3- from high-pressure lines and detach.
– Unclip bracket -5- from high-pressure pipes and move to one side together with SCR line.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove retaining clips.



WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

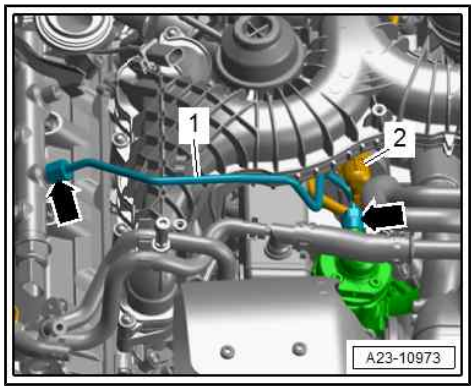
Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*

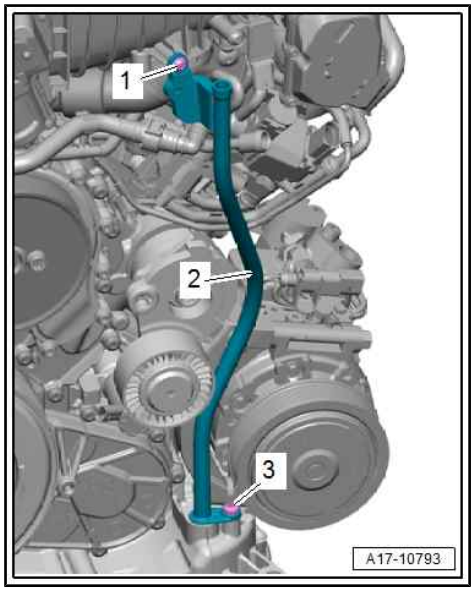
– Unscrew union nuts -1, 2- and detach high-pressure pipe.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for exhaust gas recirculation control motor - V338- .

– Unscrew union nuts -arrows- and detach high-pressure pipe -1-.

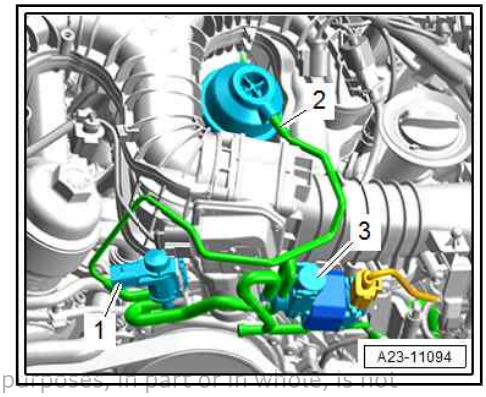


– Remove bolt -1- and push guide tube -2- for oil dipstick slightly towards front.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disconnect vacuum hose -2- from actuator for exhaust gas recirculation.
– Detach changeover valves -1, 3- from bracket and move clear to side.



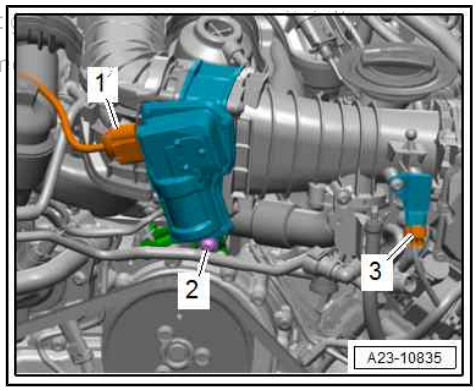
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

– Unplug electrical connectors:

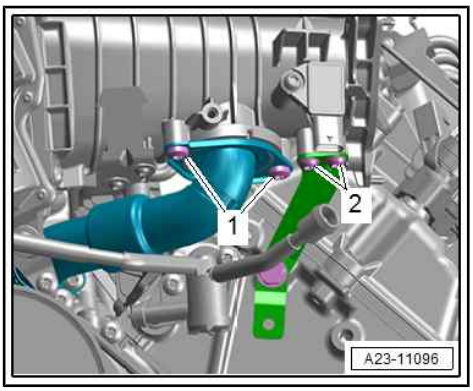
1 - For intake manifold flap motor - V157-

3 - For charge pressure sender - G31-

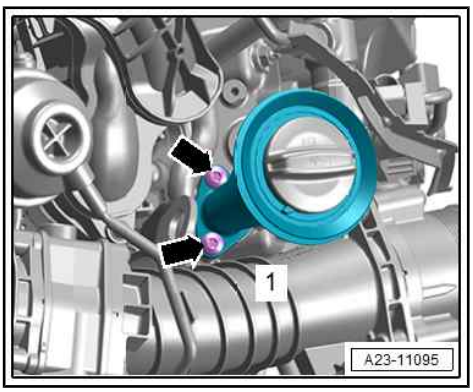
– Remove bolt -2-.



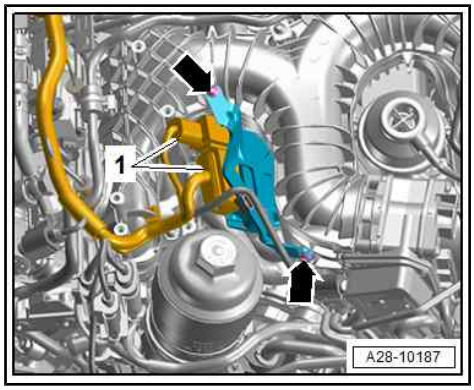
– Remove bolts -1- for exhaust gas recirculation pipe and bolts -2- on bracket for air pipe.



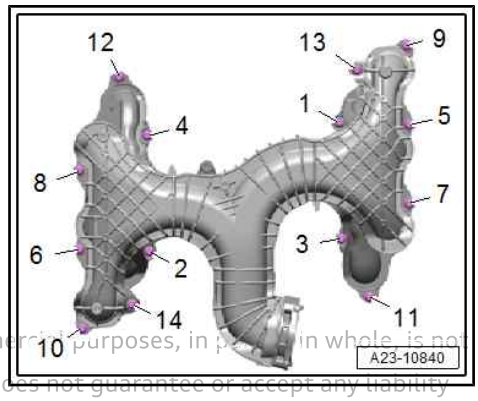
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach oil filler neck -1-.
– Seal off opening with plug from engine bung set - VAS 6122- (clean plug thoroughly).
– Move coolant hose leading to injector for reducing agent - N474- clear at intake manifold.



– Remove bolts -arrows- and move automatic glow period control unit - J179- to one side together with bracket.



– Loosen and remove bolts in the sequence -14 ... 1- and detach intake manifold (top section).



– If necessary, move electrical wiring clear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew seals after removing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Install high-pressure pipes ⇒ page 265 .

– Install throttle valve module - J338- ⇒ page 236 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Intake manifold (top section) onto intake manifold (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 224
- ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - cylinder head cover", page 110
- Dipstick guide tube ⇒ Item 8 (page 162)
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Lock carrier; Exploded view - lock carrier

4.2.2 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) .

4.3 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Socket Torx T30 - T10405-



Removing

– Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .

– Remove exhaust gas recirculation cooler ⇒ page 314 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

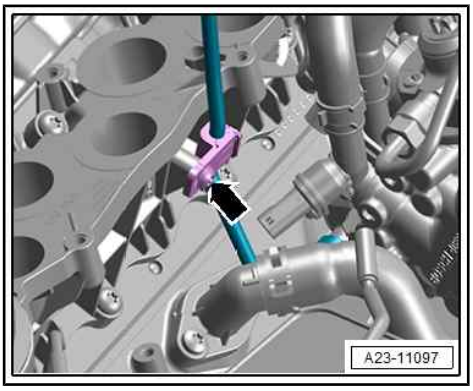
Bottom section of intake manifold (right-side):

– Vehicles without electric compressor: Remove coolant pipe (bottom front) for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

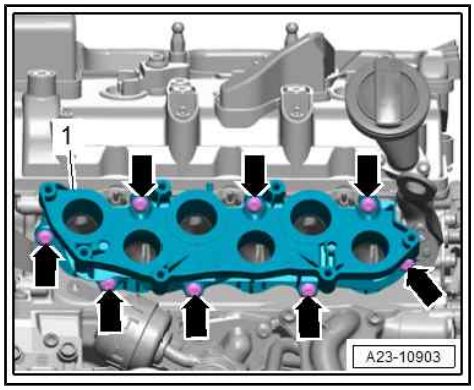
– Vehicles with electric compressor: Remove coolant pipe 2 for turbocharger ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .

– Press coolant pipe (top right) downwards.

– Remove bolt -arrow- for retaining clip.



Both sides (continued):



– If necessary, move electrical wiring/vacuum lines clear.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach intake manifold (bottom section) -1-.

Note

The illustration shows the installation position on cylinder bank 2 (left-side) as an example.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew seals after removing.

– Install exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front) ⇒ page 314 .
– Install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - intake manifold”, page 222
- ⇒ Fig. ““Retaining clamp for high-pressure pipe - tightening torque”“ , page 225

4.4 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor - V157-

⇒ “4.4.1 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 - vehicles without electric compressor”, page 234

⇒ “4.4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor V157 - vehicles with electric compressor”, page 236

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.4.1 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor - V157- - vehicles without electric compressor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

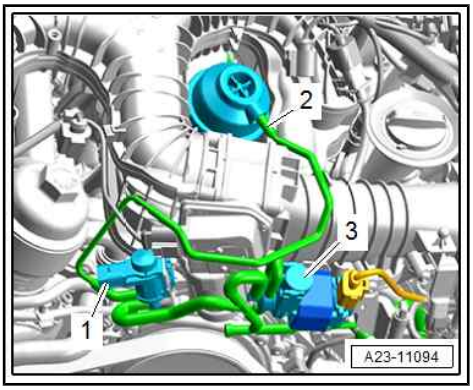
- Socket Torx T30 - T10405-



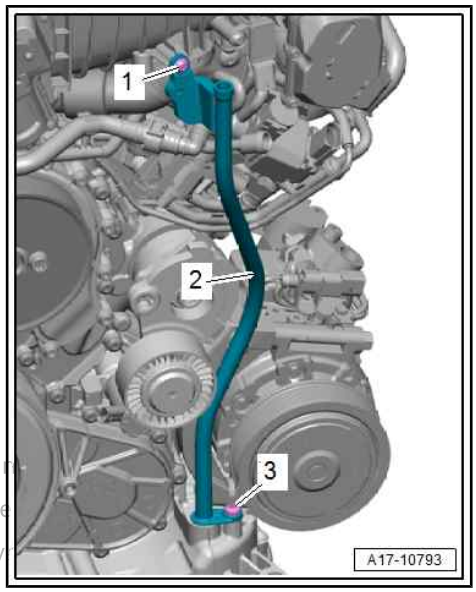
Removing

– Remove throttle valve module - J338- ⇒ page 236 .

– Disconnect vacuum hose -2- from actuator for exhaust gas recirculation.
– Detach changeover valve -3- from bracket and move clear to side.



– Remove bolt -1- and push guide tube -2- for oil dipstick slightly towards front.



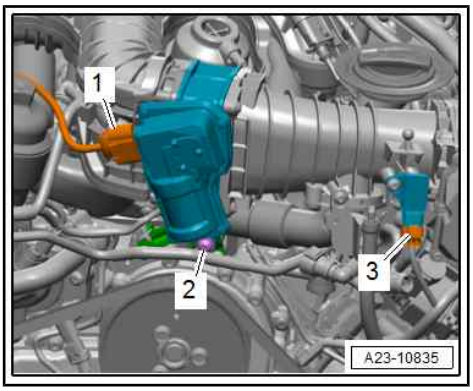
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Unplug electrical connectors:

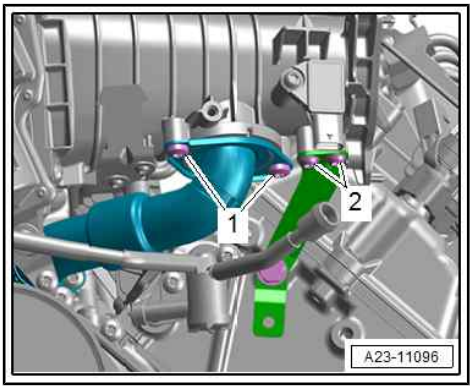
1 - For intake manifold flap motor - V157-

3 - For charge pressure sender - G31-

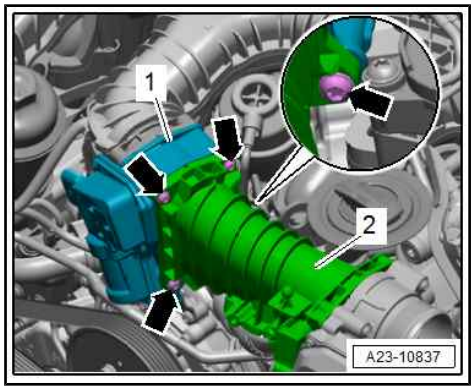
– Remove bolt -2-.



– Remove bolts -1- for exhaust gas recirculation pipe and bolts -2- on bracket for air pipe.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- using socket Torx T30 - T10405- and detach air pipe -2- together with intake manifold flap motor - V157- -item 1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew seals after removing.

– Install throttle valve module - J338- ⇒ page 236 .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ "3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component", page 10 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "4.1.1 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles without electric compressor", page 222

◆ Dipstick guide tube ⇒ Item 8 (page 162)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.4.2 Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor - V157- - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing intake manifold flap motor - V157- .

4.5 Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338-

⇒ "4.5.1 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338 - vehicles without electric compressor", page 236

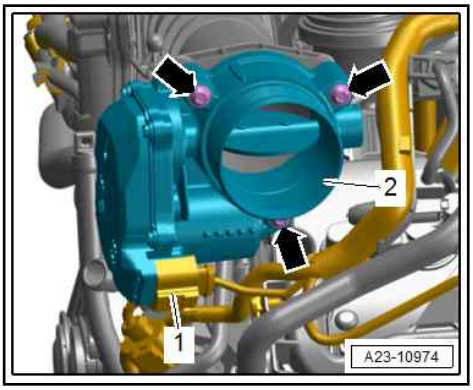
⇒ "4.5.2 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338 - vehicles with electric compressor", page 237

4.5.1 Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338- - vehicles without electric compressor

Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338- .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach throttle valve module - J338- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew gasket after removing.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338- .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ "3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component", page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1.1 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles without electric compressor", page 222

4.5.2 Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338- - vehicles with electric compressor

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Intake manifold; Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail)

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - injectors”, page 238

⇒ “5.2 Checking injectors”, page 242

⇒ “5.3 Performing adaption of correction values for injectors”, page 243

⇒ “5.4 Checking for injectors sticking open”, page 244

⇒ “5.5 Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running”, page 246

⇒ “5.6 Checking return flow rate of injectors at starter cranking speed”, page 250

⇒ “5.7 Checking pressure retention valve in fuel return line”, page 253

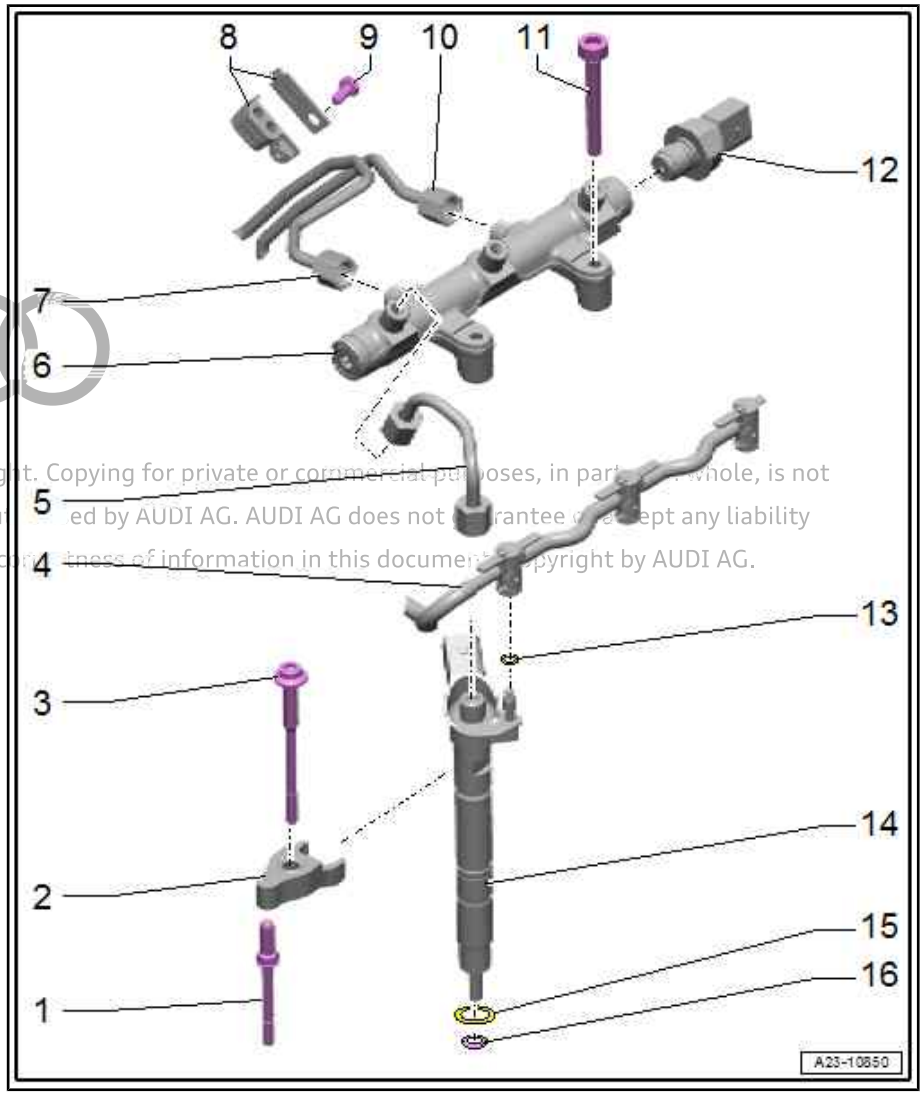
⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing injectors”, page 255

⇒ “5.9 Installing high-pressure pipes”, page 265

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing high-pressure reservoir (rail)”, page 267

5.1 Exploded view - injectors

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Support bracket

- ❑ For clamping piece
- ❑ Different tightening torques:

♦ To camshaft bearing ⇒ page 132

♦ To cylinder head: 9 Nm

2 - Clamping piece

- ❑ Use a coloured pen to mark injectors and corresponding clamping piece and cylinder for re-installation; pay attention to markings when installing
- ❑ If the injector is installed on another cylinder for testing purposes, the clamping piece must also be moved
- ❑ After looking for the fault, the injector and the clamping piece must be re-installed on their original cylinder
- ❑ The clamping pieces can be re-used when installing new injectors

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6 Nm +90°

4 - Fuel return hose

- ❑ From injectors
- ❑ Do not dismantle
- ❑ Only renew together with pressure retention valve
- ❑ After renewing, engine must be run at idling speed for approx. 2 minutes to bleed fuel system
- ❑ Then check fuel return hoses for leaks

5 - High-pressure pipe

- – Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .
- ❑ From high-pressure reservoir (rail) to injector
- ❑ Do not alter shape
- ❑ Mark allocation for re-installation; pay attention to marking when installing
- ❑ Check for damage before re-installing
- ❑ Installing ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil
- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles without electric compressor:

♦ 25 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles with electric compressor:

♦ 35 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

6 - High-pressure reservoir (rail)

- – Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 267

7 - High-pressure pipe

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .
❑ From high-pressure reservoir (rail) on opposite side
❑ Do not alter shape
❑ Check for damage before re-installing
❑ Installing ⇒ page 265
❑ Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil
❑ Tightening torques for vehicles without electric compressor:

♦ 25 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe
♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

❑ Tightening torques for vehicles with electric compressor:

♦ 35 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe
♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

8 - Retaining clamp

❑ For high-pressure pipe

9 - Bolt

❑ 9 Nm

10 - High-pressure pipe

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .
❑ From high-pressure pump to high-pressure reservoir (rail)
❑ Do not alter shape
❑ Check for damage before re-installing
❑ Installing ⇒ page 265
❑ Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil
❑ Tightening torques for vehicles without electric compressor:

♦ 25 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe
♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

❑ Tightening torques for vehicles with electric compressor:

♦ 35 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe
♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

11 - Bolt

❑ 9 Nm

12 - Fuel pressure sender - G247-

❑ Use socket - T40218- to loosen and tighten
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 272

13 - O-ring

❑ Renew after removing

14 - Injector

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .
❑ Use a coloured pen to mark allocation of injectors to corresponding clamping piece and high-pressure pipe, and to corresponding cylinder for re-installation; pay attention to markings when installing
❑ If the injector is installed on another cylinder for testing purposes, the clamping piece must also be moved
❑ Renew copper seal after removing
❑ After looking for the fault (switching the injectors around), the injector and the clamping piece must be re-installed on their original cylinder

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ To remove carbon deposits from the injector sealing surface, clean the injector bore in the cylinder head with cleaning kit - VAS 6811- (it is important to do this to avoid leaks)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 255
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

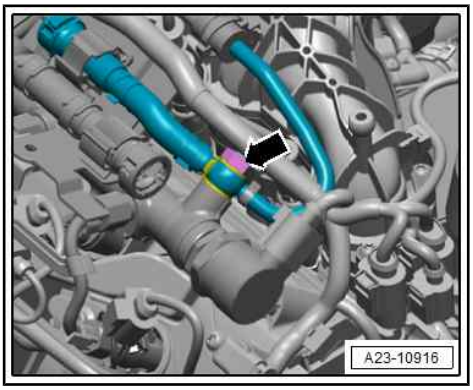
15 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

16 - Copper seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Copper seal without chamfer: has no specified installation position
- ❑ Copper seal with chamfer: note installation position ⇒ page 242

Banjo bolt for fuel return line connection - tightening torque



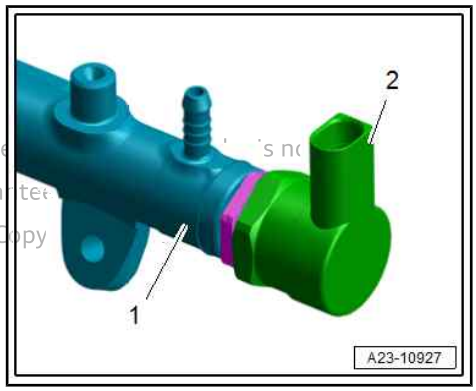
Note

- ♦ *After removing, renew bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.*
- ♦ *Renew seals after removing.*

– Tighten banjo bolt -arrow- to 8 Nm +90°.

Fuel pressure regulating valve - N276-

Version 1



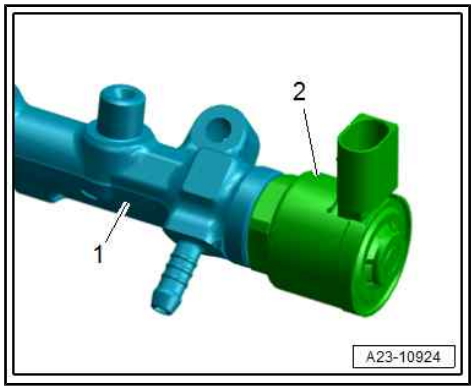
- ♦ With deformable sealing lip
- ♦ Cannot be re-installed
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275
- ♦ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

– Position fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- so that electrical wiring is not under tension when connector is plugged in.

– Tighten union screw on regulating valve in stages as follows (counterhold hexagon flats on housing):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Version 2

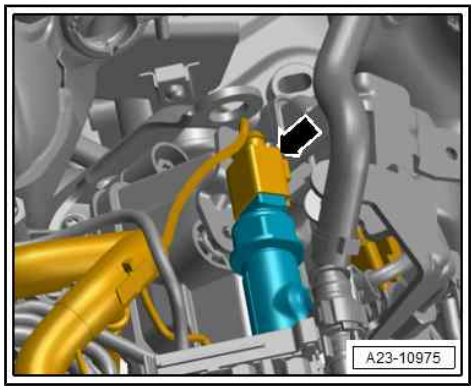


- With deformable sealing lip
- Cannot be re-installed
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 278
- Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
  ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

Tightening torque for versions 1 and 2

Stage	Tightening torque
1.	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	60 Nm
3.	Turn back by 90°
4.	85 Nm

Fuel pressure sender - G247- - tightening torque



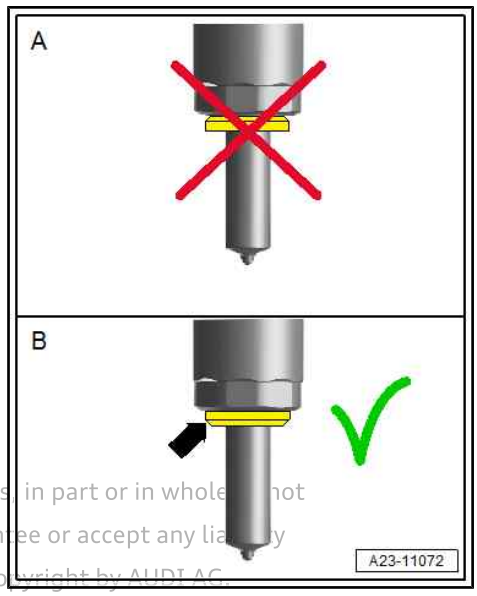
Note

Do not use an open-end spanner for loosening or tightening.

– Use socket, 27 mm - T40218- to tighten fuel pressure sender - G247- -arrow- in stages as follows:

Stage	Tightening torque
1.	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	60 Nm
3.	Turn back by 180°
4.	85 Nm

Note installation position for copper seal with chamfer



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Checking injectors

There are four different tests for checking the operation of the injectors.

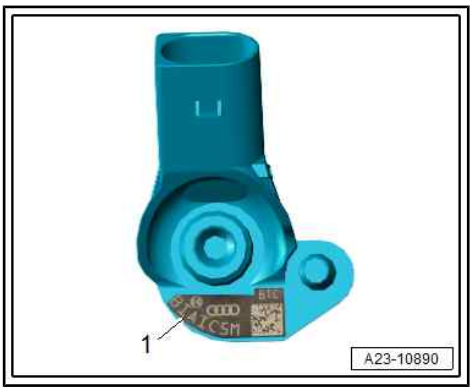
- Performing adaption of correction values for injectors ⇒ page 243
- Checking for injectors sticking open ⇒ page 244
- Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running ⇒ page 246
- Checking return flow rate of injectors at starter cranking speed ⇒ page 250

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

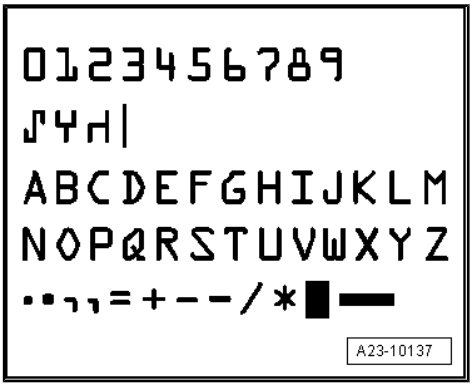
Perform the following tests first if the engine does not start at all:

- Checking for injectors sticking open ⇒ page 244
- Checking return flow rate of injectors at starter cranking speed ⇒ page 250
- Checking fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- .

5.3 Performing adaption of correction values for injectors



- The “Injector delivery calibration” and “Injector voltage calibration” serve to correct the injection rates for each cylinder of a common rail system individually across the entire operating range.
- The 7-digit adaption value -1- (example) is marked separately on each injector. It may consist of letters and/or numbers (ASCII code).
- Reference table for reading out letters and/or numbers on each injector



Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

– Perform adaption ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– When a new injector is installed, the adaption value for the new injector must be stored in the engine control unit.

– Additionally, check that the “Injector delivery calibration values” with “Injector voltage calibration values” are correctly entered for all the other injectors. Do NOT attempt to re-enter these values if the correct values are already stored in the engine control unit.

– When the engine control unit is renewed, the appropriate “Injector delivery calibration values” with “Injector voltage cali-

bration" values must be written into the new engine control unit.

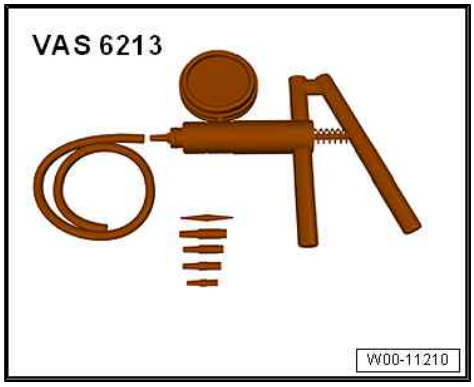
5.4 Checking for injectors sticking open

Note

If one of the injectors is sticking open, this means that the injector needle is not closing fully and fuel escapes into the cylinder.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213-



- Adapter of return flow meter - VAS 6684-

Procedure

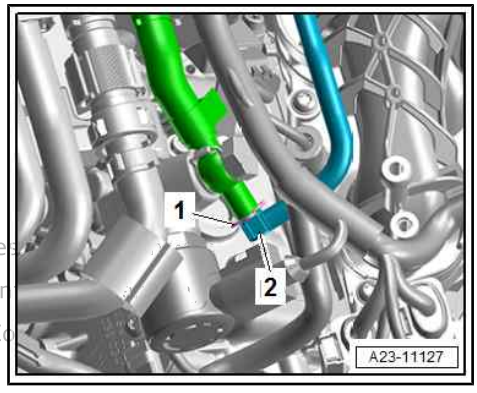
Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking for injectors sticking open .

– Erase entries in engine control unit event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
– Clean all high-pressure reservoir (rail) connections with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.
– Detach retaining clip -1- and disconnect fuel return hose -2-.

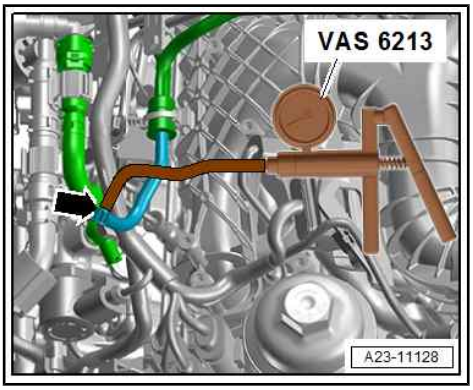


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

– Connect hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- to fuel hose -arrow-.
– Generate a vacuum of -500 mbar using hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- .

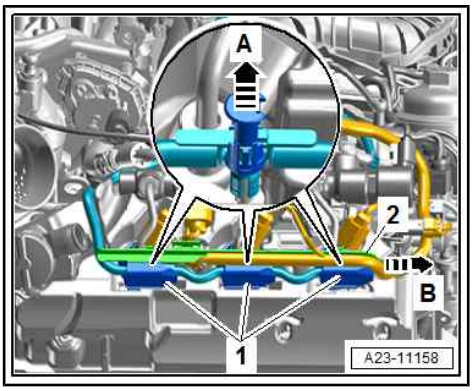
• If the vacuum reading remains the same for 30 seconds, the injectors are OK.
• In the case of a faulty injector, the vacuum will fall back to 0 bar within 2 to 3 seconds.

– If pressure drops, check injectors on individual cylinder banks.



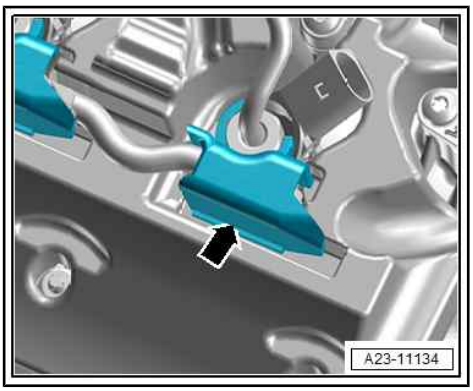
Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

– Detach bracket -2- with wiring harness from high-pressure pipes towards front -arrow B- and push upwards slightly.
– Detach covers -1-.
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow A-.



Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

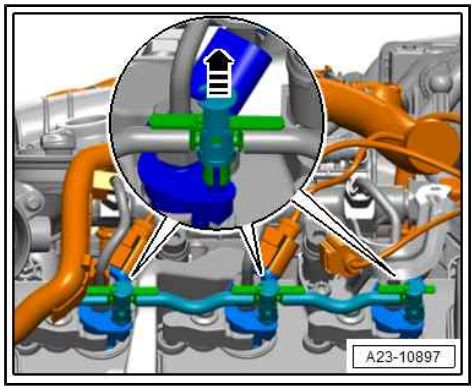
– Detach covers -arrow-.
– If necessary, move bracket for electrical wiring harness clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Re-connect air hose to throttle valve module - J338- .

– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow-.



Both sides (continued):

– Connect adapter to return line connection of injector to be tested after adapter has been cleaned and blown out.

– Generate a vacuum of -500 mbar using hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- .

• If the vacuum reading remains the same for 30 seconds, the injector is OK.

• In the case of a faulty injector, the vacuum will fall back to 0 bar within 2 to 3 seconds.

– Repeat test if necessary; note drop in vacuum reading on hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- .

– Renew faulty injectors ⇒ page 255 .

Assembling

Note

♦ *Renew O-ring for fuel return line connection if it is damaged or deformed.*

♦ *Lubricate O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Push the return line connections carefully over the new seals and onto the injectors.

• The connection must engage audibly.

– Then press down release pin carefully.

– Erase any entries in engine control unit event memory resulting from testing ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Check fuel system for leaks ⇒ page 218 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking for injectors sticking open .

Note

If there is any air left in the fuel system, the engine may switch to the backup mode ('emergency running' mode) during the road test. Stop engine and erase event memory. Then continue the road test.

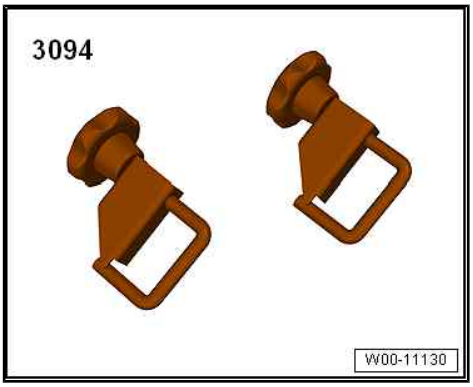
5.5 Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running

Note

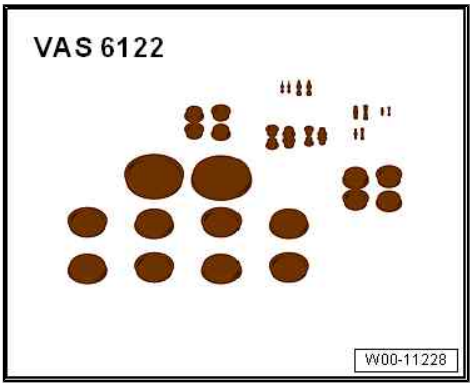
Each injector normally has a relatively low fuel return flow rate. If the return flow rate at one injector is relatively high compared to the other injectors, that injector is probably defective.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

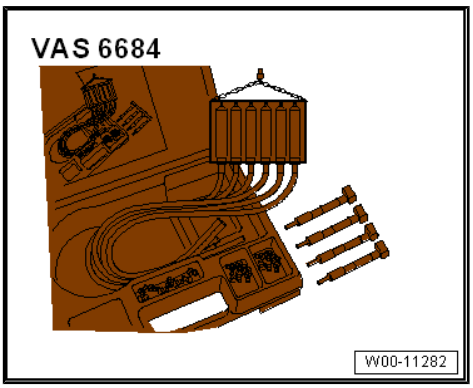
- Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-



- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



- Return flow meter - VAS 6684-



- Fuel-resistant measuring container

Procedure

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

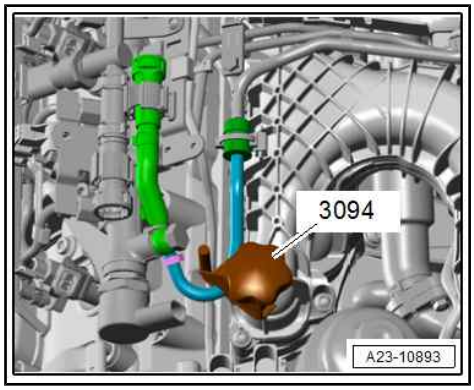
- ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running .

– Clean all return line connections with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.

– Clamp off fuel return line downstream of pressure retention valve using a hose clamp -3094- .

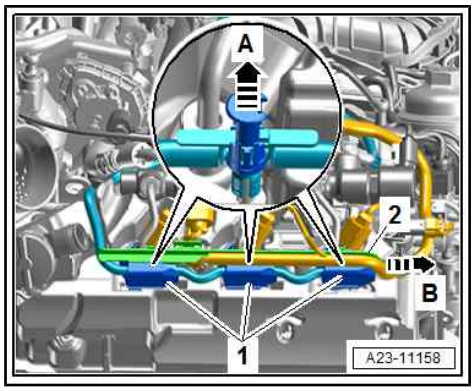


Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

– Detach bracket -2- with wiring harness from high-pressure pipes towards front -arrow B- and push upwards slightly.

– Detach covers -1-.

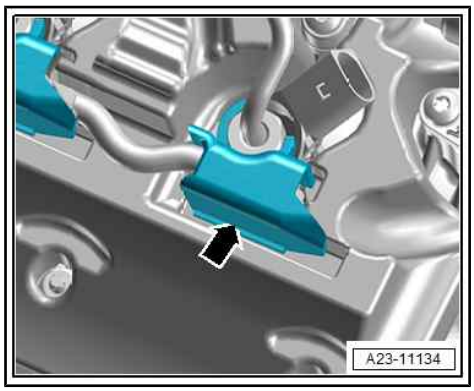
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow A-.



Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

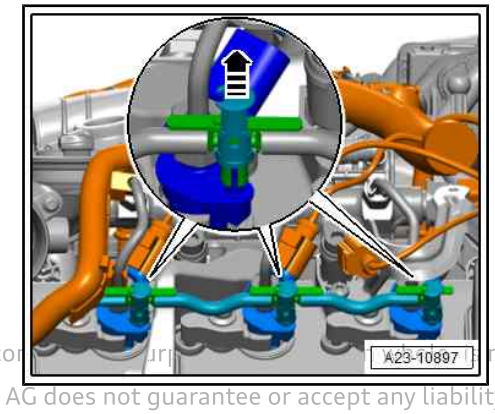
– Detach covers -arrow-.

– If necessary, move bracket for electrical wiring harness clear.



– Re-connect air hose to throttle valve module - J338- .

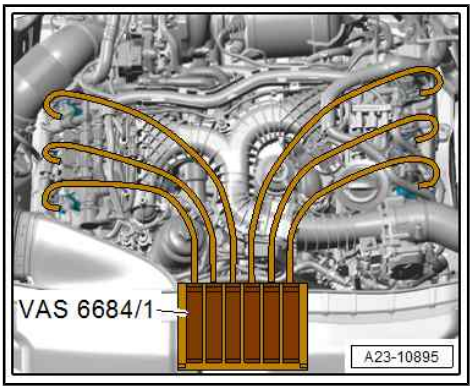
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co ur not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Both sides (continued):

– Connect hoses of return flow meter -VAS 6684/1- to return line connections of all six injectors.



Caution

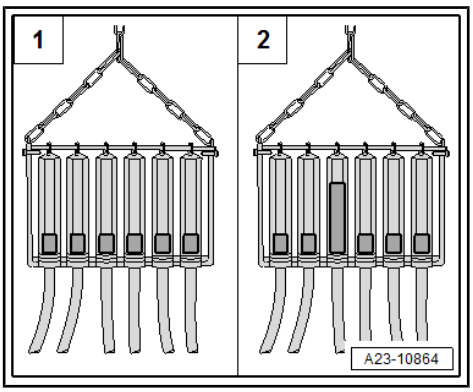
Risk of damage to injectors due to increased engine speed.

- *Do NOT press the accelerator during this test; the engine must only run at idling speed.*

– Start engine and run at idling speed for several minutes:

– When the engine is warm and running at idling speed, the return flow rates at each of the 6 injectors must not differ by more than a small amount.

Evaluating return flow rate:



1 - Injectors OK. Return flow rate approx. identical on all injectors.

2 - Injector for cylinder 3 not OK. Return flow rate greater than three times the volume of smallest measured return flow rate.

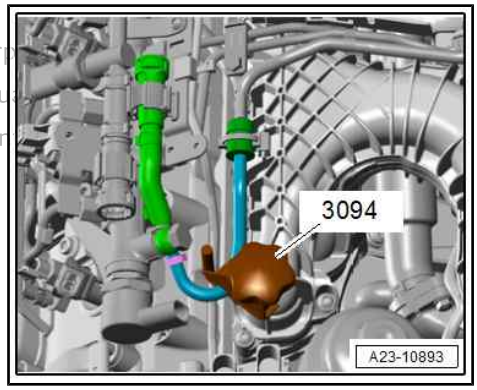
Note

There is a mechanical fault at the injector if the return flow rate is greater than three times the volume of the smallest measured return flow rate.

– If one injector has a significantly higher return flow rate than the others it must be renewed ⇒ page 255 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove hose clamp, up to 25 mm - 3094- from fuel return line.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documer

Assembling

Note

- *Renew O-ring for fuel return line connection if it is damaged or deformed.*
- *Lubricate all O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.*

– Push the return line connections carefully over the new seals and onto the injectors.

• The connection must engage audibly.

– Then press down release pin carefully.

– Erase any entries in engine control unit event memory resulting from testing ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Check fuel system for leaks ⇒ page 218 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running .

Note

If there is any air left in the fuel system, the engine may switch to the backup mode ('emergency running' mode) during the road test. Stop engine and erase event memory. Then continue the road test.

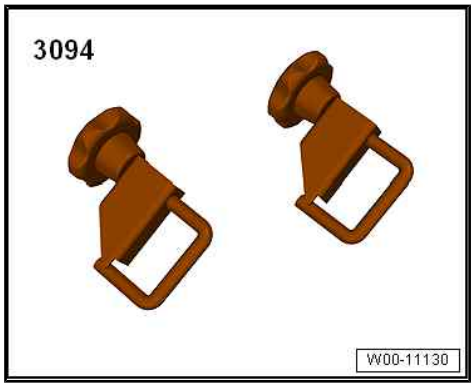
5.6 Checking return flow rate of injectors at starter cranking speed

Note

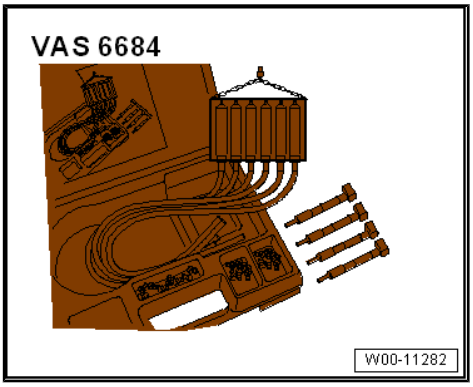
- *Only perform this test if the engine does not start at all.*
- *Each injector normally has a relatively low fuel return flow rate. If the return flow rate at one injector is relatively high compared to the other injectors, that injector is probably defective.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-



♦ Return flow meter - VAS 6684-



♦ Fuel-resistant measuring container

Procedure

Caution

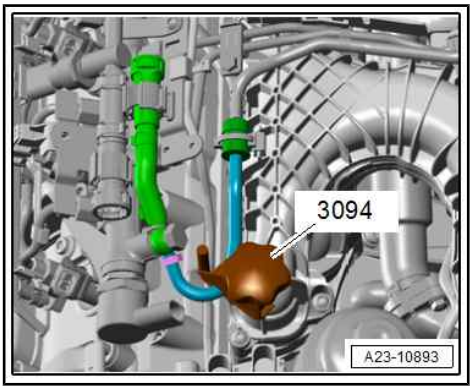
Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

♦ ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running .

– Clean all return line connections with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.

– Clamp off fuel return line downstream of pressure retention valve using a hose clamp -3094- .

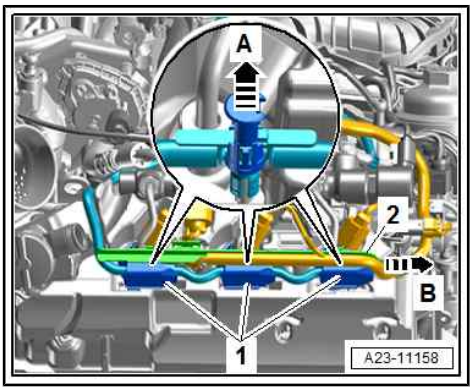


Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

– Detach bracket -2- with wiring harness from high-pressure pipes towards front -arrow B- and push upwards slightly.

– Detach covers -1-.

– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow A-.



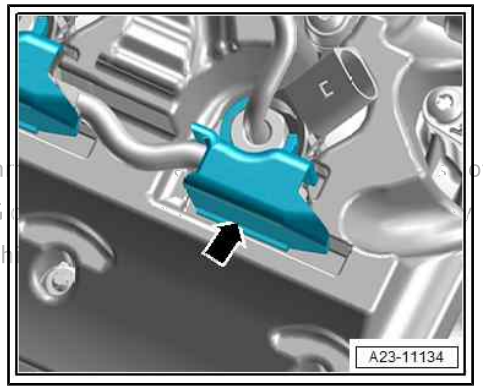
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

– Detach covers -arrow-.

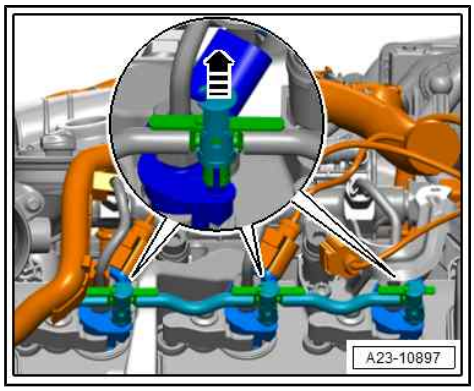
– If necessary, move bracket for electrical wiring harness clear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com ot
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th



– Re-connect air hose to throttle valve module - J338- .

– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow-.



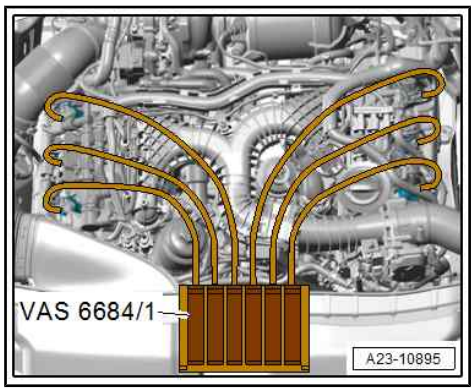
Both sides (continued):

– Connect hoses of return flow meter -VAS 6684/1- to return line connections of all six injectors.

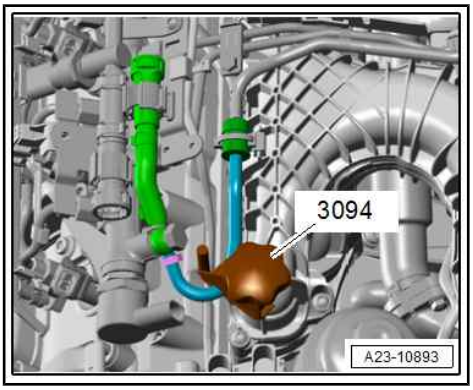
– Operate starter three times (wait approx. 20 seconds each time after operating starter to prevent it from overheating).

• Specification of return flow rate: 0 ml

– If fuel comes out of one injector, that injector must be renewed ⇒ page 255 .



– Remove hose clamp -3094- from fuel return line.



Assembling

Note

- *Renew O-ring for fuel return line connection if it is damaged or deformed.*
- *Lubricate all O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.*

– Push the return line connections carefully over the new seals and onto the injectors.

• The connection must engage audibly.

– Then press down release pin carefully.

– Erase any entries in engine control unit event memory resulting from testing ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

– Check fuel system for leaks ⇒ page 218 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking return flow rate of injectors with engine running .

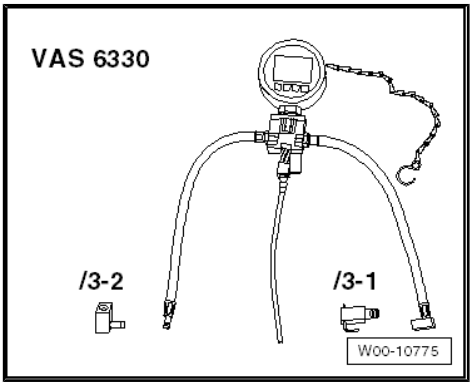
Note

If there is any air left in the fuel system, the engine may switch to the backup mode ('emergency running' mode) during the road test. Stop engine and erase event memory. Then continue the road test.

5.7 Checking pressure retention valve in fuel return line

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Tester for fuel return system - VAS 6330-



Procedure

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking pressure retention valve in fuel return line .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

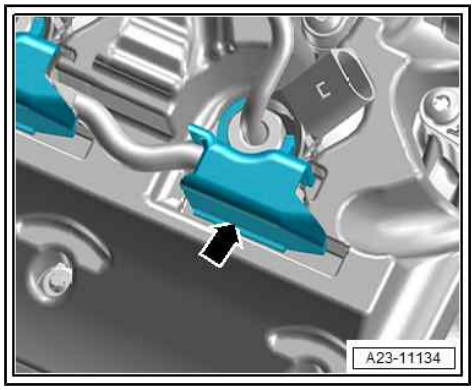
Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- *Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .*
- *No dirt must be allowed to get into the disconnected return line or the open connection on the injector.*

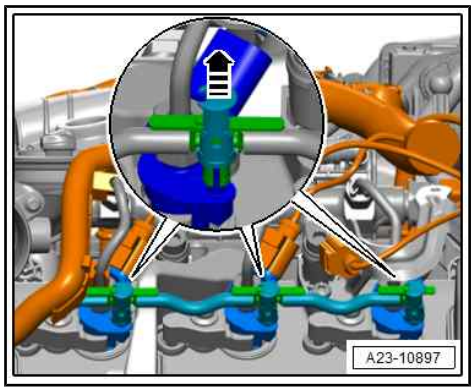
– Detach cover -arrow-.

– If necessary, move bracket for electrical wiring harness clear.



– Clean return line connection on cylinder 4 with engine cleaner/ brake cleaner and dry.

– Pull return line connection off cylinder 4; to do so, press both tabs down and at the same time pull centre piece upwards -arrow- to release connection.



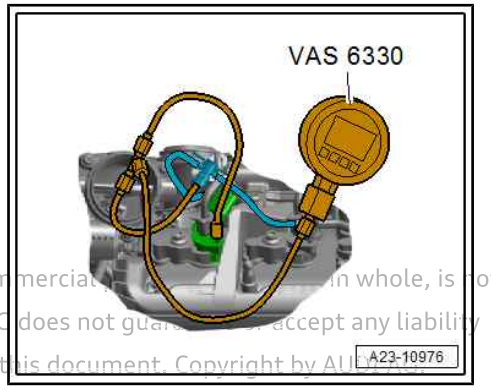
– Connect tester for fuel return system - VAS 6330- between return line connection on injector and return line.

– Start engine.

– Check pressure on pressure gauge.

♦ Specification: approx. 12 bar

– If specification is not attained, renew fuel return line with pressure retention valve and ring/hose connector.



Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Checking pressure retention valve in fuel return line .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8 Removing and installing injectors

⇒ “5.8.1 Removing injectors - cylinder bank 1 (right-side)”, page 255

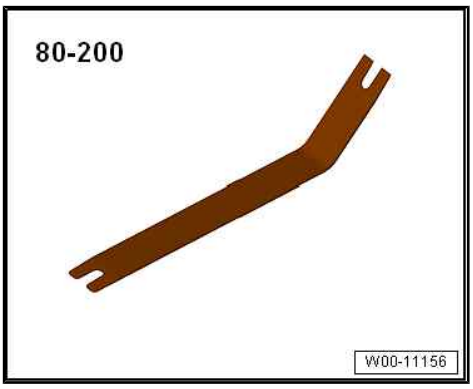
⇒ “5.8.2 Removing injectors - cylinder bank 2 (left-side)”, page 259

⇒ “5.8.3 Installing injectors”, page 263

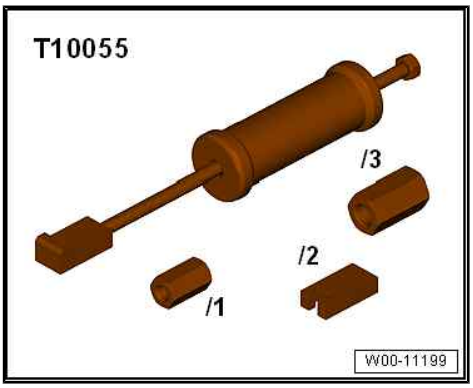
5.8.1 Removing injectors - cylinder bank 1 (right-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Cleaning kit - VAS 6811- (not illustrated)
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Puller - T10055- with adapter - T10055/1-

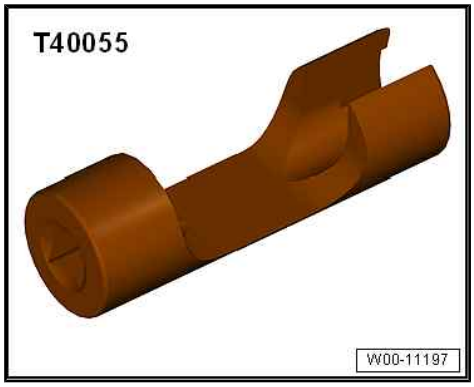


- Assembly sleeve - T10377-

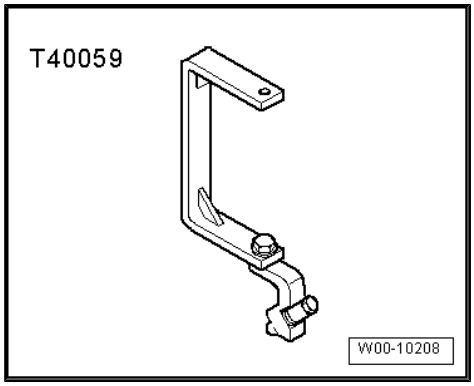


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or entire, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document by AUDI AG.

- Socket - T40055-



- Puller - T40059-



Removing

Caution

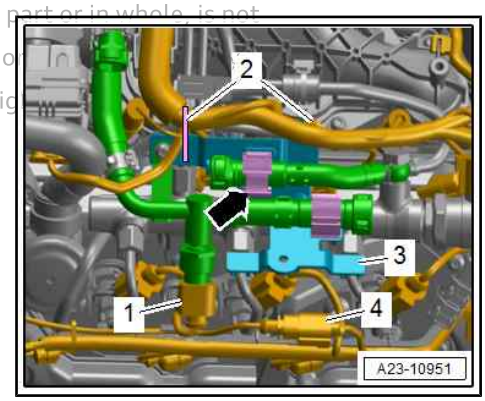
Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

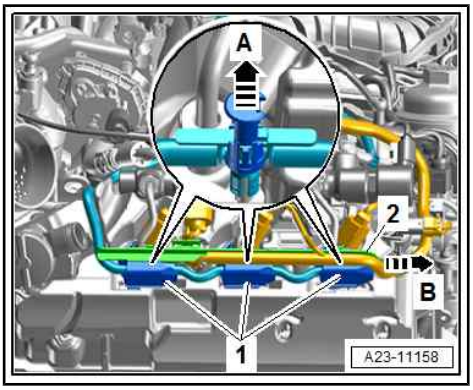
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Removing and installing injectors .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Unplug electrical connector -1- for fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410-.
– If installed, move electrical connector -4- for exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- clear.
– Move electrical wiring harnesses -2- and fuel hose -arrow- clear at bracket -3-.
– Unclip bracket from high-pressure lines and push to one side.



– Detach bracket -2- with wiring harness from high-pressure pipes towards front -arrow B- and push upwards slightly.
– If fitted, detach covers -1-.
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow A-.



Version without noise insulation:

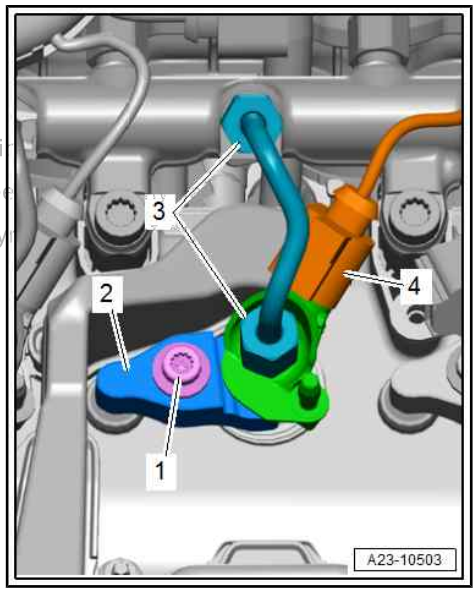
– Unplug electrical connectors -4- at injectors.

WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- ***Put on safety goggles.***
- ***Put on protective gloves.***
- ***Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).***



– Unscrew union nuts -3- and detach high-pressure pipe.

Caution

Used injectors must always be re-installed on the same cylinder.

- ***Mark injectors to ensure that they are re-installed at the correct cylinders.***

– Mark position of clamping piece -2- in relation to injector with paint for re-installation.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove clamping piece.

Note

If it is not possible to remove the clamping piece, detach injector.

ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, i
mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Version with noise insulation:

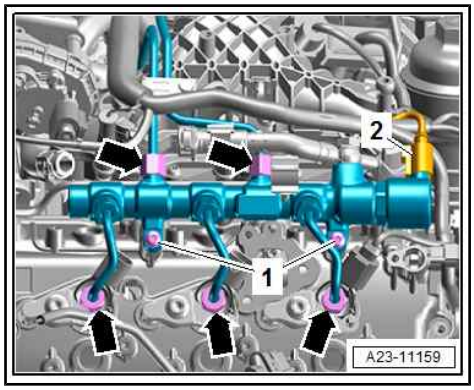
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*



– Remove union nuts -arrows- and bolts -1- and move fuel rail to one side.

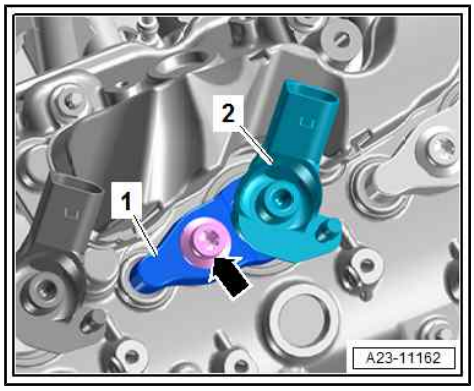
– Detach noise insulation.

– Use a vacuum cleaner to remove any residue left by the noise insulation.

Caution

Used injectors must always be re-installed on the same cylinder.

- *Mark injectors to ensure that they are re-installed at the correct cylinders.*



– Mark position of clamping piece -1- in relation to injector -2- with paint for re-installation.

– Remove bolt -arrow- and detach clamping piece.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

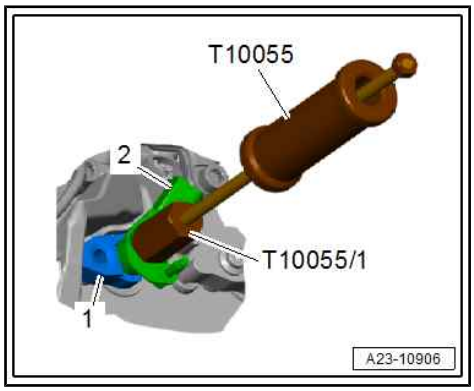
Note

If it is not possible to remove the clamping piece, detach injector.

All versions (continued):

– Fit puller - T10055- with adapter -T10055/1- on injector -2-, as shown in illustration.

– Detach injector with clamping piece -1-.



– If puller - T10055- with adapter -T10055/1- cannot be fitted directly, use puller - T40059- with corresponding bolt -1- in addition.
– Place removed injectors on a clean cloth.

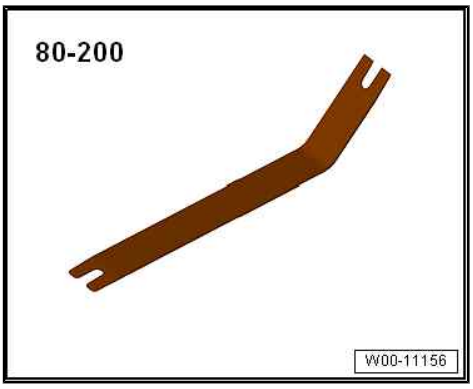


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

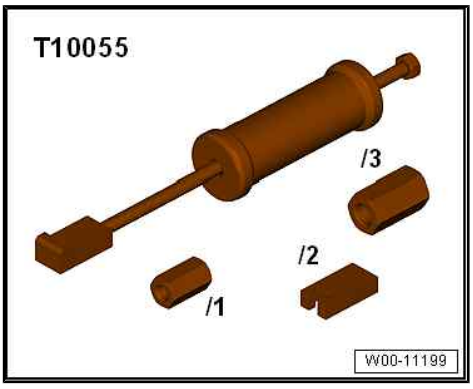
5.8.2 Removing injectors - cylinder bank 2 (left-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

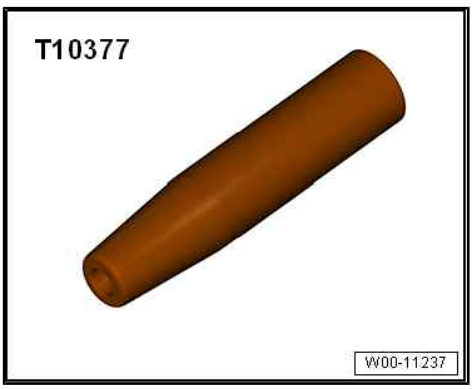
- Cleaning kit - VAS 6811- (not illustrated)
- Removal lever - 80-200-



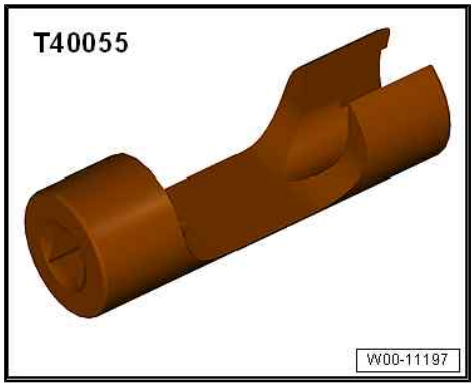
- Puller - T10055- with adapter - T10055/1-



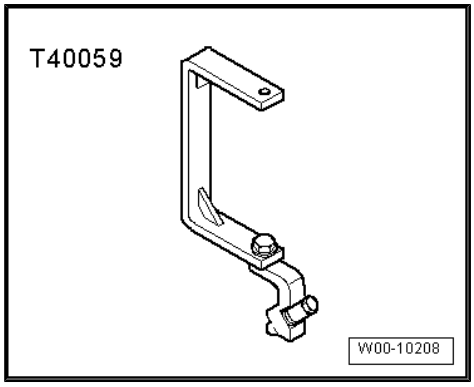
- Assembly sleeve - T10377-



♦ Socket - T40055-



♦ Puller - T40059-



Removing

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

♦ ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Removing and installing injectors .

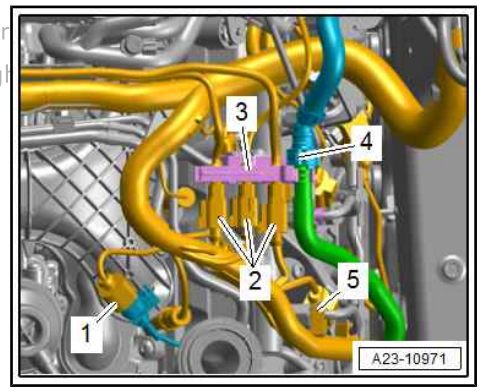
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

– If fitted, disconnect vacuum hose -4- and move hose clear at bracket.

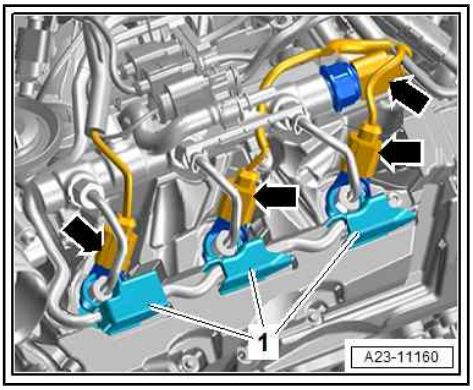
– Detach electrical connectors -2- from bracket and move electrical wiring clear.

– Unclip bracket -3- from high-pressure lines and move to one side together with SCR line.

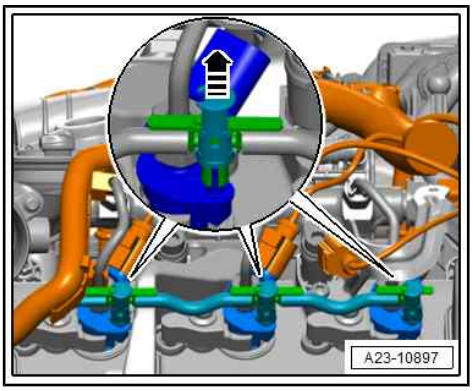
– Unclip bracket -5- from high-pressure lines and press to one side together with electrical wiring harness.



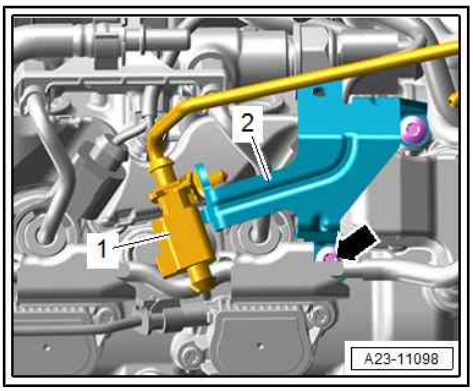
– If fitted, detach covers -1-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -arrows-.



– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow-.

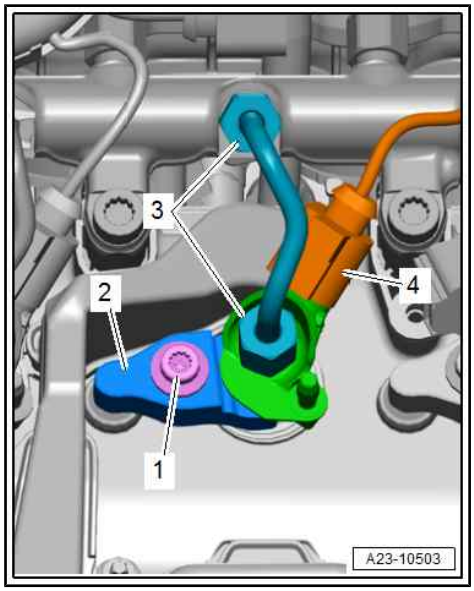


– Move electrical connector -1- for injector for reducing agent -N474- clear at bracket -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Version without noise insulation:



WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*

– Unscrew union nuts -3- and detach high-pressure pipe.

Caution

Used injectors must always be re-installed on the same cylinder.

- *Mark injectors to ensure that they are re-installed at the correct cylinders.*

– Mark position of clamping piece -2- in relation to injector with paint for re-installation.

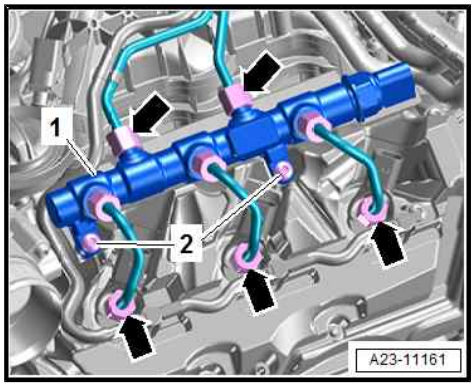
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove clamping piece.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If it is not possible to remove the clamping piece, detach injector.

Version with noise insulation:



WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*

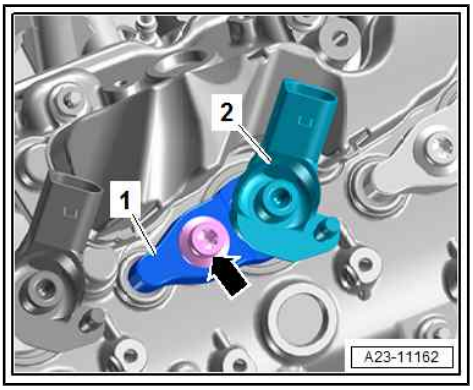
– Remove union nuts -arrows- and bolts -2- and detach fuel rail -1-.

– Detach noise insulation.
– Use a vacuum cleaner to remove any residue left by the noise insulation.

Caution

Used injectors must always be re-installed on the same cylinder.

- ***Mark injectors to ensure that they are re-installed at the correct cylinders.***



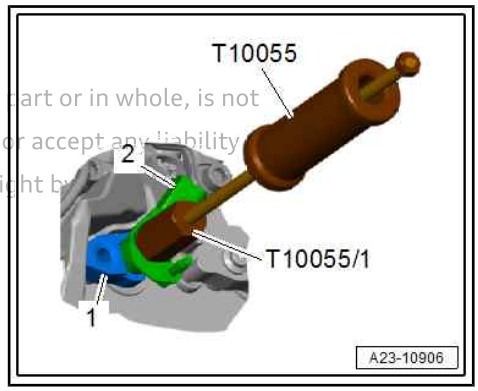
– Mark position of clamping piece -1- in relation to injector -2- with paint for re-installation.
– Remove bolt -arrow- and detach clamping piece.

Note

If it is not possible to remove the clamping piece, detach injector.

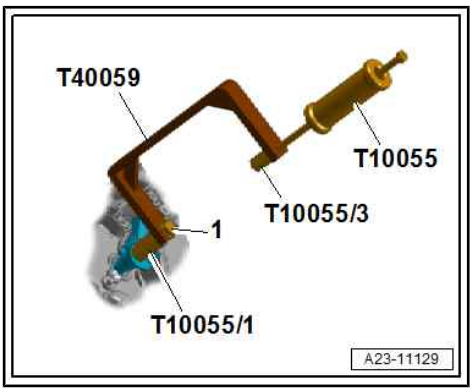
All versions (continued):

– Fit puller - T10055- with adapter -T10055/1- on injector -2-, as shown in illustration.
– Detach injector with clamping piece -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If puller - T10055- with adapter -T10055/1- cannot be fitted directly, use puller - T40059- with corresponding bolt -1- in addition.
– Place removed injectors on a clean cloth.



5.8.3 Installing injectors

Installing new injectors

When installing a new injector, the following components must be renewed:

- Bolt for clamping piece
- Copper seal
- O-ring for injector bore
- O-ring for fuel return line connection

Installing used injectors

When re-installing a used injector in the same cylinder, the following components must be renewed:

- Bolt for clamping piece
- Copper seal
- O-ring for injector bore
- O-ring for fuel return line connection

– Spray tip of injector nozzle with rust-solvent spray. Wait approx. 5 minutes and wipe off soot particles and oil with a cloth.

– To remove the old copper seal from the injector, clamp the seal carefully in a vice so that it is just held between the jaws without turning. Then carefully pull and twist the injector out of the copper seal by hand.

– Clean off deposits under the copper seal using a suitable scraper.

Continued (same procedure for used and new injectors):

Caution

Risk of damage to injector sealing surface.

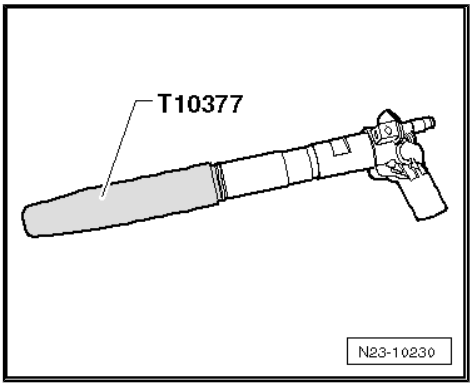
- *To remove carbon deposits from the injector sealing surface, clean the injector bore in the cylinder head with cleaning kit - VAS 6811- .*

– Fit new copper seal.

– Lubricate all O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Renew O-ring for injector bore using assembly sleeve - T10377- .



– Install injectors.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

– Install high-pressure pipes ⇒ page 265 .

Note

Lubricate all O-rings with engine oil or assembly oil before installing.

– Push the return line connections carefully over the new seals and onto the injectors.

• The connection must engage audibly.

– Carefully press down release pin.

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Removing and installing injectors

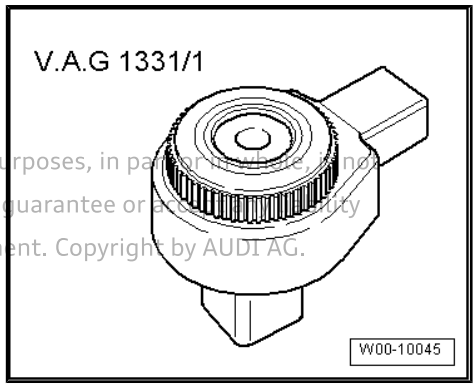
Tightening torques

- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - injectors”, page 238
- ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system”, page 211

5.9 Installing high-pressure pipes

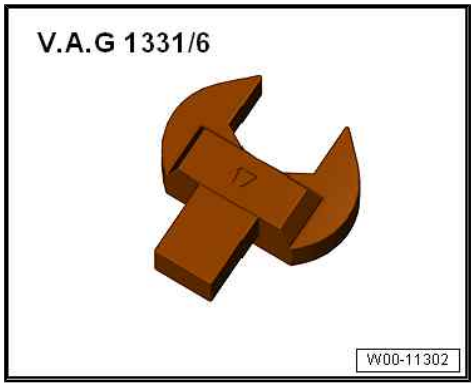
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Ratchet - V.A.G 1331/1-

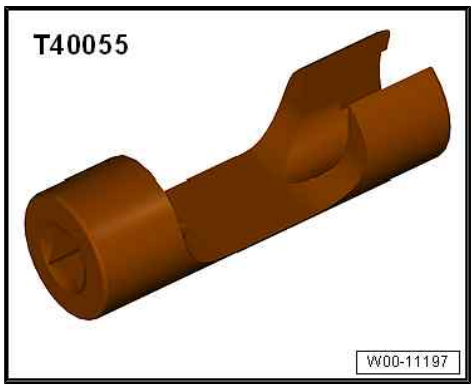


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Open end spanner insert, AF 17 - V.A.G 1331/6-



- Socket - T40055-



Procedure

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .

Note

- *Before re-installation, check taper seats for deformation, cracks, damage, scores and corrosion; renew high-pressure pipes if they are damaged or corroded.*
- *Check that bore in pipe is not distorted, restricted or damaged in any other way.*
- *When re-installing "old" high-pressure pipe, observe marking for installation position.*

– Use vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from taper seat at high-pressure reservoir (rail).

– Clean fuel pipe and end of pipe with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.

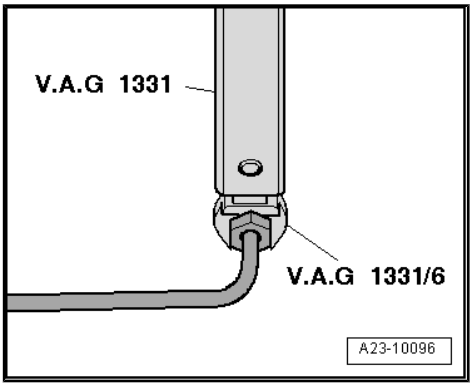
– Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil.

– Hand-tighten union nuts on high-pressure pipes until they make contact (ensure that pipes are not under tension).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

17 mm union nuts on high-pressure reservoir (rail):

– To secure high-pressure pipes, use torque wrench - V.A.G 1331- with tool insert, AF 17 - V.A.G 1331/6- .

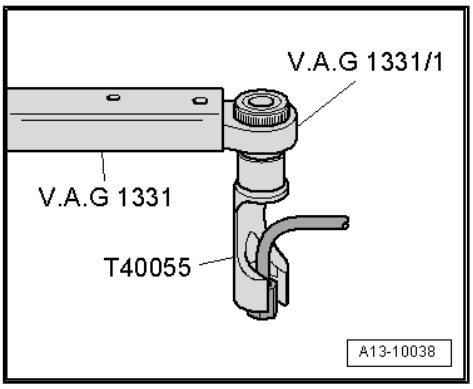


17 mm union nuts on injectors:

– To tighten unions of injectors, use torque wrench - V.A.G 1331- with ratchet - V.A.G 1331/1- and socket - T40055- .

Tightening torques

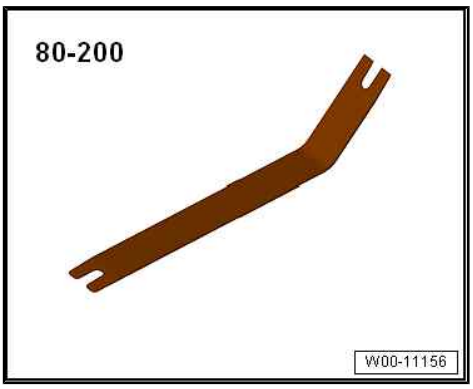
- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - injectors”, page 238
- ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - cylinder head cover”, page 110



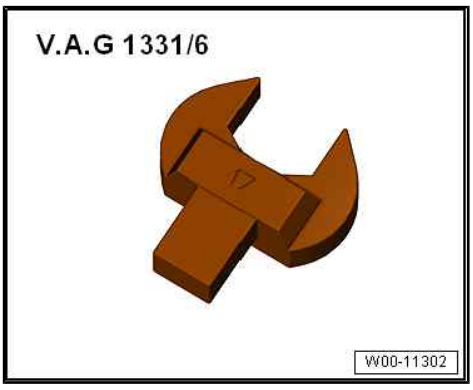
5.10 Removing and installing high-pressure reservoir (rail)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

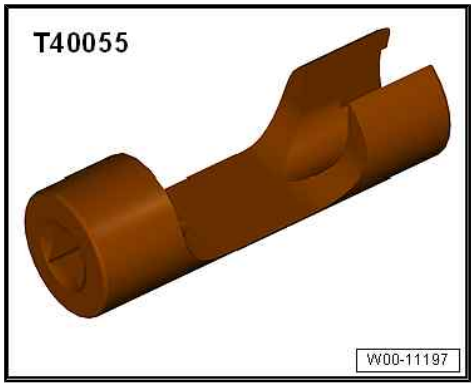


- Open end spanner insert, AF 17 - V.A.G 1331/6-

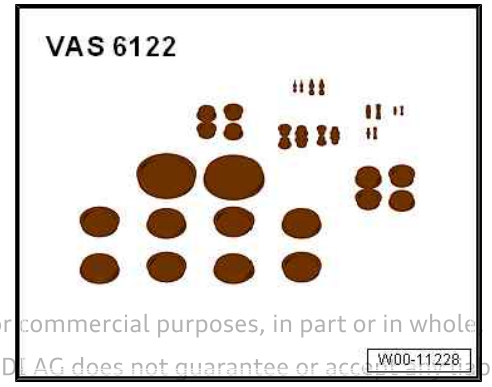


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Socket - T40055-



- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness*** ***⇒ page 7*** ***.***

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Removing and installing high-pressure reservoir (rail) .

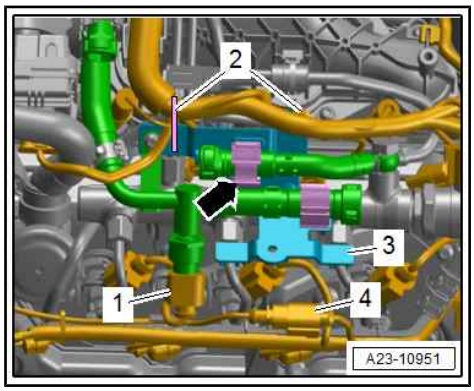
Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

– Unplug electrical connector -1- for fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- .

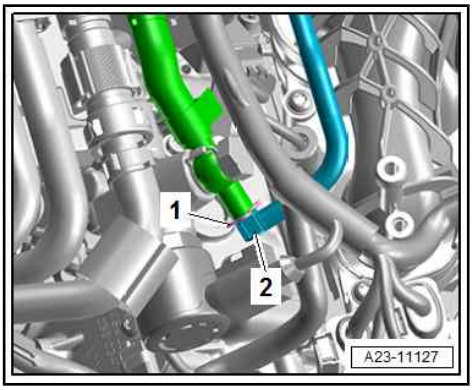
– If installed, move electrical connector -4- for exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- clear.

– Move electrical wiring harnesses -2- and fuel hose -arrow- clear at bracket -3-.

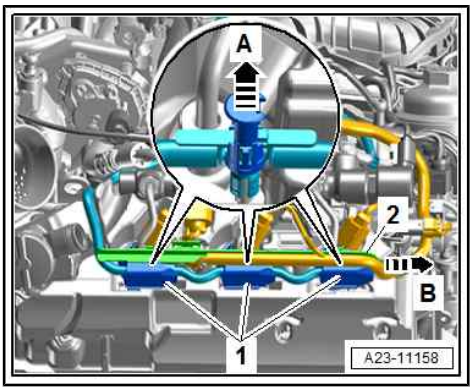
– Unclip bracket from high-pressure lines and push to one side.



– Detach retaining clip -1- and disconnect fuel return hose -2-.



– Detach bracket -2- with wiring harness from high-pressure pipes towards front -arrow B- and push upwards slightly.
– Detach covers -1-.
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow A-.



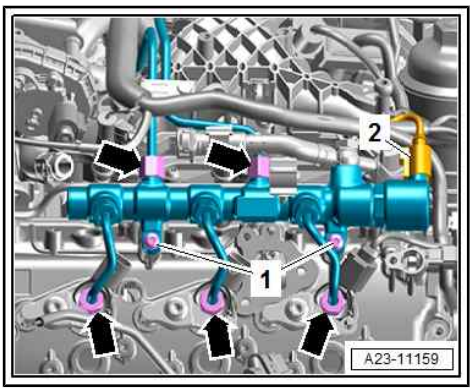
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

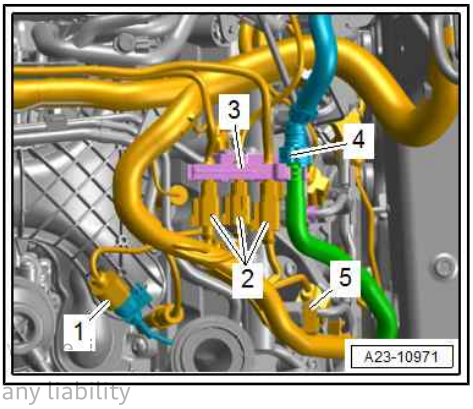
- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*



– Remove union nuts -arrows- and bolts -1- and detach fuel rail.

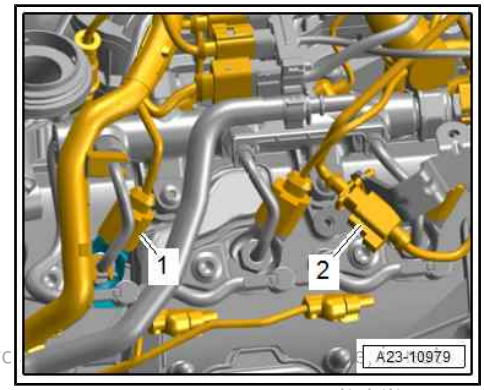
Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

– If fitted, disconnect vacuum hose -4- and move hose clear at bracket.
– Detach electrical connectors -2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wiring clear.
– Unclip bracket -3- from high-pressure lines and move to one side together with SCR line.
– Unclip bracket -5- from high-pressure lines and press to one side together with electrical wiring harness.



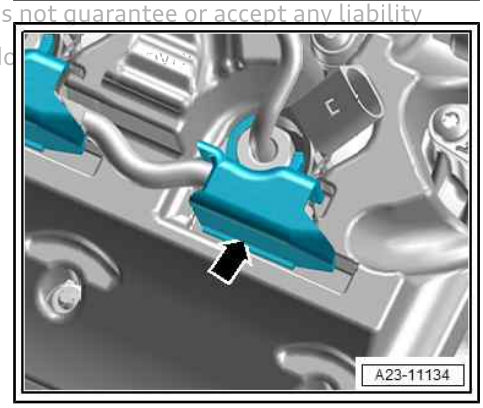
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove electrical connector -2- for injector for reducing agent - N474- from bracket.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for injector, cylinder 4 - N33- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

– Detach covers -arrow-.



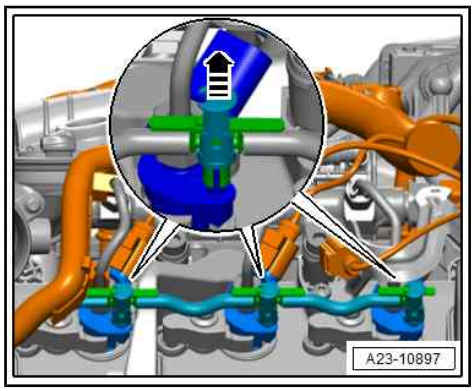
– Disconnect fuel return hoses from injectors; to do so, press down both tabs and at the same time pull centre piece up to release connection -arrow-.

WARNING

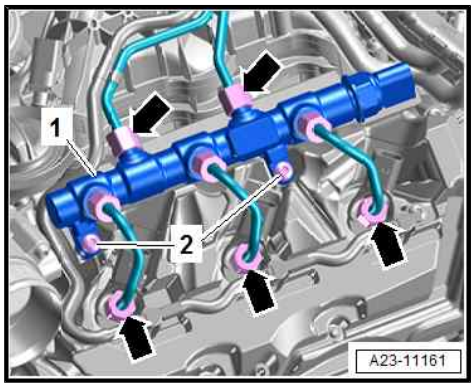
The fuel system is pressurised.

Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

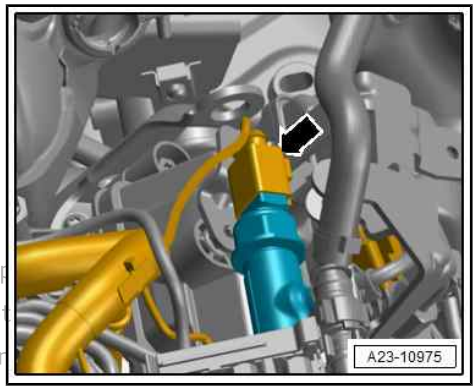
- ***Put on safety goggles.***
- ***Put on protective gloves.***
- ***Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).***



– Remove union nuts -arrows- and bolts -2- and detach fuel rail -1-.



– Unplug electrical connector -arrow-.



Both sides (continued):

– Seal off open lines and connections with plugs (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install high-pressure pipes ⇒page 265 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Injectors/high-pressure reservoir (rail); Removing and installing high-pressure reservoir (rail) .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - injectors”, page 238
- ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - hose connections for charge air system”, page 211

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
www.erwin.audi.vwg-mbh.com/erwin/help/faq-intro.html in this docu

6 Senders and sensors

⇒ “6.1 Removing and installing air mass meter G70 ”, page 272

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing fuel temperature sender G81 ”, page 272

⇒ “6.3 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247 ”, page 272

⇒ “6.4 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender for low pressure G410 ”, page 274

⇒ “6.5 Checking fuel pressure regulating valve N276 ”, page 275

⇒ “6.6 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve N276 ”, page 275

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing pressure differential sender G505 ”, page 279

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1 Removing and installing air mass meter - G70-

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing air mass meter - G70- .

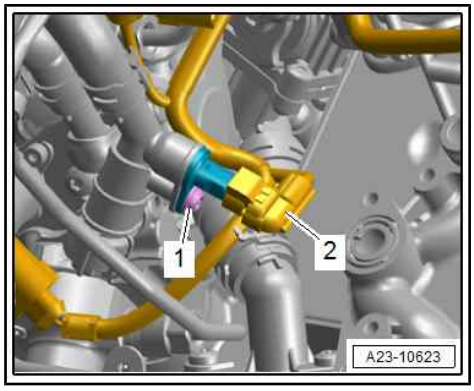
6.2 Removing and installing fuel temperature sender - G81-

Removing

– Remove exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front) ⇒ page 314 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach fuel temperature sender - G81- from connection.



Installing

– Install exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front) ⇒ page 314 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump”, page 280

6.3 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender - G247-

Note

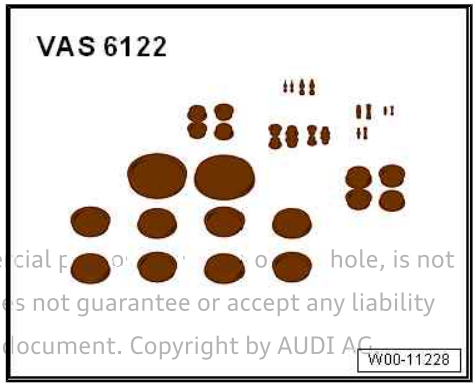
◆ *The fuel pressure sender - G247- continuously measures the fuel pressure in the high-pressure system. It transmits a corresponding voltage signal to the engine control unit - J623- .*

◆ *Should the fuel pressure sender fail, the engine control unit will control the fuel pressure via a mapped open-loop backup function. Maximum engine speed in this mode is restricted.*

◆ *The fuel pressure sender - G247- has a deformable sealing lip.*

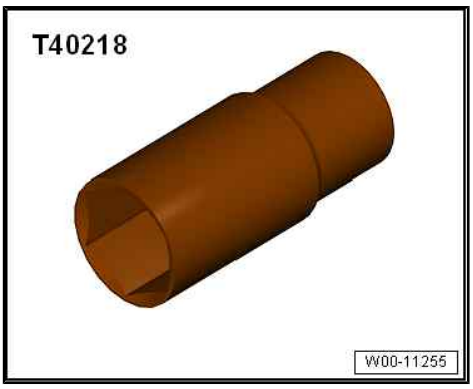
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Socket - T40218-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing fuel pressure sender - G247- .

Caution

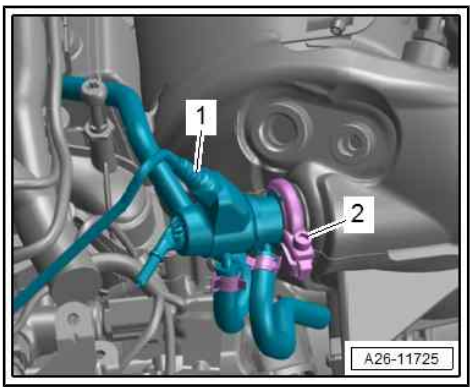
Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

– Unscrew bolt -2- and release screw-type clip.

– Detach injector for reducing agent - N474- -item 1- and place to one side.

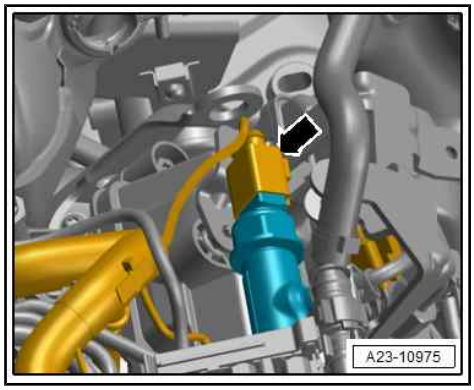
– Clean area all around fuel pressure sender - G247- with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.



Note

- *Clean carefully; cleaning solution must not enter the electrical connector.*
- *Make sure no dirt gets into opening in high-pressure reservoir (rail).*

– Unplug electrical connector -arrow-.



Note

Do not use an open-end spanner for loosening or tightening.

– Unscrew fuel pressure sender - G247- using socket, 27 mm - T40218- .
– Remove dirt from opening in high-pressure reservoir (rail) using a vacuum cleaner. Do not use metal tools, etc.
– Seal off hole in high-pressure reservoir (rail) with a plug (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If the deformable sealing lip and the thread of the fuel pressure sender - G247- are not damaged, the sender can be re-used once.*
- *Check sealing surface at opening in high-pressure reservoir.*
- *Check that the deformable sealing lip and the thread on the new fuel pressure sender are not damaged.*
- *The beginning of the thread and the deformable sealing lip of the fuel pressure sender must be coated with diesel fuel.*

– Screw in fuel pressure sender - G247- by hand until it makes contact and then tighten.
– Install injector for reducing agent - N474- ⇒ page 302 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing fuel pressure sender - G247- .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Fuel pressure sender -G247- - tightening torque"", page 242

Copyright by AUDI AG.
Any unauthorised use of these data, in whole or in part, is prohibited.
Any use of these data for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in these data. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.4 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410-

Removing

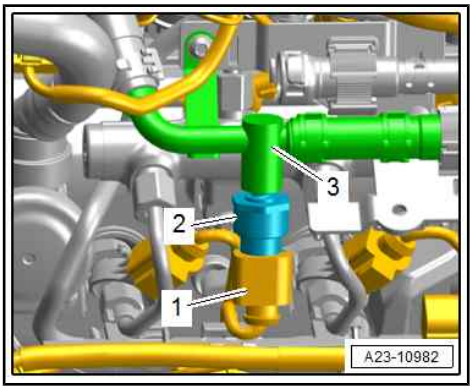
Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors ; Removing and installing fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- .

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness when working on the fuel supply system ⇒ page 7 .***

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Unscrew fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- -item 2- (counterhold at connection -3-).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Screw in fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- by hand until it makes contact and then tighten.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors ; Removing and installing fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. "" Fuel pressure sender for low pressure -G410- - tightening torque"" , page 282

6.5 Checking fuel pressure regulating valve - N276-

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Checking fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- .

6.6 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve - N276-

⇒ "6.6.1 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve N276 - version 1", page 275

⇒ "6.6.2 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve N276 - version 2", page 278

6.6.1 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- - version 1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Versions of fuel pressure regulating valve - N276-
⇒ Fig. "" Fuel pressure regulating valve -N276- "", page 241

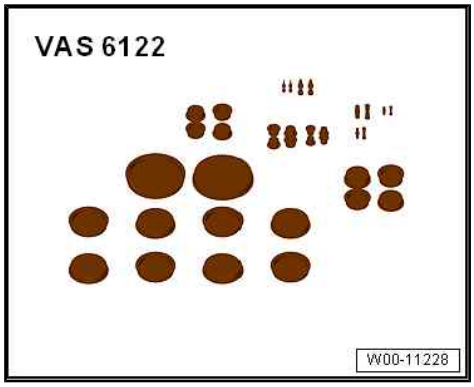
Note

◆ *The fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- maintains a constant pressure in the high-pressure reservoir (rail) and the injector pipes (high-pressure fuel circuit).*
◆ *It is not possible to start engine if fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- is defective.*
◆ *If the pressure in the high-pressure fuel circuit is too high, the regulating valve opens to allow some of the fuel to flow back from the high-pressure reservoir (rail) to the fuel tank via a return hose.*
◆ *If the pressure in the high-pressure fuel circuit is too low, the valve closes and seals off the high-pressure section of the system from the low-pressure section.*
◆ *The fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- has a deformable sealing lip and can only be used once. Do not install it for test purposes.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



- Open end spanner insert, AF 30 - T10553-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- .

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.

- ***Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .***

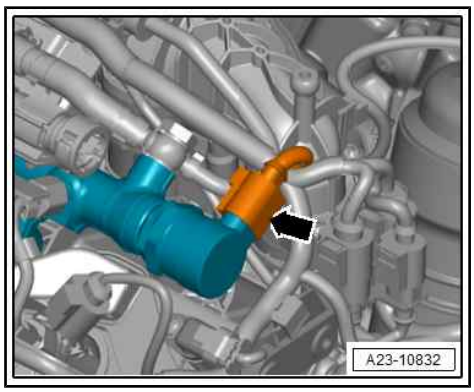
– Clean thread and area around fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.

- Make sure no dirt gets into opening in high-pressure reservoir.
- Clean carefully; cleaning solution must not enter the electrical connector.

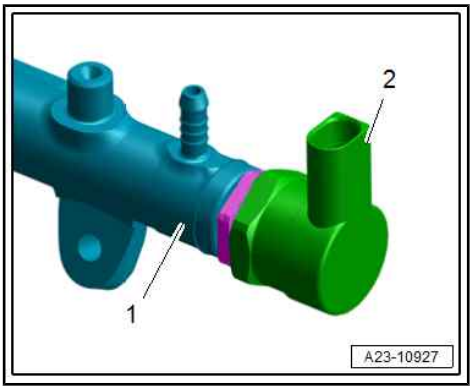
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove banjo bolt for fuel return hoses.

– Unplug electrical connector -arrow- at fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- .



– Loosen union screw using open-end spanner insert, 30 mm - T10553- (at the same time, counterhold at hexagon flats on housing). Then unscrew and remove by hand.
– Extract dirt from opening in high-pressure reservoir (thread and sealing surface) using a vacuum cleaner. Do not use metal tools, etc.
– Seal off open connection in high-pressure reservoir (rail) with a plug (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .



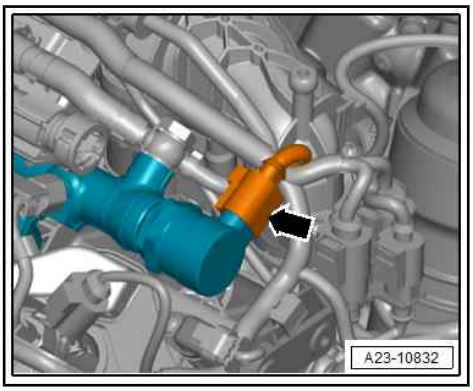
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- must always be renewed after it has been removed.*
- *Check sealing surface at opening in high-pressure reservoir.*
- *Check that the deformable sealing lip and the thread on the new regulating valve are not damaged.*
- *Coat beginning of thread, deformable sealing lip and O-ring of regulating valve lightly with diesel fuel.*

– Tighten union nut by hand.
– Position fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- so that electrical wiring is not under tension when connector -arrow- is plugged in.
– Counterhold hexagon flats on regulating valve housing in this position with open-end spanner and tighten union screw with open-end spanner insert, 30 mm - T10553- .



Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. “” Fuel pressure regulating valve -N276- ”“ , page 241

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.6.2 Removing and installing fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- - version 2

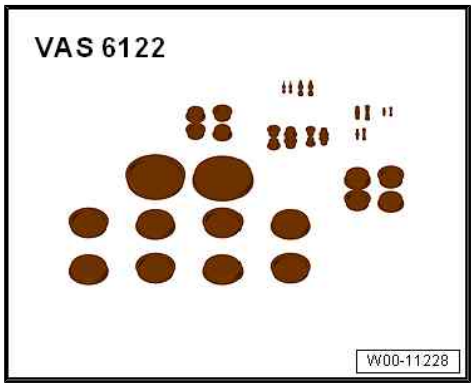
Versions of fuel pressure regulating valve - N276-
⇒ Fig. "" Fuel pressure regulating valve -N276- "" , page 241

Note

- *The fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- maintains a constant pressure in the high-pressure reservoir (rail) and the injector pipes (high-pressure fuel circuit).*
- *It is not possible to start engine if fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- is defective.*
- *If the pressure in the high-pressure fuel circuit is too high, the regulating valve opens to allow some of the fuel to flow back from the high-pressure reservoir (rail) to the fuel tank via a return hose.*
- *If the pressure in the high-pressure fuel circuit is too low, the valve closes and seals off the high-pressure section of the system from the low-pressure section.*
- *The fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- has a deformable sealing lip and can only be used once. Do not install it for test purposes.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester
- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



- Open end spanner insert, AF 30 - T10553-



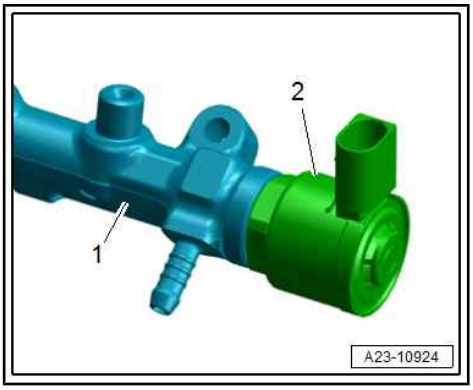
Removing

– Remove high-pressure reservoir (rail) (right-side)
⇒ page 267 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The high-pressure reservoir can be clamped in a vice in order to remove the pressure regulating valve; however, it is essential that protective jaw covers are used. Do NOT take up the weight of the high-pressure reservoir by the threaded connections for the high-pressure pipes or the retaining tabs for the cylinder head.



– Clean thread and area around fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry.

- Make sure no dirt gets into opening in high-pressure reservoir.
- Clean carefully; cleaning solution must not enter the electrical connector.

– Unscrew fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- -item 2- from high-pressure reservoir -1- using open-end spanner insert, 30 mm - T10553- .

– Extract dirt from opening in high-pressure reservoir (thread and sealing surface) using a vacuum cleaner. Do not use metal tools, etc.

– Seal off open connection in high-pressure reservoir (rail) with a plug (thoroughly cleaned) from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Note

- *Fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- must always be renewed after it has been removed.*
- *Check sealing surface at opening in high-pressure reservoir.*
- *Check that the deformable sealing lip and the thread on the new regulating valve are not damaged.*
- *Coat beginning of thread, deformable sealing lip and O-ring of regulating valve lightly with diesel fuel.*

– Tighten fuel pressure regulating valve - N276- using open-end spanner insert, 30 mm - T10553- .

– Install high-pressure reservoir (rail) (right-side) ⇒ page 267 .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. “” Fuel pressure regulating valve -N276- ”” , page 241

6.7 Removing and installing pressure differential sender - G505-

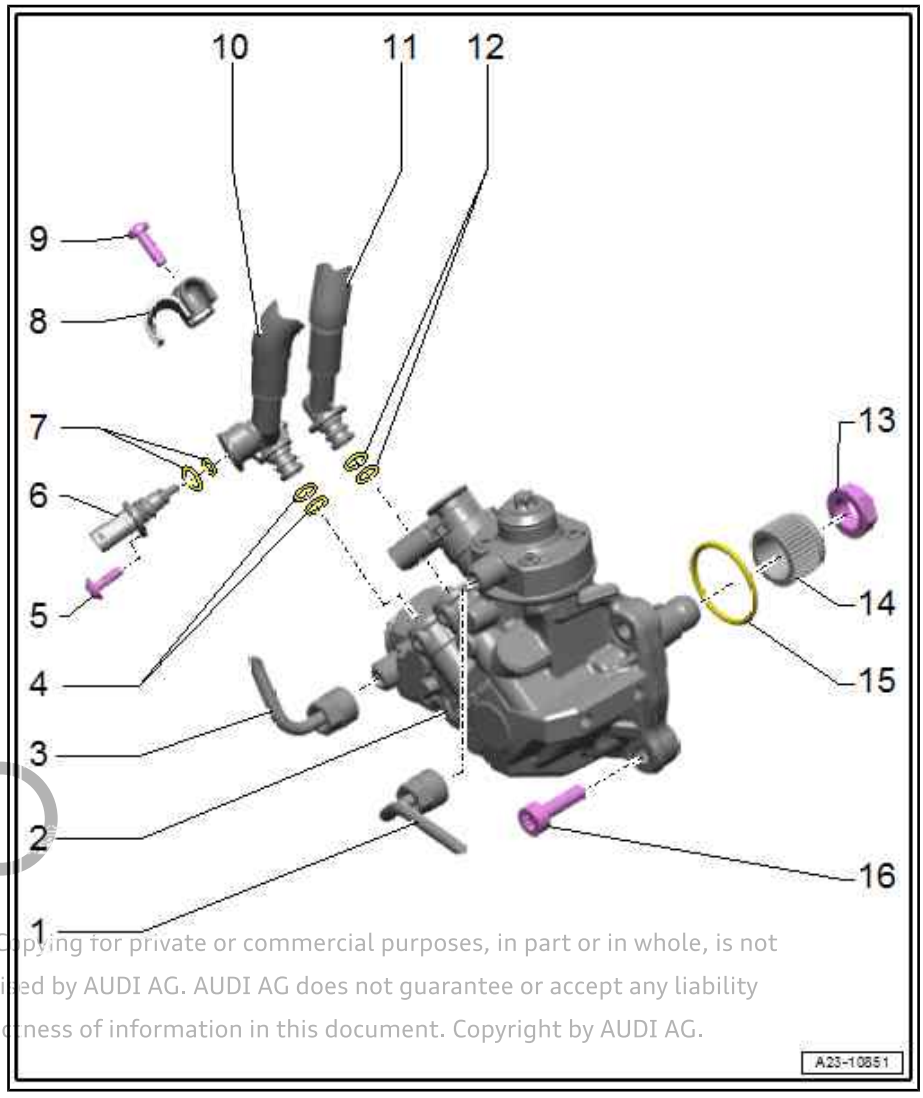
All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing pressure differential sender - G505- .

7 High-pressure pump

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump”, page 280

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump”, page 282

7.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump



1 - High-pressure pipe

- ❑ Do not alter shape
- ❑ Check for damage before re-installing
- ❑ Always renew high-pressure pipe when renewing high-pressure pump
- ❑ Installing ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil
- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles without electric compressor:

♦ 25 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles with electric compressor:

♦ 35 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

2 - High-pressure pump

Caution

Risk of malfunctions caused by dirt.
Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .

Running when dry causes irreparable damage to high-pressure pump.
If the high-pressure pump has been removed and re-installed or renewed, the first fuel filling must be performed before the engine is started for the first time ⇒ page 217 .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 - High-pressure pipe

- ❑ Do not alter shape
- ❑ Check for damage before re-installing
- ❑ Always renew high-pressure pipe when renewing high-pressure pump
- ❑ Installing ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil
- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles without electric compressor:

♦ 25 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

- ❑ Tightening torques for vehicles with electric compressor:

♦ 35 Nm if re-installing high-pressure pipe

♦ 15 Nm +60° if installing a new high-pressure pipe

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - O-rings

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ page 282

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

6 - Fuel temperature sender - G81-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 272

7 - O-rings

- ❑ Renew after removing

8 - Bracket

- ❑ For fuel hoses

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Connection

- ❑ Fuel supply line

11 - Connection

- ❑ Fuel return line

12 - O-rings

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ page 282

13 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ To loosen, counterhold adapter -item 14- using counterhold tool - T40248- or counterhold tool - T40292-
- ❑ Tightening torque

♦ Vehicles without electric compressor: 70 Nm

♦ Vehicles with electric compressor: 20 Nm +50°

14 - Adapter

- ❑ For chain sprocket for high-pressure pump
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ To loosen nut -item 13-, use counterhold tool - T40248- or counterhold tool - T40292-

15 - O-ring

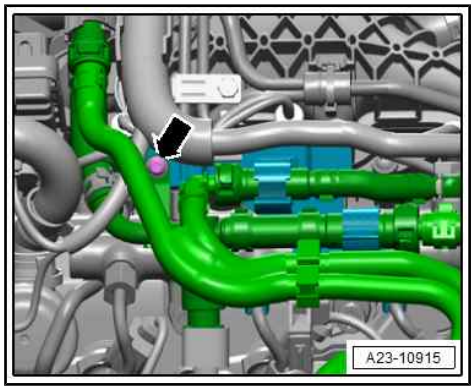
- ❑ Renew after removing

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm

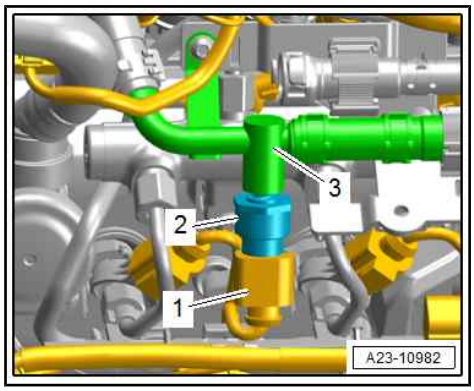
Connection to bracket - tightening torque

– Tighten bolt -arrow- to 3.5 Nm.



Fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- - tightening torque

– Tighten fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410- -item 2- to 22 Nm.

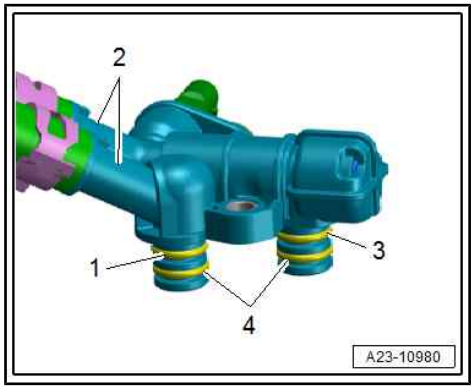


Allocation of O-rings to connection -2-

1 - O-ring (blue)

3 - O-ring (blue)

4 - Green O-rings

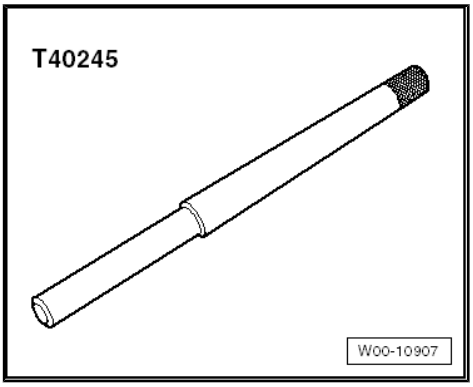


7.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump

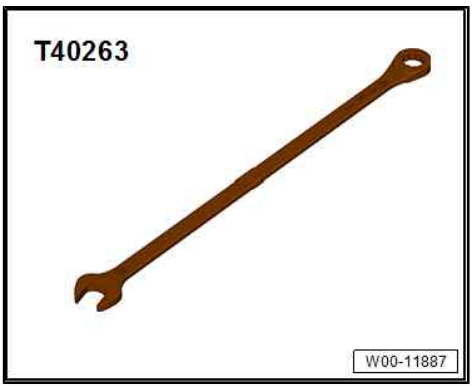
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

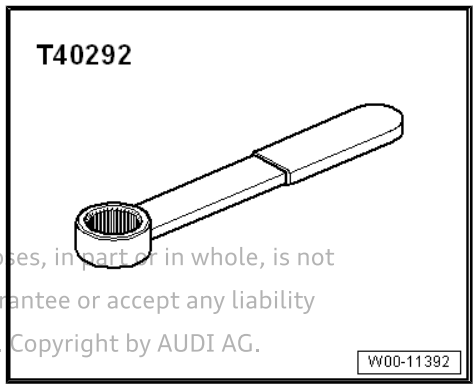
- Locking pin - T40245-



- Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-

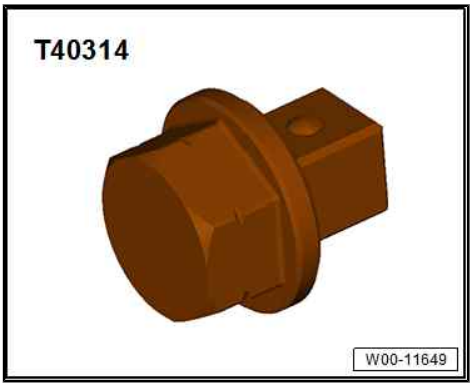


- Counterhold tool - T40292-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

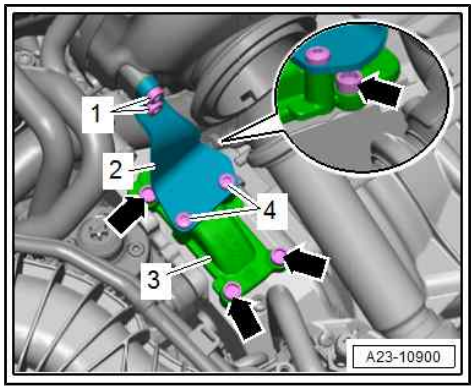
- Adapter - T40314-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; High-pressure pump; Removing and installing high-pressure pump .

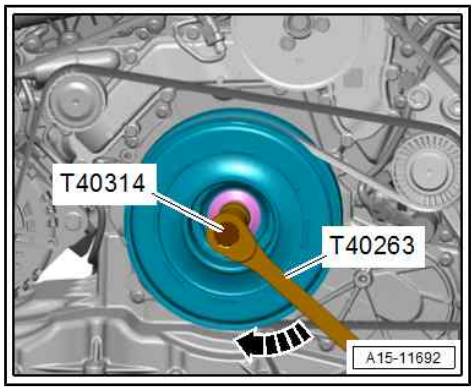
– Remove emission control module ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Removing and installing emission control module .
– Remove coolant pipe (top right) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .
– Remove coolant shut-off valve ⇒ page 198 .
– Unscrew bolts -1, 4- and remove bracket -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach cover -3-.



Caution

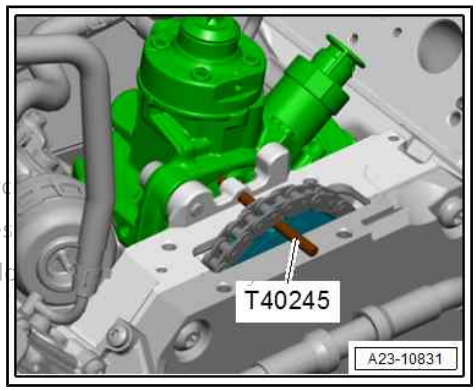
Irreparable damage can be caused if the camshaft timing chain slips.

- ***Turn crankshaft only in direction of engine rotation -arrow-.***

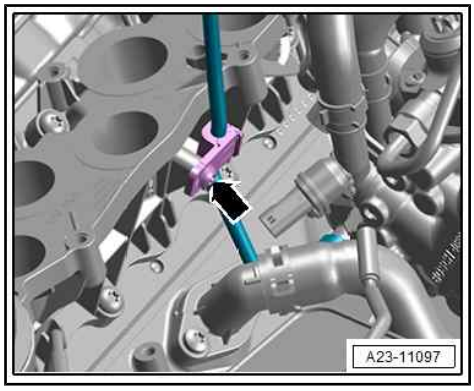


– Use wrench, 21 mm - T40263- and adapter - T40314- to turn crankshaft until it is possible to lock chain sprocket for high-pressure pump with locking pin - T40245- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

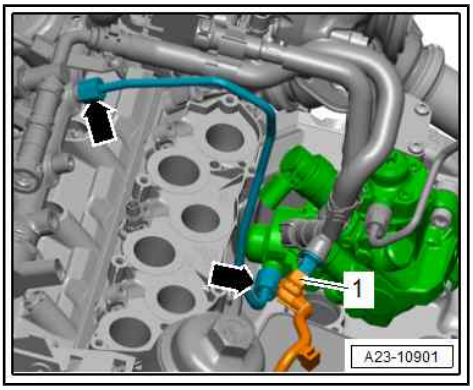


– Remove bolt -arrow- for retaining clip.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- for fuel temperature sender - G81- .

– Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 7 .



WARNING

The fuel system is pressurised.

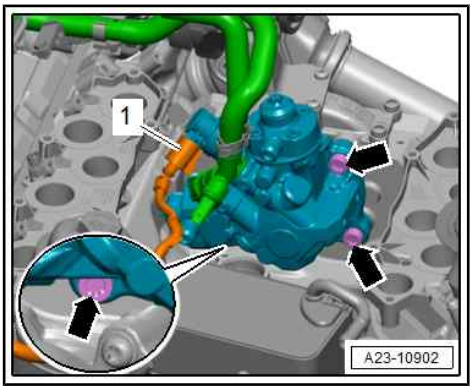
Risk of injury as fuel may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*

– Unscrew union nuts -arrows- and detach high-pressure pipe.

Unplug electrical connector -1- for fuel metering valve - N290- .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach high-pressure pump.



Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the exhaust gas recirculation pipe removed.

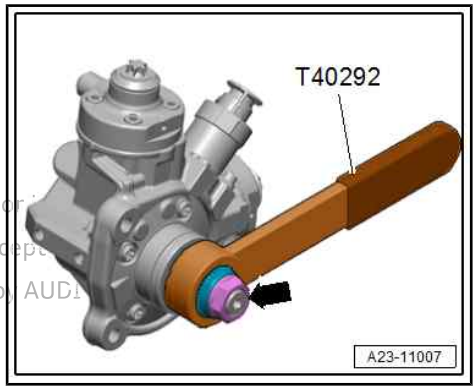
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Renew seal and O-ring after removal.*
- *Always renew high-pressure pipes when renewing high-pressure pump.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Use counterhold tool - T40292- to tighten nut -arrow- of adapter.

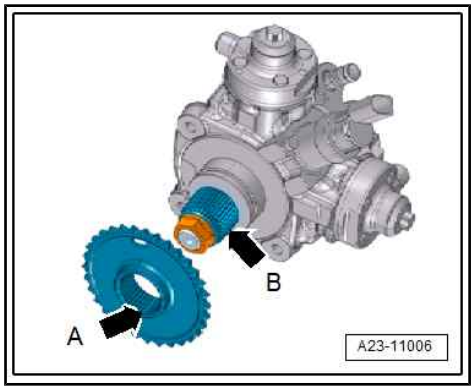
– Insert high-pressure pump into chain sprocket.

- The dual toothing -arrow A- on the chain sprocket must align with the groove -arrow B- in the adapter on the high-pressure pump shaft.

– Install high-pressure pipes ⇒ page 265 .

– Install coolant shut-off valve ⇒ page 198 .

– Install coolant pipe (top right) ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes .



Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; High-pressure pump; Removing and installing high-pressure pump .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Caution

Running when dry causes irreparable damage to high-pressure pump.

- ***After installing the high-pressure pump, the pump must first be filled with fuel before the engine is started for the first time ⇒ page 217 .***

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump”, page 280
- ⇒ Fig. ““Turbocharger - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 205
- ⇒ Fig. ““Retaining clamp for high-pressure pipe - tightening torque”“ , page 225
- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover”, page 65

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Lambda probe

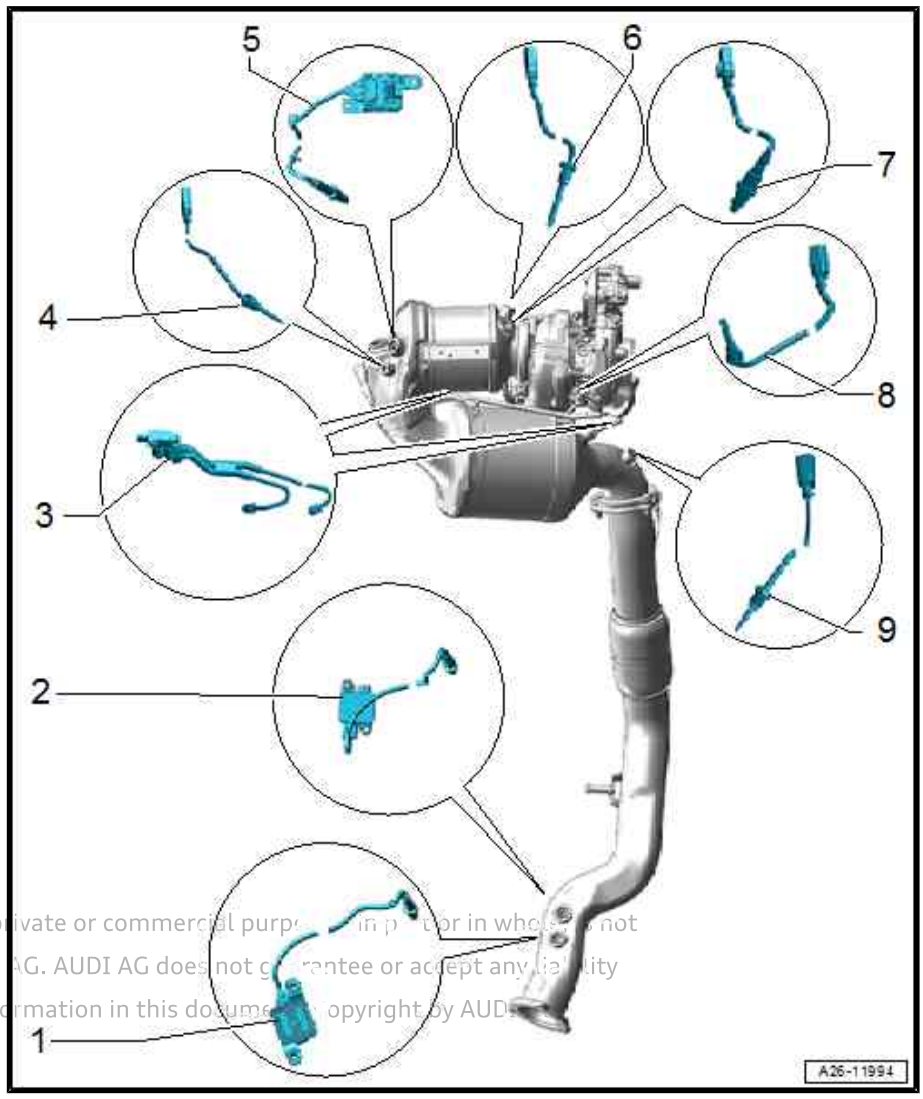
⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - Lambda probe”, page 287

⇒ “8.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe”, page 288

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing NOx senders”, page 289

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing particulate sensor G784 ”, page 289

8.1 Exploded view - Lambda probe



1 - NOx sender 2 - G687- with control unit for NOx sender 2 - J881- / control unit 2 for NOx sender - GX46-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe
- ❑ Installation position varies
- ❑ 52 Nm

2 - Particulate sensor - G784-

- ❑ Installation position varies depending on model version ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe
- ❑ 52 Nm

3 - Pressure differential sender - G505-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Senders and sensors; Removing and installing pressure differential sender - G505-
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
  ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10
- ❑ Tighten pressure line to 45 Nm

4 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 4 (page 305)

5 - NOx sender - G295- with control unit for NOx sender - J583- / control unit for NOx sender - GX30-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe
- ❑ 52 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 6 (page 305)

7 - Lambda probe - G39- with Lambda probe heater - Z19- / Lambda probe 1 before catalytic converter - GX10-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Observe fitting instructions ⇒ page 289
- ❑ 52 Nm

8 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 8 (page 305)

9 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648-

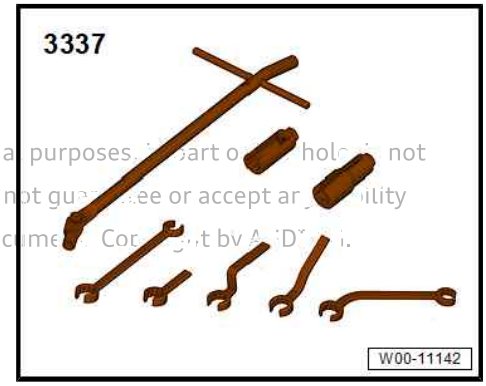
- ❑ Not fitted on all models ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ ⇒ Item 9 (page 305)

8.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-

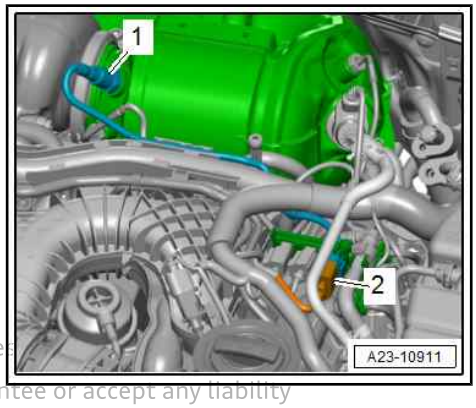
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of ... holdings not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe; Removing and installing Lambda probe .

– Detach electrical connector -2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.
– Unscrew Lambda probe - G39- -item 1- using a tool from Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Threads of new Lambda probes are already coated with assembly paste; the paste must not get into the slots on the probe body.*
- *In the case of a used Lambda probe grease only the thread with high-temperature paste. The paste must not get into the slots on the Lambda probe body. For high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue*
- *When installing, the Lambda probe wiring must always be re-attached at the same locations to prevent it from coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.*

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe; Removing and installing Lambda probe .

Tightening torque

- ⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - Lambda probe”, page 287

8.3 Removing and installing NOx senders

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe ; Removing and installing NOx senders.

8.4 Removing and installing particulate sensor - G784-

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Lambda probe ; Removing and installing particulate sensor - G784- .

9 Engine control unit

All procedures and components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 23 ; Engine control unit .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

26 – Exhaust system

1 Exhaust pipes/silencers

⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 291

⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing front exhaust pipe", page 291

⇒ "1.3 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers", page 291

⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing silencers", page 291

⇒ "1.5 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 291

⇒ "1.6 Checking exhaust system for leaks", page 291

1.1 Exploded view - silencers

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .

1.2 Removing and installing front exhaust pipe

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front exhaust pipe .

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction or copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Separating exhaust pipes/silencers .

1.4 Removing and installing silencers

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing silencers .

1.5 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Stress-free alignment of exhaust system .

1.6 Checking exhaust system for leaks

Procedure

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

– Start the engine and run at idling speed.

– Plug tailpipes during leak test (e.g. with cloth or plug).

– Listen for noise at the connection points of cylinder head/exhaust manifold, turbocharger/front exhaust pipe etc. to locate any leaks.

– Rectify any leaks that are found.

2 Emission control system

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - emission control system”, page 292

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing emission control module”, page 296

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing trap catalytic converter”, page 297

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing exhaust flap control unit J883 ”, page 298

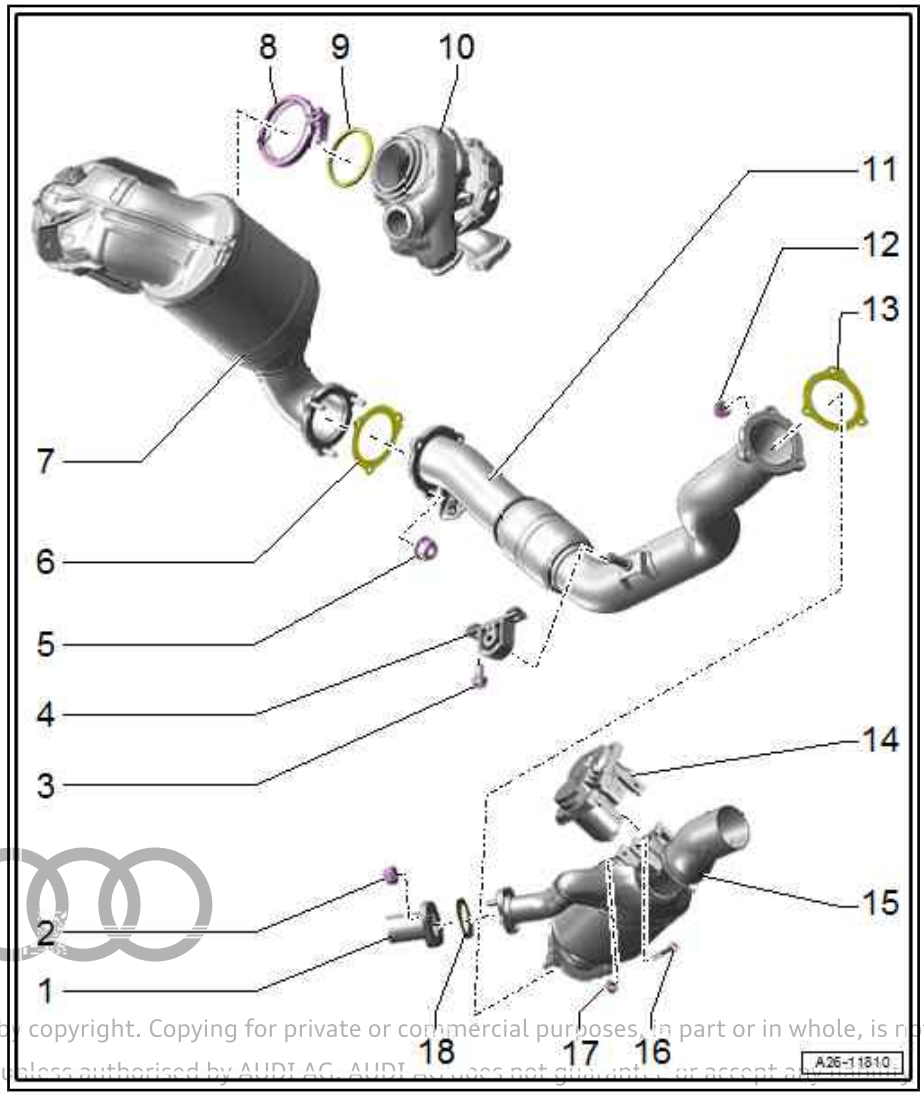
2.1 Exploded view - emission control system

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

Version 1



1 - Pipe
- ❑ For exhaust gas recirculation

2 - Nut
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation system; Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

4 - Mounting
- ❑ Renew if damaged

5 - Nut
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 25 Nm

6 - Gasket
- ❑ Renew after removing

7 - Emission control module
- ❑ With pressure line for pressure differential sender - G505-
- ❑ If renewing emission control module, dirt screen must also be renewed ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation system; Explo-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

ded view - exhaust gas recirculation system

- ❑ Mounting components ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

8 - Screw-type clip

- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm

9 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Turbocharger

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 202

11 - Front exhaust pipe

- ❑ With flexible joint; do not bend flexible joint more than 10° – otherwise it can be damaged
- ❑ Protect against knocks and impact
- ❑ Mounting components ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front exhaust pipe
- ❑ Align exhaust system so it is free of stress ⇒ page 291

12 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 25 Nm

13 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

14 - Exhaust flap control unit - J883-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

15 - Trap catalytic converter

- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

16 - Bolt

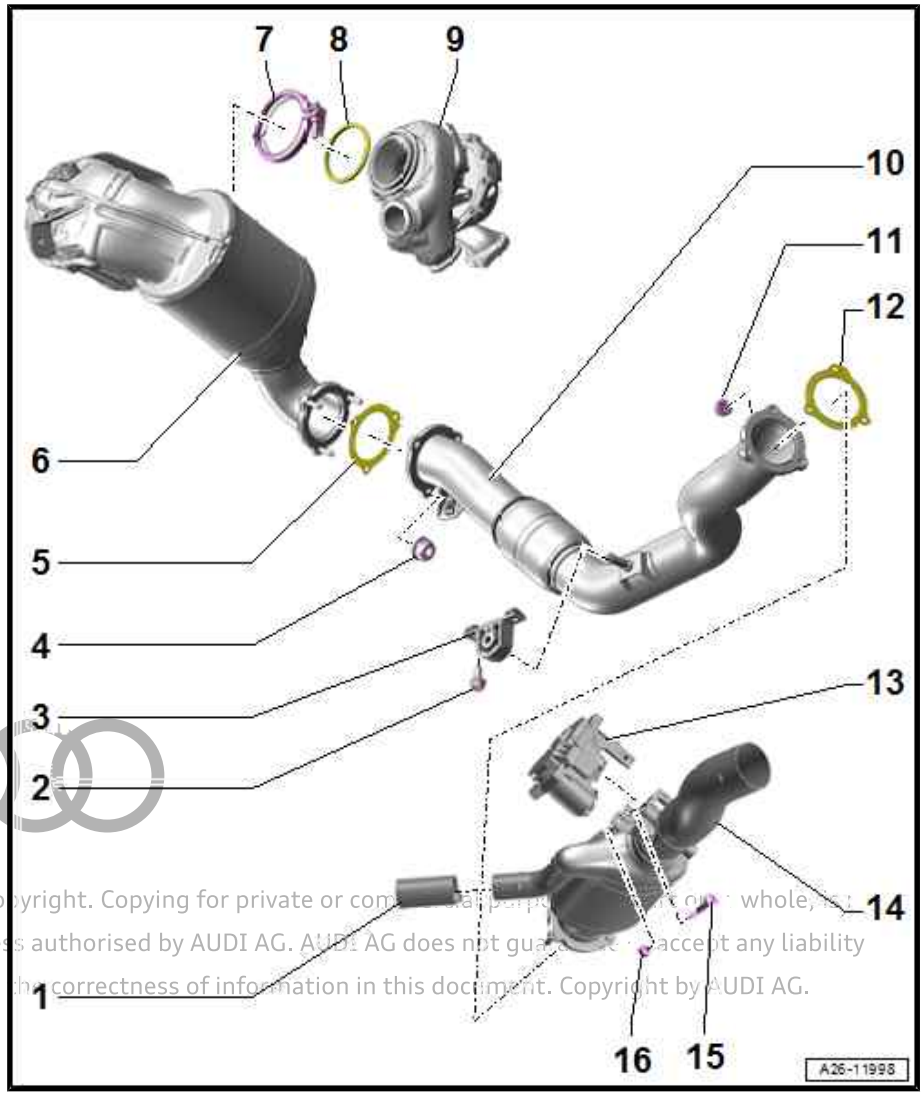
17 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

18 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

Version 2



1 - Clamp

- ❑ Before fitting, wrap tape around connection between trap catalytic converter and exhaust gas recirculation pipe ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Tighten screw connections evenly to 30 Nm

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Mounting

- ❑ Renew if damaged

4 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 25 Nm

5 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Emission control module

- ❑ With pressure line for pressure differential sender - G505-
- ❑ If renewing emission control module, dirt screen must also be renewed ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation system; Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system
- ❑ Mounting components ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

7 - Screw-type clip

- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm

8 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

9 - Turbocharger

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 202

10 - Front exhaust pipe

- ❑ With flexible joint; do not bend flexible joint more than 10° – otherwise it can be damaged
- ❑ Protect against knocks and impact
- ❑ Mounting components ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front exhaust pipe
- ❑ Align exhaust system so it is free of stress ⇒ page 291

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 25 Nm

12 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

13 - Exhaust flap control unit - J883-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298

14 - Trap catalytic converter

- ❑ Different versions available; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Wrap aluminium foil/glass cloth tape around connection between trap catalytic converter and exhaust gas recirculation pipe ⇒ page 296
- ❑ Performing adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

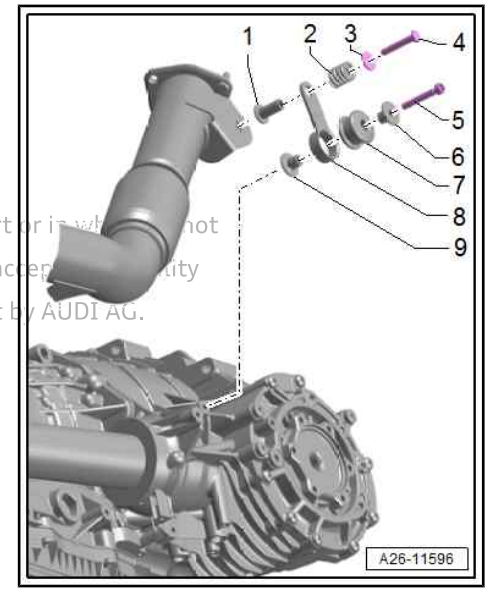
15 - Bolt

16 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

Components of mountings (front) for front exhaust pipe on gearbox

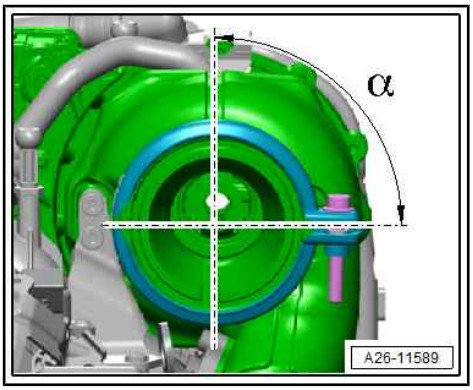
1 - Spacer sleeve
2 - Compression spring
3 - Washer
4 - Bolt, 23 Nm
5 - Bolt, 23 Nm
6 - Spacer sleeve
7 - Rubber buffer
8 - Bracket
9 - Spacer sleeve



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

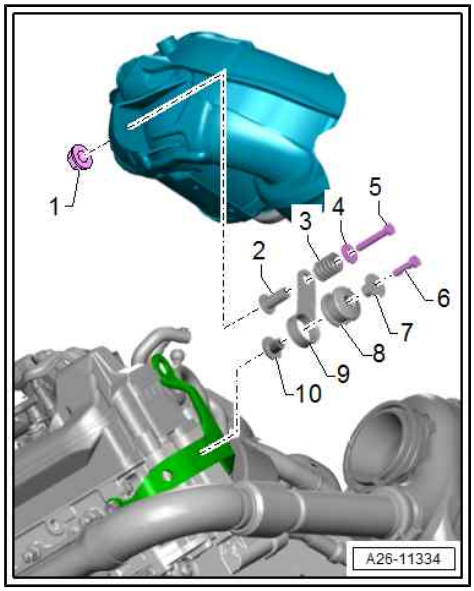
Installation position of screw-type clip for emission control module

- Angle -α- = 90° ± 15°.

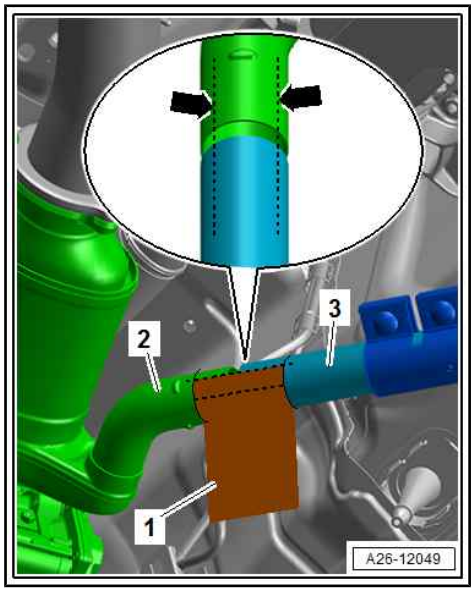


Mounting components for emission control module

1 - Cage nut (integrated in emission control module)
2 - Spacer sleeve
3 - Compression spring
4 - Washer
5 - Bolt, 23 Nm
6 - Bolt, 23 Nm
7 - Spacer sleeve
8 - Rubber buffer
9 - Bracket
10 - Spacer sleeve



Wrapping aluminium foil/glass cloth tape around connection between trap catalytic converter and exhaust gas recirculation pipe



Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Aluminium foil/glass cloth tape, e.g. 3M 3635033

– Cut aluminium foil/glass cloth tape -1- to size of 134 ± 2 mm.

– Position aluminium foil/glass cloth tape at connection between trap catalytic converter -2- and exhaust gas recirculation pipe -3-.

- One half of the tape must lie on the trap catalytic converter and the other on the exhaust gas recirculation pipe.
- When positioning the tape, start at the top of the pipe (area between -arrows- in illustration).

– Bond on aluminium foil/glass cloth tape all around -arrows-. Tape must be taut; smooth out any creases.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplicating for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing emission control module

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Removing and installing emission control module .

2.3 Removing and installing trap catalytic converter

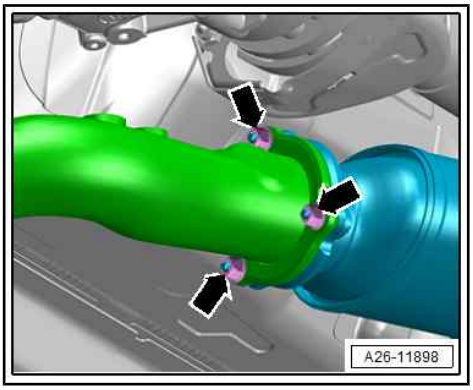
Removing

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

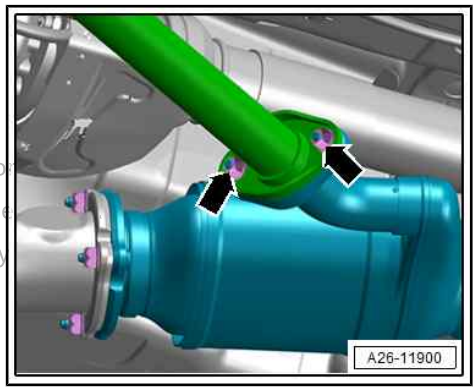
- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove nuts -arrows-.



Version 1:

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

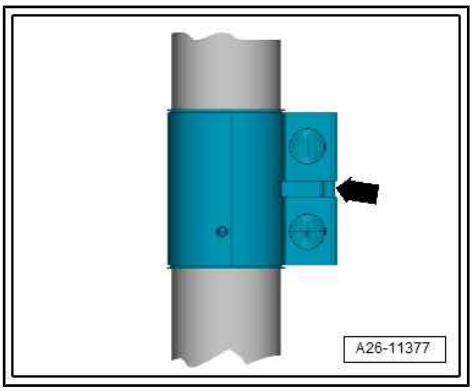


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

Version 2:

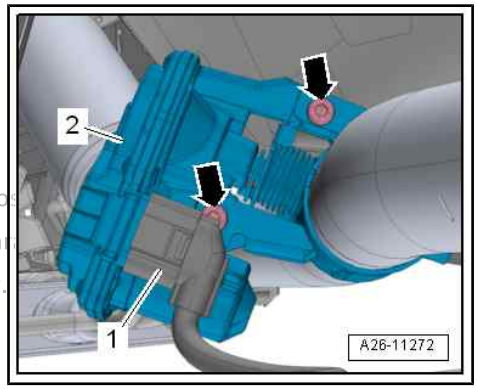
– Wrap aluminium foil/glass cloth tape around connection between trap catalytic converter and exhaust gas recirculation pipe ⇒ page 296 .

– Release clamp -arrow- on exhaust gas recirculation pipe.



All versions (continued):

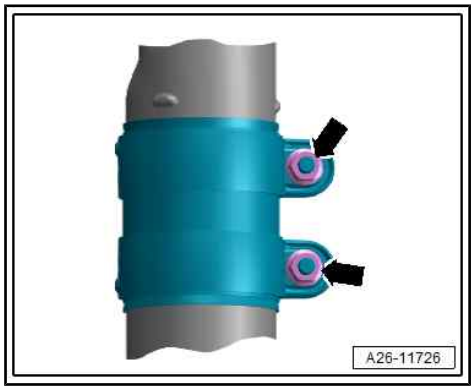
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for exhaust flap control unit - J883- -item 2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Loosen clamp -arrows- and push towards rear.

– Remove trap catalytic converter.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

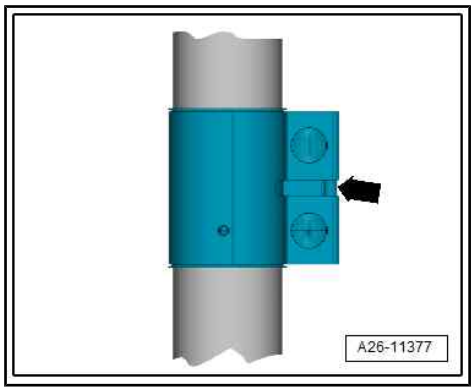
Note

Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts after removal.

Version 2:

– Wrap aluminium foil/glass cloth tape around connection between trap catalytic converter and exhaust gas recirculation pipe ⇒ page 296 .

– Slide clamp -arrow- as far as possible onto trap catalytic converter and tighten, paying attention to aluminium foil/glass cloth tape.



All versions (continued):

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers
- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - emission control system”, page 292

2.4 Removing and installing exhaust flap control unit - J883-

WARNING

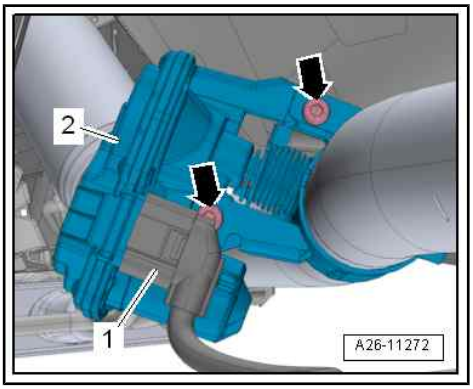
When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .***

Removing

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove exhaust flap control unit -J883- .



Installing

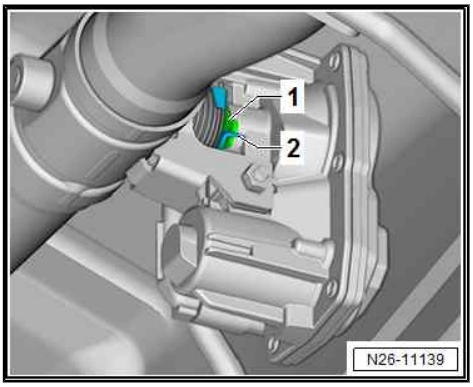
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew bolts and nuts after removing.

– Fit exhaust flap control unit.

• Coupling -1- must engage in retainer of exhaust flap -2-.

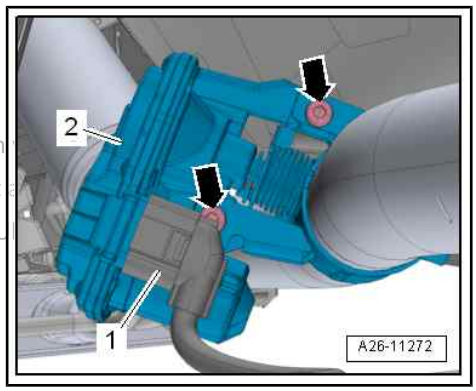


– Tighten upper bolt first, then tighten lower bolt.

– Remove protective cap for electrical connector and plug connector -1- in. Secure heat insulation sleeve if necessary.

Tightening torques

◆ ➤ "2.1 Exploded view - emission control system", page 292



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted. Unless otherwise stipulated, the right of use and accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

3 SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - reducing agent tank”, page 300

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - reducing agent supply line”, page 300

⇒ “3.3 Releasing pressure in SCR system”, page 301

⇒ “3.4 Draining reducing agent tank”, page 301

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing reducing agent tank”, page 302

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing injector for reducing agent N474 ”, page 302

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing control unit for reducing agent metering system J880 ”, page 303

3.1 Exploded view - reducing agent tank

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system; Exploded view - reducing agent tank .

3.2 Exploded view - reducing agent supply line

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Emission control module

2 - Retaining clamp

- ❑ Renew after removing

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

4 - Gasket

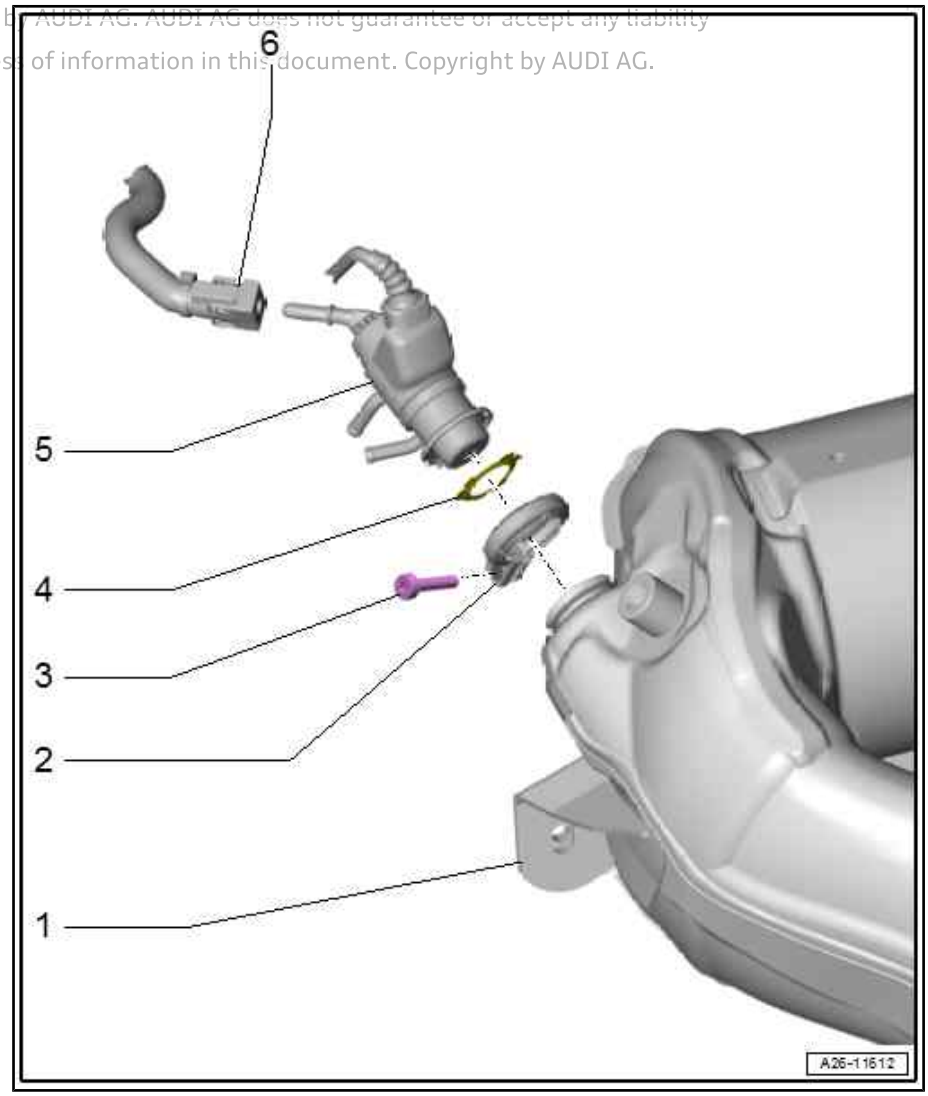
- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Injector for reducing agent - N474-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302
- ❑ Lugs in injector for reducing agent - N474- must be inserted in corresponding mountings in front exhaust pipe.
- ❑ After renewing component(s) or draining reducing agent (opening a reducing agent line), perform required adaptions using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10

6 - SCR supply line

- ❑ For reducing agent tank
- ❑ With heater for reducing agent line (heater circuit 2) - Z104-
- ❑ Heater for reducing agent line (heater circuit

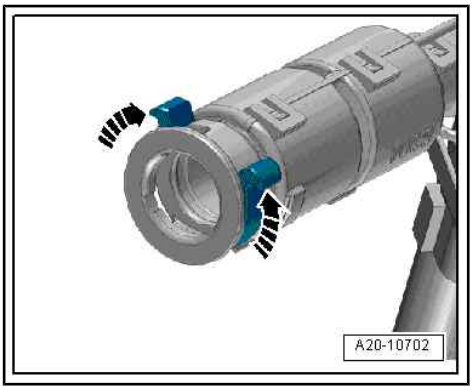


2) - Z104- may consist of several segments

- ❑ Disconnecting version with release catch ⇒ page 301
- ❑ Version with release tab: Press release tab to disconnect and connect

Disconnecting and connecting supply line - version with release catch

Separating



WARNING

Safety risk due to escaping reducing agent.

- *To prevent large amounts of reducing agent from escaping when the supply line is opened, wait until the reducing agent has been drawn back automatically ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Put on safety goggles.*

Note

Hold a cloth under separating point to catch escaping reducing agent.

– To disconnect supply line, press release catches in direction of -arrows-.

Connecting

• Plug-in connector must engage audibly when connecting.

– Pull to check that plug-in connectors are correctly engaged.

3.3 Releasing pressure in SCR system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Safety goggles
- ♦ Protective gloves

Procedure

WARNING

The SCR system is pressurised. Risk of injury as reducing agent may spray out.

- *Put on safety goggles.*
- *Put on protective gloves.*
- *Release pressure (wrap a clean cloth around connection and open connection carefully).*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disconnect quick connector at reducing agent tank or supply line - version with release catch ⇒ page 301 .

3.4 Draining reducing agent tank

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system; Draining reducing agent tank .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

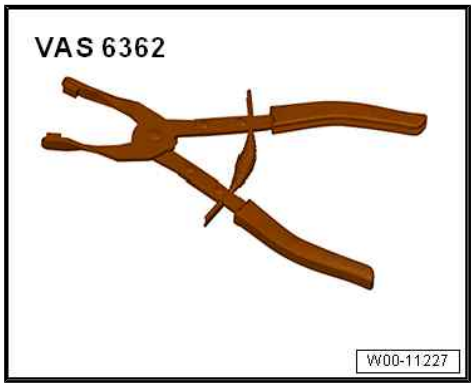
3.5 Removing and installing reducing agent tank

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system; Removing and installing reducing agent tank .

3.6 Removing and installing injector for reducing agent - N474-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system; Removing and installing injector for reducing agent - N474- .

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

Reducing agent can cause skin irritation.

- *Observe safety measures when handling reducing agent ⇒ page 4 .*

– Hold a cloth under separating point to catch escaping reducing agent.

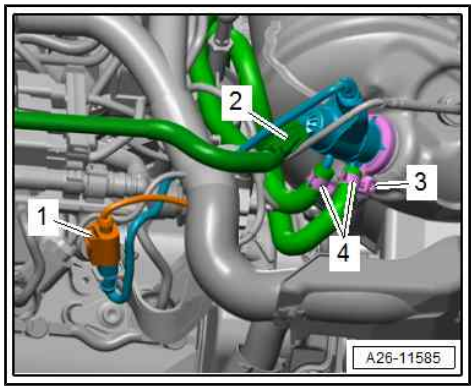
– Version with release catch: Disconnect supply line -2- from injector for reducing agent - N474- ⇒ page 301 .

– Version with release tab: To disconnect, press release tab at supply line -2-.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move electrical wire clear.

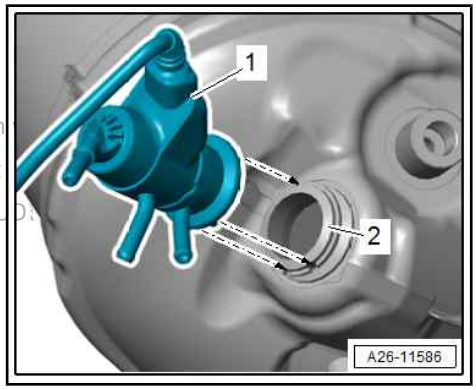
– Release retaining clip -3- and detach injector for reducing agent - N474- .

– Disconnect and seal off coolant hoses -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Note

- *Renew gasket and retaining clip after removing.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- Installation position: lugs in injector for reducing agent - N474- -item 1- must be inserted in corresponding mountings in emission control module -2-.

– Connect supply line ⇒ page 301 .

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system; Removing and installing injector for reducing agent - N474-

After renewing component(s) or draining reducing agent (opening a reducing agent line), perform required adaptions using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - reducing agent supply line”, page 300

3.7 Removing and installing control unit for reducing agent metering system - J880-

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cyl. TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system ; Removing and installing control unit for reducing agent metering system - J880- .

4 Exhaust gas temperature control

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control”, page 304

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 1 G235 ”, page 305

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 2 G448 ”, page 307

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 3 G495 ”, page 308

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 4 G648 ”, page 310

4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control

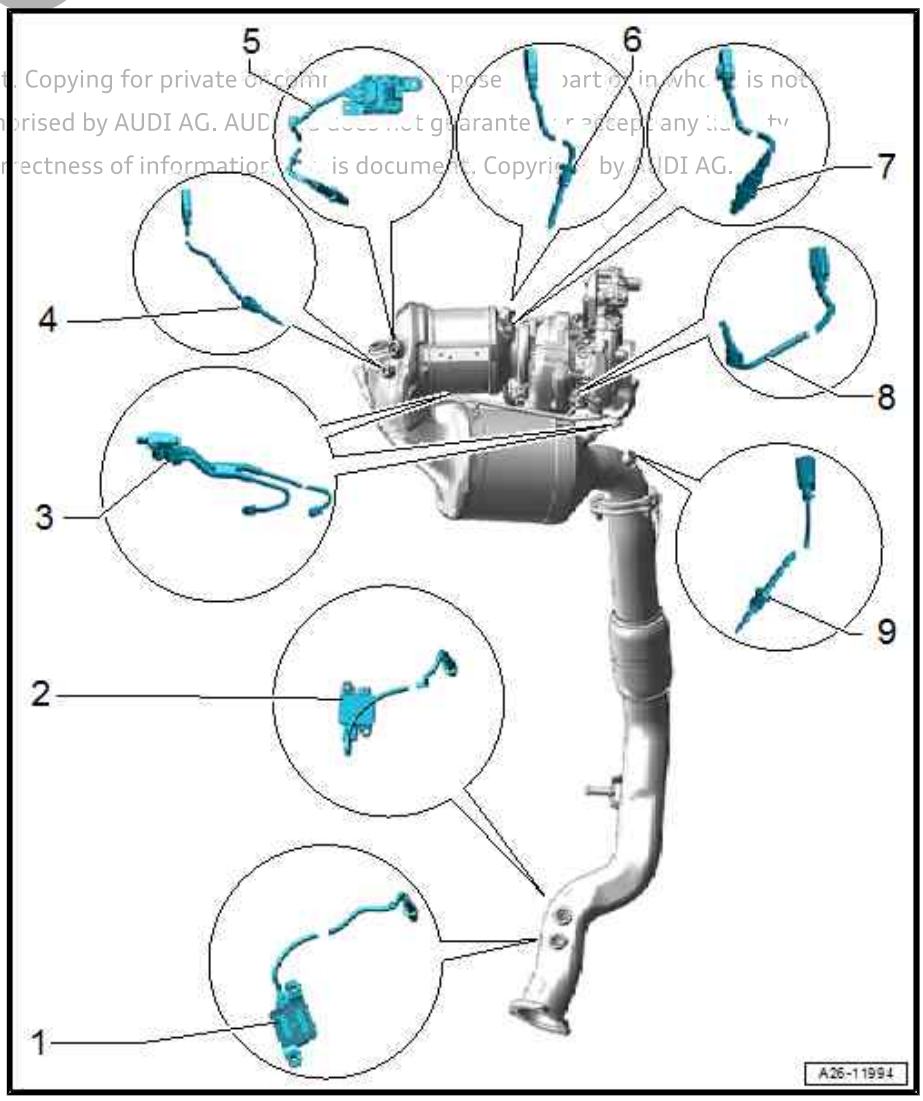
WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose, part of, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - NOx sender 2 - G687- with control unit for NOx sender 2 - J881-

- ❑ Installation position varies
- ❑ ⇒ Item 1 (page 287)

2 - Particulate sensor - G784-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 2 (page 287)

3 - Pressure differential sender - G505-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 3 (page 287)

4 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - NOx sender - G295- with control unit for NOx sender - J583-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 5 (page 287)

6 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 307
- ❑ 45 Nm

7 - Lambda probe - G39- with Lambda probe heater - Z19-

- ❑ ⇒ Item 7 (page 288)

8 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305
- ❑ 45 Nm

9 - Exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648-

- ❑ Not fitted on all models ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310
- ❑ 45 Nm

4.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Tool set - T10395 A- with suitable tool insert



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system*** ***⇒ page 3*** ***.***

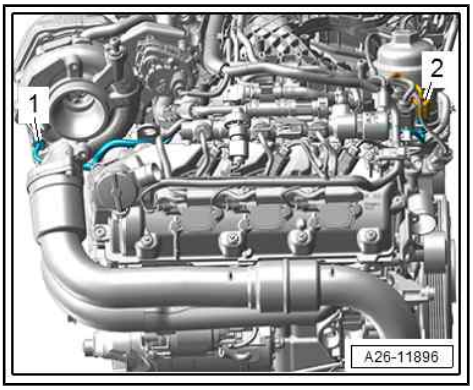
Note

- *Use correct type of fasteners for electrical wiring (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *When removing, the electrical wiring must not be cut, otherwise a fault diagnosis would no longer be possible.*

– Remove emission control module ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Removing and installing emission control module .

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas temperature control; Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235- .

– Detach electrical connector -2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.
– Remove exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235- -item 1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Take care to protect exhaust gas temperature sender from knocks and impact; if dropped, the exhaust gas temperature sender can no longer be used.*
- *Coat thread with high-temperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Align exhaust gas temperature sender 1 - G235- with as much clearance from surrounding components as possible.
– Install emission control module ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Removing and installing emission control module .

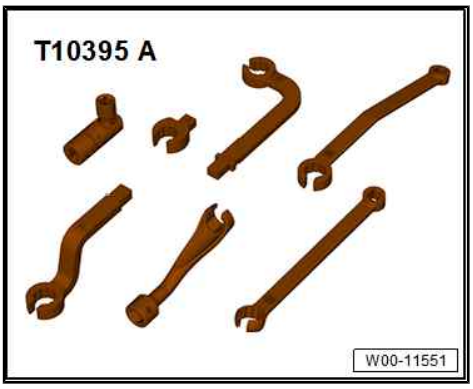
Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control", page 304

4.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Tool set - T10395 A- with suitable tool insert



Removing

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

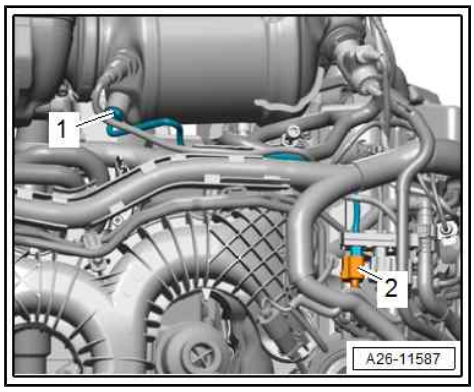
Note

- *Use correct type of fasteners for electrical wiring (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *When removing, the electrical wiring must not be cut, otherwise a fault diagnosis would no longer be possible.*

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas temperature control; Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448- .

– Detach electrical connector -2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.

– Remove exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448- -item 1-.



Installing

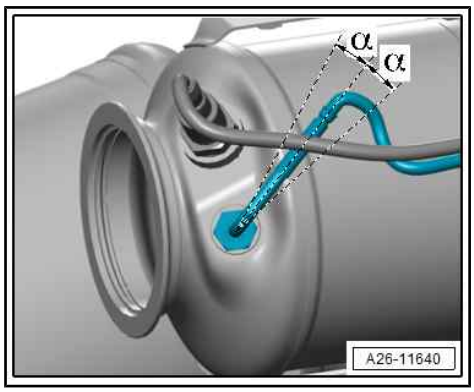
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Take care to protect exhaust gas temperature sender from knocks and impact; if dropped, the exhaust gas temperature sender can no longer be used.

– Move exhaust gas temperature sender 2 - G448- into correct installation position.

- Angle -α- = max. 5°



Tightening torques

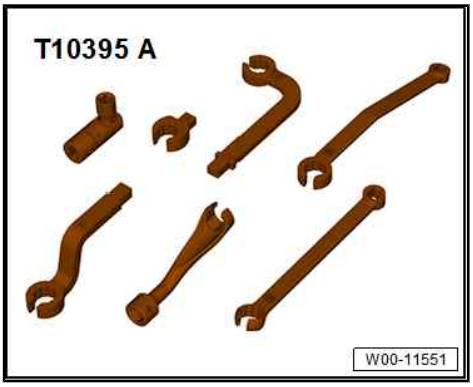
- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control”, page 304

4.4 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Tool set - T10395 A- with suitable tool insert



Removing

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

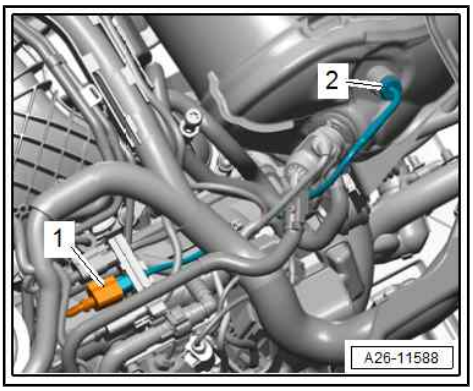
Note

- *Use correct type of fasteners for electrical wiring (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*
- *When removing, the electrical wiring must not be cut, otherwise a fault diagnosis would no longer be possible.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas temperature control; Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495- .

– Detach electrical connector -1- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.
– Remove exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495- -item 2-.



Installing

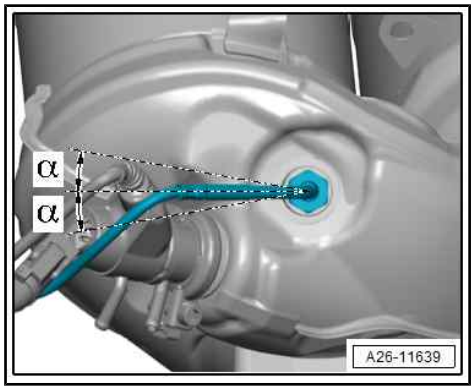
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Take care to protect exhaust gas temperature sender from knocks and impact; if dropped, the exhaust gas temperature sender can no longer be used.*
- *Coat thread with high-temperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Move exhaust gas temperature sender 3 - G495- into correct installation position.

• Angle -α- = max. 5°



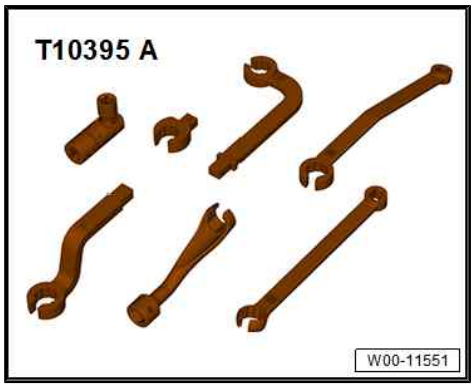
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control", page 304

4.5 Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Tool set - T10395 A- with suitable tool insert



Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas temperature control; Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- .

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

◆ ***Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .***

This content is copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

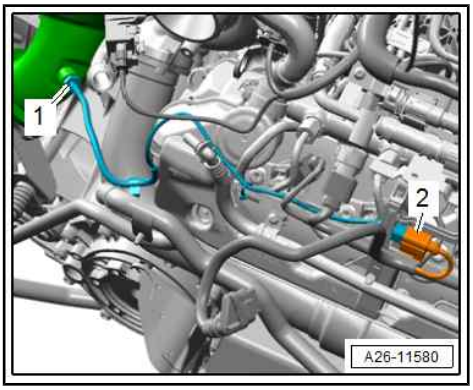
Note

◆ *Use correct type of fasteners for electrical wiring (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

◆ *When removing, the electrical wiring must not be cut, otherwise a fault diagnosis would no longer be possible.*

– Detach electrical connector -2- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.

– Remove exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- -item 1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Take care to protect exhaust gas temperature sender from knocks and impact; if dropped, the exhaust gas temperature sender can no longer be used.*
- *Coat thread with high-temperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Move exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- into installation position, screw in by hand and then tighten from above.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas temperature control; Removing and installing exhaust gas temperature sender 4 - G648- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas temperature control”, page 304

5 Exhaust gas recirculation

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system”, page 312

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler”, page 314

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor G98 ”, page 316

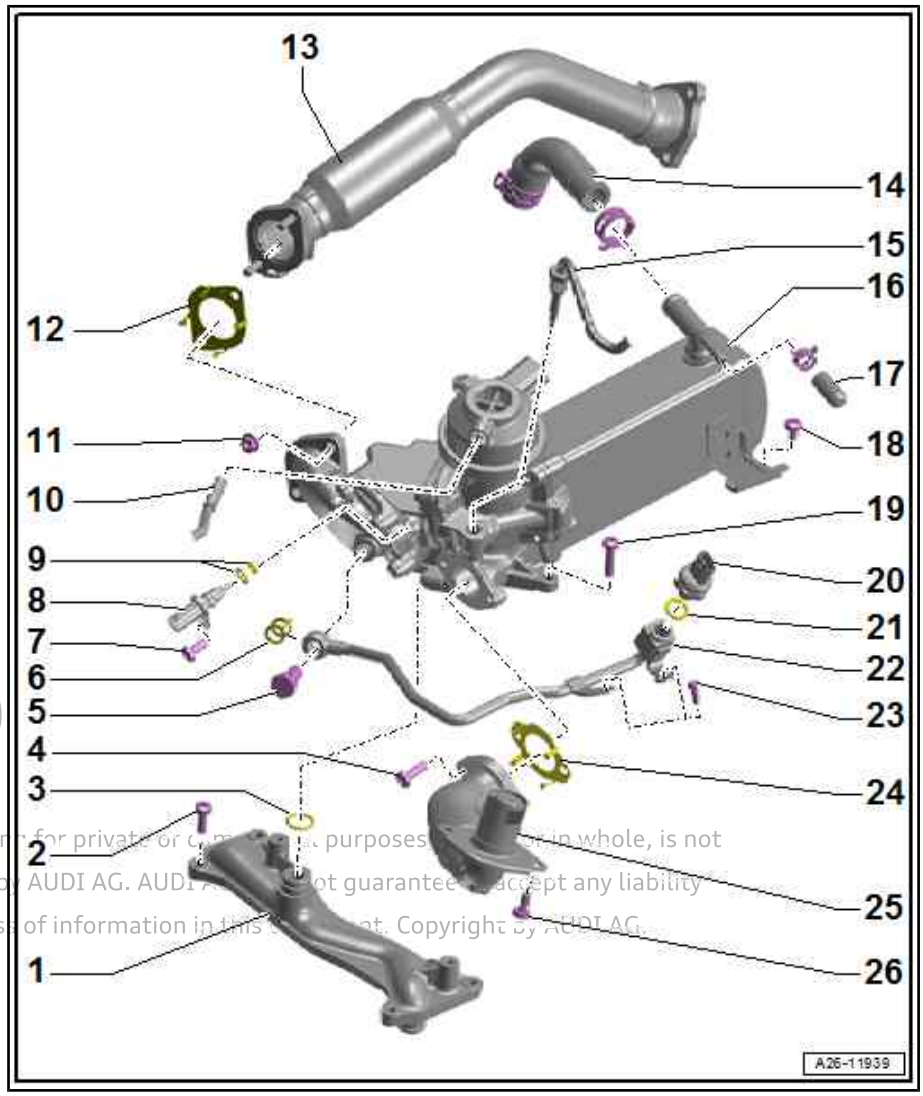
⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation G691 ”, page 317

5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system

⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, engine side (front)”, page 312

⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, low-pressure side (rear)”, page 314

5.1.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, engine side (front)



1 - Coolant pipe (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Removing and installing coolant pipes

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

3 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Banjo bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 15 Nm +45°

6 - Seals

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ Renew after removing

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 193

8 - Coolant temperature sender - G62-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - O-rings

- ❑ Renew after removing

10 - Vacuum hose

11 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm +90°

12 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

13 - Exhaust gas recirculation pipe

- ❑ From turbocharger

14 - Coolant hose

15 - Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 316
- ❑ 35 Nm for aluminium exhaust gas recirculation cooler
- ❑ 45 Nm for steel exhaust gas recirculation cooler

16 - Exhaust gas recirculation cooler

- ❑ With exhaust gas recirculation control motor - V338- and exhaust gas recirculation potentiometer - G212- / exhaust gas recirculation valve 1 - GX5-
- ❑ Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester) ⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 314

17 - Coolant hose

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation - G691-

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

21 - Seal

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor
- ❑ Renew after removing

22 - Pressure pipe

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

23 - Bolt

- ❑ For vehicles with electric compressor

Aluminium cylinder head cover

- ❑ 4 Nm

Plastic cylinder head cover

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

24 - Gasket

- ❑ Renew after removing

25 - Exhaust gas recirculation pipe

- ❑ To intake manifold

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorised use may result in civil and criminal penalties. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

26 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

5.1.2 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, low-pressure side (rear)

All components are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation system; Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system .

5.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler

⇒ "5.2.1 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front)", page 314

⇒ "5.2.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler (rear)", page 316

5.2.1 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ♦ Socket Torx T30 - T10405-

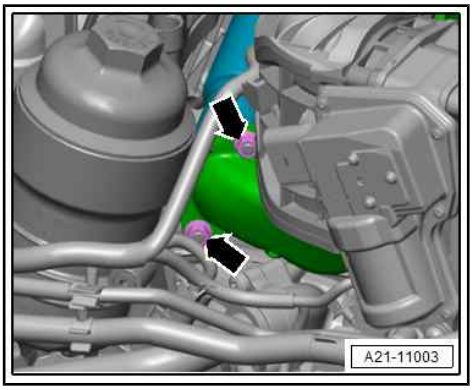


Removing

– Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .

– Drain coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

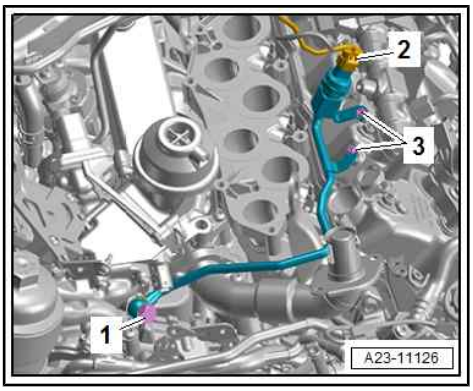
– Remove bolts -arrows- for exhaust gas recirculation pipe.



Vehicles with pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation - G691- :

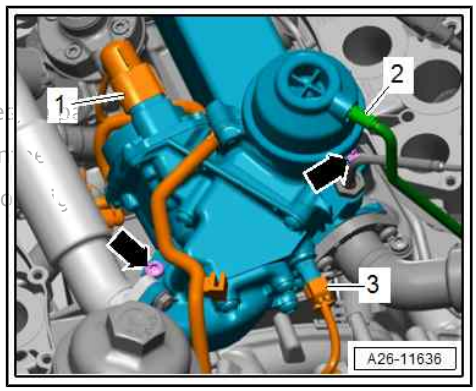
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove banjo bolt -1- and bolts -3- and detach wire with pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation - G691- .



All vehicles (continued):

– Unplug electrical connectors -1-.

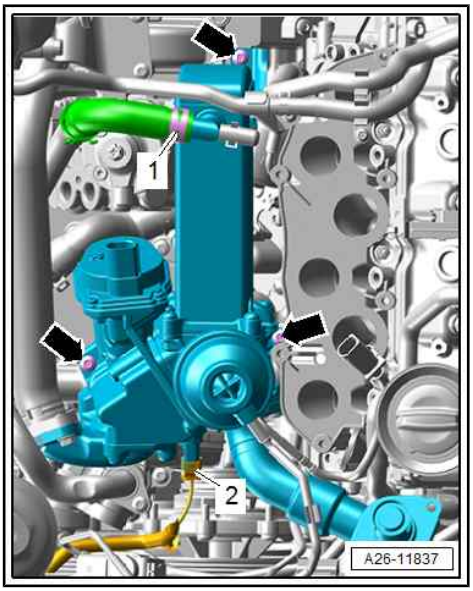


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

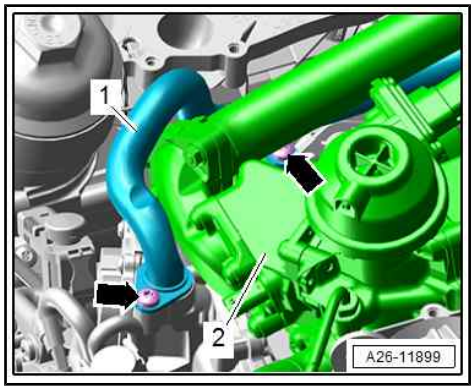
– Unplug electrical connector -2- for coolant temperature sender - G62- .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Release hose clip -1- and disconnect coolant hose.



– Pull exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front) -2- slightly upwards off coolant pipe (top).
– Remove bolts -arrows- for coolant pipe (top right) -1-.
– Detach coolant pipe (top right) from thermostat housing and push to one side.
– Detach exhaust gas recirculation cooler (front).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Renew seals and O-rings after removal.*
- *Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

– Install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ page 228 .
– Fill up with coolant ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Perform adaptions required after renewing a component (using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester)
⇒ “3.8 Performing adaptions after renewing a component”, page 10 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system, engine side (front)”, page 312
- ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - reducing agent supply line”, page 300
- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - turbocharger”, page 202
- ⇒ Fig. ““Turbocharger - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 205
- ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 19 ; Coolant pipes; Exploded view - coolant pipes

5.2.2 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler (rear)

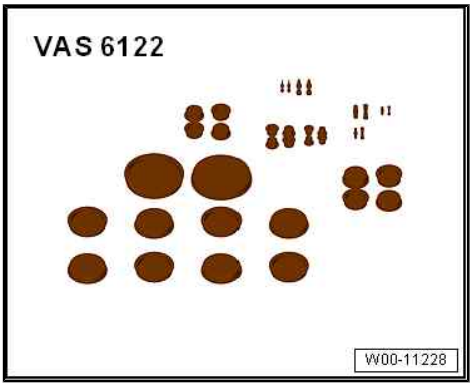
All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation; Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation cooler .

5.3 Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Engine bung set - VAS 6122-

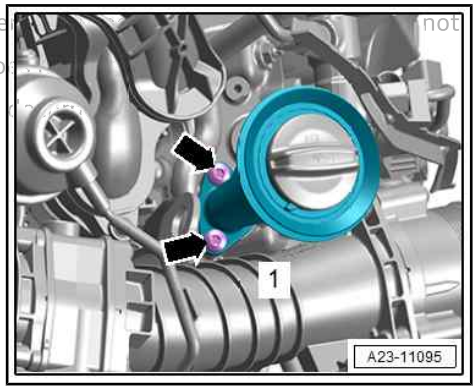


- Open crow-foot ring spanner, 14 mm (commercially available)

Removing

Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation; Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98- .

– If necessary, remove bolts -arrows- and detach oil filler neck -1-.
– Seal off opening with plug from engine bung set - VAS 6122- (clean plug thoroughly).



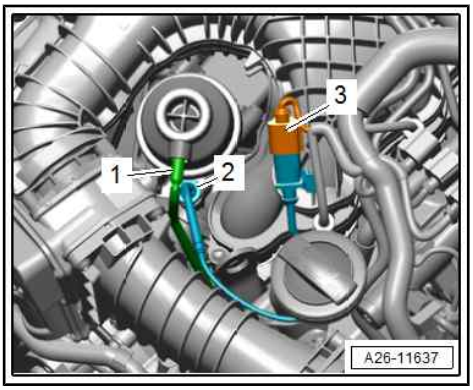
Copyright by AUDI AG. Any use of this document not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

– Disconnect vacuum hose -1-.
– Detach electrical connector -3- from bracket, unplug and move electrical wire clear.
– Use an open crow-foot ring spanner, 14 mm to unscrew exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98- -item 2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Align exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98- with as much clearance from surrounding components as possible.

Additional work depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust gas recirculation; Removing and installing exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor - G98-

Tightening torques

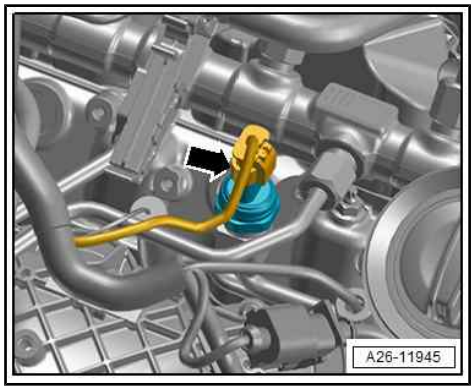
- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system”, page 312

5.4 Removing and installing pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation - G691-

Removing

– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

– Unplug electrical connector -arrow- and remove pressure sender for exhaust gas recirculation - G691- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew seal after removing.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - exhaust gas recirculation system”, page 312

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Exhaust manifold

⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - exhaust manifold", page 319

⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifold", page 319

6.1 Exploded view - exhaust manifold

WARNING

When working on all parts of the exhaust system:

- *Observe safety precautions when working on the exhaust system ⇒ page 3 .*

1 - Nut

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat thread with high-temperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 25 Nm

2 - Exhaust manifold

- ❑ Shown for cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust manifolds; Removing and installing exhaust manifolds

3 - Gasket

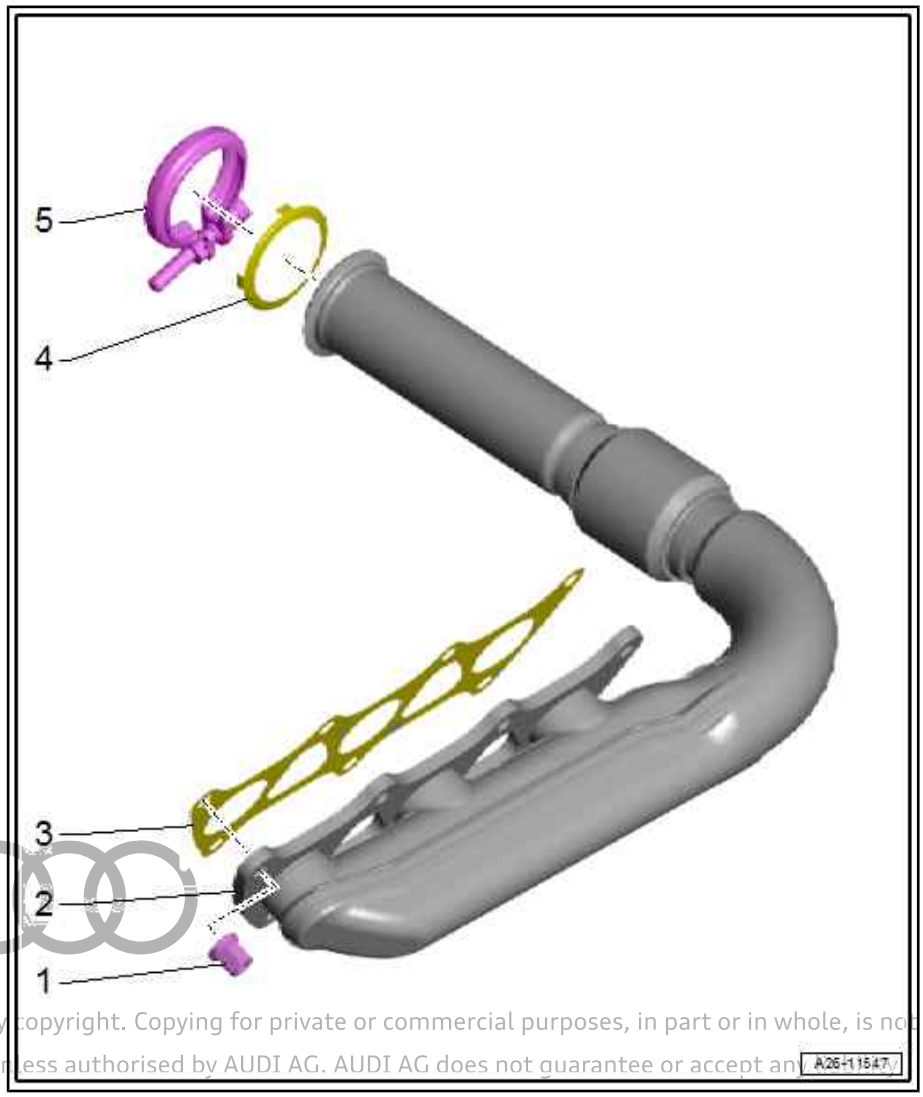
- ❑ Renew after removing

4 - Seal

- ❑ Renew after removing

5 - Clamp

- ❑ Tightening torque of bolt ⇒ Item 15 (page 203)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifold

All procedures are described in ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust manifolds; Removing and installing exhaust manifolds .

28 – Glow plug system

1 Glow plug system

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system”, page 320

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing glow plug”, page 322

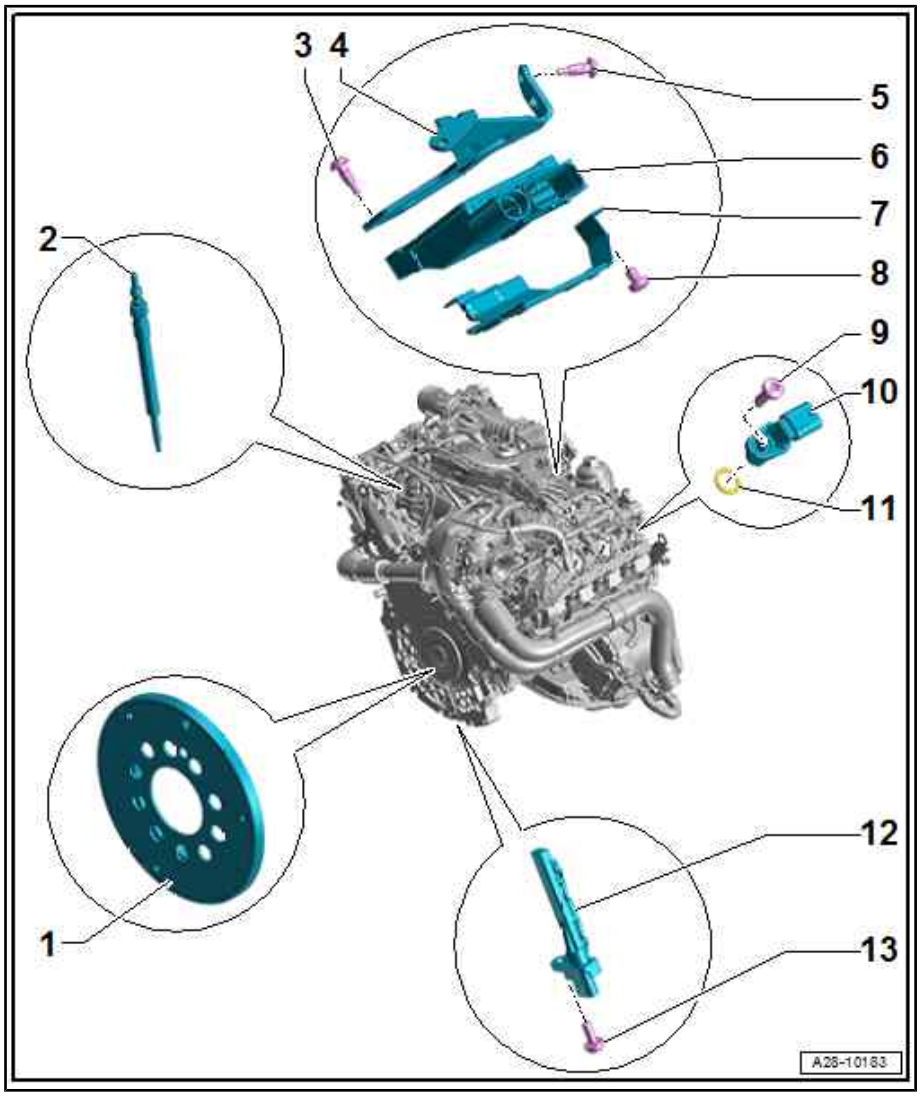
⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 ”, page 325

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing Hall sender G40 ”, page 326

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28 ”, page 326

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system



1 - Sender wheel

- ❑ For engine speed sender - G28-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37

2 - Glow plug

- ❑ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

- ♦ Glow plug 1 - Q10-
- ♦ Glow plug 2 - Q11-
- ♦ Country-specific version: Glow plug 2 - Q11- with cylinder 2 combustion chamber pressure sender - G678-
- ♦ Glow plug 3 - Q12-

- ❑ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- ♦ Glow plug 4 - Q13-
- ♦ Glow plug 5 - Q14-
- ♦ Glow plug 6 - Q15-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 322
- ❑ Glow plug versions ⇒ page 321

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 5.5 Nm

4 - Bracket

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque

- ❑ 5.5 Nm

6 - Automatic glow period control unit - J179-

- ❑ Illustration shows version 1
- ❑ Version 2 ⇒ page 322
- ❑ Removing and installing

- ◆ ⇒ "1.3.1 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 - version 1", page 325
- ◆ ⇒ "1.3.2 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 - version 2", page 325

7 - Bracket

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Bolt

Aluminium cylinder head cover

- ❑ 9 Nm

Plastic cylinder head cover

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in bolt by hand so that it is screwed into old thread. Then tighten bolt to torque
- ❑ 5 Nm

10 - Hall sender - G40-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 326

11 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew after removing

12 - Engine speed sender - G28-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 326

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

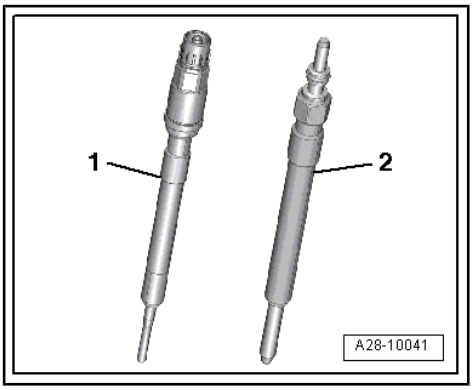
Glow plug versions and tightening torques

1 - Glow plug with combustion chamber pressure sender

- ◆ Only fitted on cylinder 2 on some versions; glow plug 2 - Q11- with cylinder 2 combustion chamber pressure sender - G678- ; allocation ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- ◆ 12 Nm

2 - Glow plug without combustion chamber pressure sender

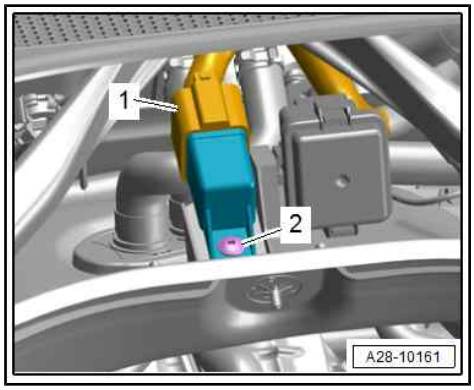
- ◆ 12 Nm



Automatic glow period control unit - J179- - version 2

Removing and installing
⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 - version 2”, page 325

2 - Bolt, 4.5 Nm



1.2 Removing and installing glow plug

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Articulated wrench, 10 mm - 3220-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Socket insert AF 12 for glow plugs 4-cyl. TDI CR diesel - VAS 6454-



Removing

– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Caution

Incorrect handling of ceramic glow plugs can cause engine damage.

- *Observe safety precautions ⇒ page 5 .*

– Unplug electrical connectors on glow plugs.

– Clean glow plug opening to make sure no dirt gets into cylinders; note the following:

WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

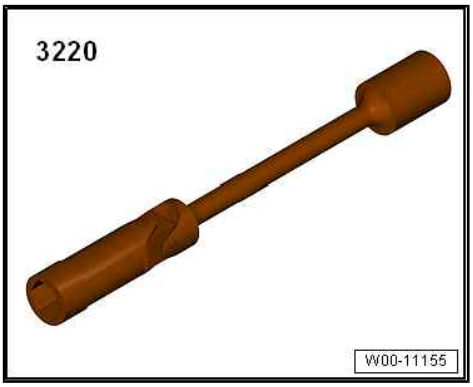
- *Put on safety goggles.*

Reproduction or copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove coarse dirt.
- Spray brake cleaner or suitable cleaning agent into glow plug apertures, let it work in briefly, and blow out with compressed air.
- Clean glow plug opening with an oily cloth.

Releasing glow plugs without combustion chamber pressure sender

With T-bar and socket, 10 mm - 3220-



Releasing glow plugs with combustion chamber pressure sender



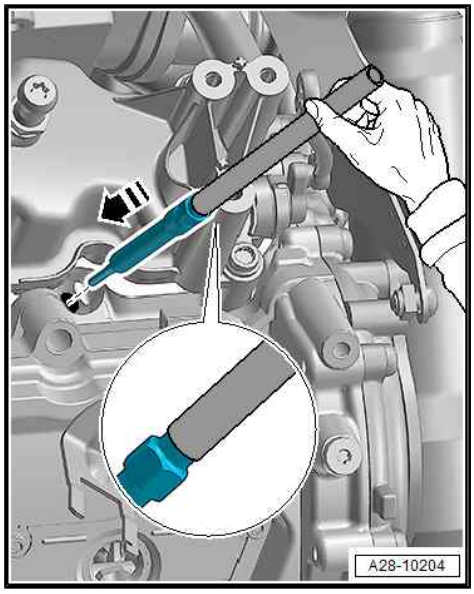
Note

- *The glow plugs can only be released up to an angle of approx. 90°. After this, the turning movement is hindered in part by a tendency to seize.*
- *This tendency to seize is caused by particles of dirt (e.g. sand) entering the first glow plug threads as heat causes the glow plugs (steel) and the cylinder head (aluminium) to expand.*

– Unscrew glow plug until it begins to stick, then screw it in again. After this, unscrew it again until it begins to stick.

• Keep turning the glow plug back and forth up to the point where it begins to stick. Repeat this procedure until the glow plug can be removed.

– Pull out glow plugs carefully by hand or using a suitable hose, as shown in illustration. Keep glow plugs straight while unscrewing.



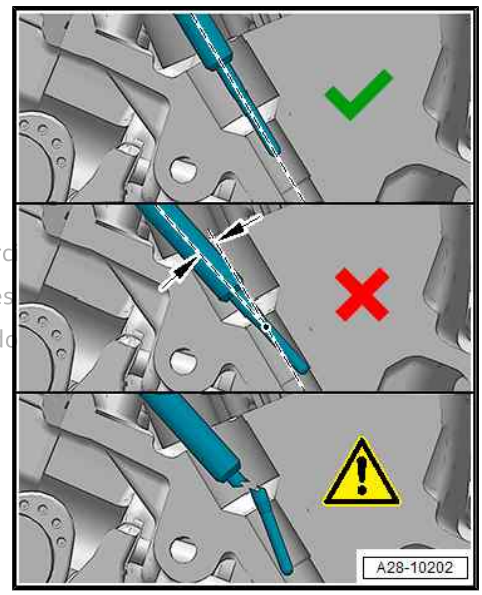
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

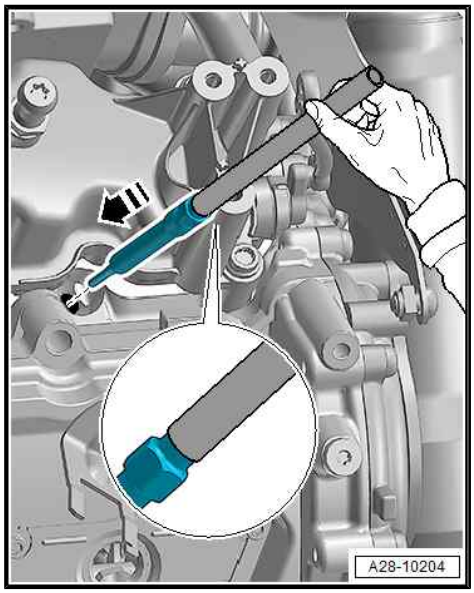
Note

Due to the special properties of the material used, ceramic glow plugs are easily damaged and require extra care when installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do



– Screw in glow plugs carefully by hand or using a suitable hose, as shown in illustration. Keep glow plugs straight while unscrewing.



– Ensure that electrical connectors are securely seated.
– Install engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Glow plug versions and tightening torques”“ , page 321

1.3 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit - J179-

⇒ “1.3.1 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 - version 1”, page 325

⇒ “1.3.2 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit J179 - version 2”, page 325

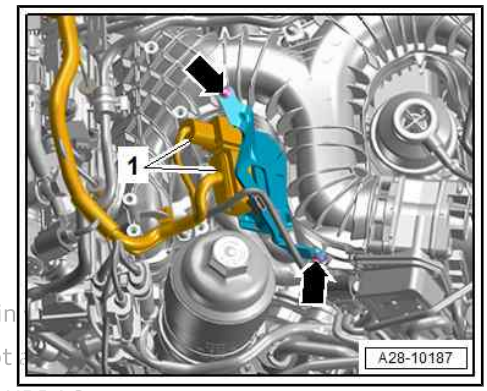
1.3.1 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit - J179- - version 1

Removing

– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

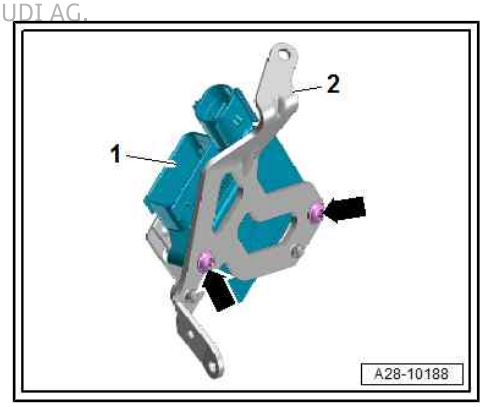
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach automatic glow period control unit - J179- together with bracket.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach automatic glow period control unit - J179- -item 1- from bracket -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system”, page 320

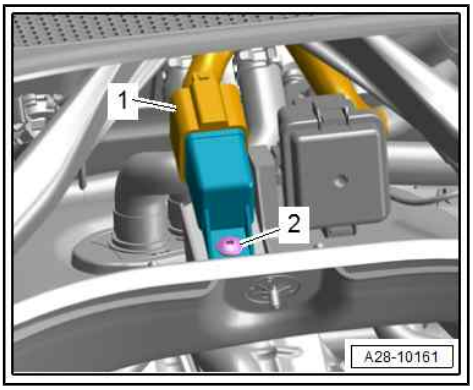
1.3.2 Removing and installing automatic glow period control unit - J179- - version 2

Removing

– Pull off seal and lift plenum chamber cover slightly.

– Remove bolt -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- and detach automatic glow period control unit - J179- .



Installing

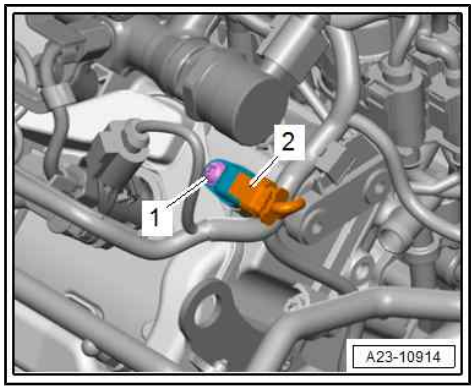
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. “” Automatic glow period control unit -J179- - version 2”“ , page 322

1.4 Removing and installing Hall sender - G40-

Removing



Preparatory work may be necessary depending on model ⇒ 6-cylinder TDI engine, 3.0 ltr. 4-valve common rail; Rep. gr. 28 ; Glow plug system; Removing and installing Hall sender - G40- .

– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove Hall sender - G40- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Renew O-ring after removal.

– Install engine cover panel ⇒ page 14 .

Tightening torques

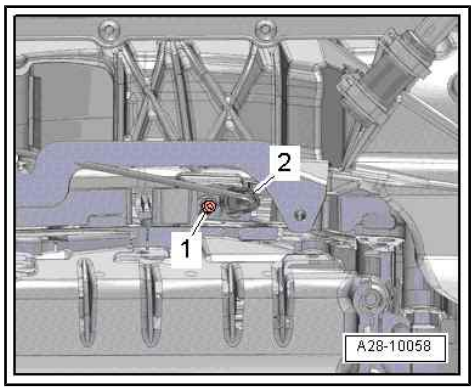
◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system”, page 320

1.5 Removing and installing engine speed sender - G28-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove noise insulation (rear)/one-piece noise insulation ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach engine speed sender - G28- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - glow plug system”, page 320
◆ ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation